

---

# ChaseDream

## PREP2008 语法笔记

---

原“新 Prep 语法笔记”

**Version: 2.02**

主编: aeoluseros (GMAT 语法区版主)

责编: steven (ChaseDream 管理员)

语法笔记编写组成员:

binbin, babee2queen, cdlxhmn, 果汁软糖, jy03161061, 狂奔的蜗牛, lovelacebaby,  
neko, 苏米拉提, 魏小姐要出国, windmaple, zanyingsan

## 版权声明：

《ChaseDream PREP2008 语法笔记》，本材料版权属于 ChaseDream 网站所有。本材料中的所有内容，包括（但不仅限于）正文、图片、表格和图标，受中国版权法和其他国际版权法的保护。在任何单机上，您都可以免费下载、查看这些材料或打印作为个人使用；网络转载必须标明出处同时保证资料的完整；不允许用于其他任何目的打印、复制、复印、再加工、分发、传送、上载、下载、存储和公开演示，不得随意修改、和改变这些资料；严禁利用此资料的全部或部分内容进行任何商业性应用，否则将受到依法追究。

## 版本更新日志:

- 2011 年 05 月 04 日 Version 2.02  
prep 1-229 补充说明修正(in order to 与 to do 区别); prep 1-192 修正 C 选项对冒号使用的说明; 修正 prep 2-225 补充说明(例题 A 选项给错了); 修正 prep2-227 B 选项解释(with intent to do 与 with the intent of doing) (感谢 jaze, 毛毛的臭脚丫 与 hermione0527 的建议)
- 2011 年 04 月 02 日 Version 2.01  
prep 1-174 补充说明修正; 更新 prep 1-229 补充说明(5); prep 1-235 修正 B,C 选项解释; prep 1-218 增加补充说明; prep 2-174 修正 E 选项解释; prep 2-216 修正 2-1)例句; prep 2-158 补充类似题链接
- 2011 年 02 月 08 日 Version 2.00  
prep 1-172 增加"补充说明"; prep 1-173 修正 E 选项解释; prep 1-211 添加考点 whereas, 修正 A,B,C 选项解释; prep 1-213 修正 B,E 选项解释; prep 1-214 修正 B,C,D,E 解释; prep 2-163 修正 A,C,D 解释; prep 2-167 修正 D 解释; prep 2-173 修正 B,D 解释, 添加"类似题链接"中的讨论; prep 2-198 修正 B,C,D 解释(感谢 windmaple, johnson1120 与 mofell 的建议)
- 2011 年 01 月 09 日 Version 1.09  
prep 1-190 改进 E 选项解释; prep 1-207 增加补充说明“夹心修饰”; prep 1-216 增加补充说明“OG12-18”; prep 1-217 增加补充说明“none of 用法”; prep 1-218 改进 E 选项解释; prep 1-230 修正 C 选项解释; prep 1-238 修正补充说明中 twice as...as 用法; prep 1-240 修正 A 选项解释; prep 2-192 修正 B 选项解释; prep 2-222 修正 C,D,E 选项解释; 修正 prep 2-227 类似题链接 A 解释。(感谢 windmaple, 家有懒猫 与 kakadinho 的建议)
- 2010 年 11 月 29 日 Version 1.08  
Prep 1- 171 增加补充说明 2; prep 1-181 增加补充说明 6; prep 1-215 修正 D 选项的解释; prep 2-175 修正 E 选项解释, 添加补充说明 2; (感谢 ryuu217, dxyl 与 绿茶子 的建议)
- 2010 年 11 月 7 日 Version 1.07  
prep 1-255 删去 A,D 选项中解释“has worked...in the past 时态错误; prep 2-152 新增关于 squiting modifier 和 dangling modifier 的定义”; prep 2-188 删去 A 选项中解释“possibility 不能与 for 搭配”。Prep1-212 D 选项是"A is X times more likely to happen than is B"解释中删去第二个 is, 修正为"A is X times more likely to happen than B"; Prep1-216 修正 E 选项解释, 修正补充说明中 than (few people 省略)did [in the 1960's and 1970's]中的 few; prep 1-220 修正 A 选项解释; Prep1-224 中删去补充说明(与原题无关); prep 1-252 修正 A 选项解释; Prep 2-186 修正 B,D 选项解释 (感谢 tinnashen 与 bowow 的建议)
- 2010 年 10 月 28 日 Version 1.06  
prep1-195 完善 A 选项解释; prep1-249 修正 A 选项解释; prep2-163 删去补充说明中“分词的正反向考法”中的例题
- 2010 年 10 月 14 日 Version 1.05  
prep1-238 完善“倍数表达法”补充说明第一小点; prep1-241 更新补充说明 that, one, it 的区别中的 VII; prep2-177 修正句子释义
- 2010 年 10 月 01 日 Version 1.04  
prep1-176 修正 D 选项解释; prep1-186 改进 C 选项解释

- 
- 2010 年 09 月 25 日 Version 1.03 prep1-172 关于过去完成时使用的补充
  - 2010 年 09 月 17 日 Version 1.02 prep1-203、prep2-235 补充
  - 2010 年 09 月 13 日 Version 1.01 prep 2-187 补充类似题链接
  - 2010 年 09 月 09 日 Version 1.00 PREP2008 语法笔记整体完成

## 前言:

笔记编写的目的，并不是想引导大家成为刨根问底、万全无遗的 GMAT 语法书，而只是为了方便大家的学习。至于解题的思路，还需自行参悟，每个人的彼岸都不一样，所以每个人都有适合自己通向彼岸的路。同时，因为时间有限，所以笔记中定然存在很多的不足感谢大家可以在论坛的笔记查漏专贴中为我，也为后来人指出。

查漏贴链接（请跟帖回复提出修改意见）：

[http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-484445-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-484445-1-1.html)

感谢：

感谢 CD，笔记并非仅仅我们编写组的成果，大部分的内容都是取之 CD 用之 CD。

感谢 CD 上数不尽的大佬前辈们，尤有 zeros, steven 给我的支持与帮助。

感谢语法笔记的编写组成员们（alphabetically）：

binbin, babeequeen, 大龙(cdlxhmn), 果汁软糖, jy03161061, 狂奔的蜗牛, lovelacebaby, neko, steven 大版, 苏米拉提, 魏小姐要出国, zanyingsan。

抱歉这么晚才截稿，平均一题 40 分钟的审稿，只希望能够不辜负你们的信任；

感谢无私奉献自己的意见与总结资料的语法大牛们（alphabetically）：

AlienX, balabaladou7, Jenny1989, nbxiaoqian, 天蝎座 1107, uslar。

虽然没有最终参与编写组，可是你们的资料却是我们编写组最大的财富；

感谢诸多在论坛上曾发表精彩言论的筒子们，很抱歉人数过多不能在此一一列举，但是偶几位的大名能在笔记中被看到:-D

同时也感谢在我这段生命里出现过的所有人，没有你们，我的生命黯淡无光。

祝你们幸福。

最后感谢女友果汁，在这过程里给过我太多关心，支持，自信与勇气，你是我坚持到最终截稿最大的支撑与意义。望我能给你幸福。

aeoluseros

2010.9

## 使用说明

- 1、各题答案均隐藏在(D)选项后，显示的方法是鼠标左键单击“常用”工具栏“显示/隐藏编辑标记”按钮（只有 WORD 才有此按钮，写字板没有）。再次单击又被隐藏。见下图方框内标示：



(此为 word2010 截图，word2003, 2007 有类似按钮)

### 2. 考点汇总：

有效用词（Diction） 句子结构（Grammatical Construction）指代一致（Agreement）  
平行对称（Parallelism）简洁有效（Rhetorical Construction）  
逻辑表达（Logical Predication）主谓一致（Agreement）  
固定搭配（Idiom）其他（Ends & Odds）

### 3. TIPS:

- 1) 引用某牛的一句话：“句式简洁，表意清晰，语义单一而精准”。做题时可以站在读者的角度看题，也即“我”作为一个读者，看这句话的时候会不会产生另一个外一个理解，或者会不会感觉绕口看不懂，往往这样的选项就是错的 — 正确选项常常是最清晰简洁的那个。
- 2) 关于每道题解析中一开始的考点说明会有列举得比较详细，建议参看的战友第一次看本笔记时先跳过那些考点说明，直接看选项分析，有不懂的点再回头核对相关知识点。为不强加思维于众考生，笔记里面大多题目并没有点出做题的思维方式，只分析了错误的语法点。
- 3) 简单题要学会读完A选项后尽量同步地在脑中构思最好的写法应该如何，这一点如果一时无法做到毋须强求；遇到难题或新知识点时通常先以排除法为主，解题过程中不能排除的先放着作为候补选项，如果候补选项多于两个，最后再进行对比，切莫因为某语法点不熟悉而把它作为排除理由。
- 4) 做题速度的加快除了阅读速度加快之外，最大的原因在于有些选项基本不用读了（比如通过熏衣草前辈的前三词后三词法，当然是不是一定”三个词”并不绝对）。
- 5) 推荐休止符总结的黄金9点，SC中最重要、应先掌握的九块内容：

<http://www.chasedream.com/show.aspx?id=5902&cid=39>

- (1)主谓（这里说的倒不是只指主谓一致，而是说看句子的第一件事就跳过修饰找出主谓来）
- (2)代词（注意划线部分与未划线部分的指代一致。）
- (3)时态（注意时间先后顺序，以及主谓的时态一致）
- (4)平行（注意是真平行还是假平行）
- (5)比较（分清是主语在比，还是谓语在比，或者是句子之间的比较）
- (6)逻辑含义（分词的逻辑指代问题；主谓搭配：主语是否真为谓语动作的发出者；主系表对称）
- (7)省略还原（GMAT里面很多句子里面省略了一些成分，你自己去还原就会发现是不合理的）
- (8)介词短语位置问题
- (9)名词、形容词、副词之间的修饰关系。

休止符：这9点其实也是大家熟悉的最基本最大的语法点，任何题都可以从此入手，平时练习就这样，

在做每道题时，脑子都会列出这几点入手，这样就可以在高度的紧张下，脑子不好空白，而是有突破口，然后再结合那些小点选出答案。

- 6) 常常有些题目是可以纯粹根据effectiveness来判断正误良莠的。记住一些“effectiveness错误”，比如某时候多一个逗号更为清晰，比如大平行更加好看，往往是加速判题、比较好坏的关键。
- 7) 记住一些近似词间的细微差别，能加速选项的筛选，如espeically和specially的区别，due to、in that、since和because的区别，it和one的区别，定语从句和现在分词修饰的区别等等。
- 8) 固定搭配、习语并没有什么很好的办法去学，只能靠多看多记，正如idiom这个词并不是来自于idiot，而是来自于idio-, which means “unique, spontaneous, without rules or known genesis”。
- 9) 巧用“正确的句子”：[http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-486636-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-486636-1-1.html)  
比如当想了解with的用法时，可以在“正确的句子”里搜索with，所有GMAT中出现过的with的用法就出来了。

---

*This page is intentionally left blank!*

---



## 目录

### Practice Test #1 Sentence Correction (171-258) ..... 1

170. ....	1
171. ....	2
172. ....	3
173. ....	5
174. ....	6
175. ....	8
176. ....	8
177. ....	9
178. ....	10
179. ....	12
180. ....	13
181. 重点题.....	13
182. ....	16
183. ....	17
184. ....	18
185. ....	19
186. ....	19
187. ....	20
188. ....	21
189. (OG12-123).....	24
190. ....	25
191. ....	26
192. ....	27
193. ....	28
194. ....	28
195. (GWD-7-Q13) .....	29
196. (T-9-Q26) (OG12-11) .....	31

197. (GWD-8-Q20) .....	32
198. (GWD-1-Q23) .....	34
199. (GWD5-Q4).....	35
200. (T-3-Q14).....	35
201. (GWD30-Q4).....	36
202. (GWD-27-Q7) .....	37
203. (T-4-Q29) .....	38
204. (T-9-Q16) (OG12-53) .....	39
205. (T-9-Q15).....	40
206. (GWD-21-Q29) .....	41
207. (T-4-Q30) .....	42
208. (GWD-11-40) .....	44
209. (T-3-Q7) .....	45
210. (GWD-1-Q2) 重点题.....	47
211. (GWD-8-Q39) .....	49
212. (GWD-10-Q1) .....	51
213. (GWD-3-Q34) .....	53
214. (T-9-Q31) .....	54
215. (GWD-3-Q3).....	55
216. (T-3-Q39) (天山-7-39) .....	56
217. (T-3-Q17) (天山-7-14) .....	57
218. (GWD7-Q4).....	58
219. (GWD-12-Q20) .....	59
220. (GWD-24-8) .....	61
221. (GWD-12-Q34) .....	62
222. (GWD-1-Q34) .....	63
223. (GWD-23-Q23) .....	63
224. (GWD-12-Q13) .....	64

225. (GWD-1-Q24) .....	65	255. (GWD-12-Q19) .....	97
226. (GWD-3-Q1) .....	66	256. (T-4-Q1 TS-7-41) .....	99
227. (GWD-3-Q41) .....	67	257. (GWD6-Q30) .....	101
228. (GWD-8-Q2) .....	68	258. (GWD-9-Q2) .....	101
229. (T-9-Q34) .....	69		
230. (T-4-Q4) .....	71	<b>Practice Test #2 Sentence Correction (152-235) . 104</b>	
231. (T-9-Q38) .....	73	152. (OG10-245) (OG11-95) .....	104
232. (TTGWD4-Q1) .....	73	153. ....	106
233. (GWD-12-Q32) .....	74	154. ....	106
234. (GWD-24-36) .....	75	155. ....	108
235. (GWD-9-Q1) .....	76	156. ....	110
236. (GWD-1-Q8) .....	77	157. ....	111
237. (GWD-8-Q16) (GWD-13-15) .....	78	158. (OG12-121) .....	111
238. (GWD-4-4) .....	79	159. ....	113
239. (GWD-12-Q3) .....	80	160. ....	114
240. (GWD-12-Q30) .....	81	161. ....	117
241. (GWD-9-Q39) .....	83	162. ....	118
242. (GWD-1-Q38) .....	85	163. ....	119
243. (GWD-10-Q8) .....	87	164. ....	122
244. (GWD-10-Q39) .....	88	165. (OG10-243) .....	123
245. (GWD-18-Q11) .....	89	166. ....	124
246. (GWD-9-Q27) .....	90	167. ....	126
247. (GWD-3-Q39) .....	91	168. ....	126
248. (GWD-9-Q32) .....	92	169. (GWD-3-Q11) .....	128
249. (GWD-10-Q36) (GWD-11-19) .....	92	170. (GWD21-Q12) .....	128
250. (GWD30-Q29) .....	93	171. (GWD-10-Q2) (GWD-11-10) .....	130
251. (GWD-1-Q29) .....	94	172. (GWD7-Q40) .....	131
252. (GWD7-Q1) .....	95	173. (GWD-10-Q18) .....	132
253. (GWD 4-Q13) .....	96	174. (GWD-30-Q30) .....	134
254. (GWD-29-Q36) .....	97	175. (GWD-9-Q3) .....	136

176. (GWD17-Q12).....	137	206. (GWD-13-30) .....	172
177. (T-4-Q12) .....	139	207. (GWD-24-34) .....	173
178. (GWD-1-Q21) .....	140	208. (GWD-24-17) (OG12-63) .....	173
179. (GWD-9-Q15) (OG12-36).....	141	209. (GWD-10-Q21) .....	175
180. (GWD-11-39) .....	142	210. (GWD-12-Q31) .....	176
181. (GWD-24-38) .....	143	211. (GWD-5-Q34) .....	176
182. (GWD-18-Q17) .....	145	212. (GWD-26-Q23) .....	177
183. (GWD-6-Q22) .....	146	213. (GWD-30-Q2) .....	178
184. (GWD-10-Q41) (OG12-48).....	148	214. (GWD-8-Q1) (GWD-13-13) .....	179
185. (GWD-8-Q41) .....	149	215. (GWD-31-Q28) .....	180
186. (GWD-6-Q41) .....	151	216. (GWD-13-1) .....	180
187. (GWD-1-Q32) .....	152	217. (GWD-8-Q11) .....	182
188. (GWD-7-Q33) .....	153	218. (T-4-Q33) .....	183
189. (GWD3-Q30) (旧 Prep2-131).....	154	219. (GWD-8-Q34) (GWD-13-28) .....	184
190. (GWD-28-Q24) .....	155	220. (GWD-6-Q31) .....	185
191. (GWD-10-Q24) .....	156	221. (GWD-7-Q2).....	187
192. (GWD-7-Q20) .....	157	222. (GWD-12-Q14) .....	187
193. (T-3-Q2) .....	159	223. (T-4-Q16) .....	188
194. (GWD-11-32) .....	160	224. (GWD-8-Q17) .....	189
195. (GWD-24-Q19) .....	161	225. (GWD-3-Q39) .....	190
196. (GWD-1-Q41) .....	162	226. (GWD-4-34) (OG12-28) .....	191
197. (GWD-1-Q16) .....	163	227. (GWD-7-Q3).....	194
198. (GWD-18-Q31) .....	164	228. (GWD-5-Q1).....	197
199. (GWD-1-Q19) .....	165	229. (GWD-6-Q18) .....	198
200. (GWD-6-Q8) .....	166	230. (GWD-8-Q32) .....	199
201. (T-3-Q18) .....	167	231. (T-4-Q3) .....	201
202. (GWD-3-Q27) .....	168	232. (GWD-4-17) .....	201
203. (GWD-9-Q26) .....	168	233. (GWD-9-Q19) .....	202
204. (GWD-8-Q23) .....	169	234. (GWD-3-Q28) .....	203
205. (GWD-9-Q17) .....	171	235. (GWD3-Q22).....	204

## Practice Test #1 Sentence Correction (171-258)

170.

Margaret Mead, the best-known anthropologist of the twentieth century, helped shape public opinion on fundamentally important areas like attitudes toward children and families, along with the relative merits of competition and cooperation.

- A. shape public opinion on fundamentally important areas like attitudes toward children and families, along with
- B. shape public opinion in such fundamentally important areas as attitudes toward children and families and
- C. to shape public opinion about such fundamentally important areas like attitudes toward children and families, also about
- D. the shaping of public opinion for fundamentally important areas such as attitudes toward children and families, and those toward
- E. the shaping of public opinion around fundamentally important areas like attitudes toward children and families, and those of

题目释义：MM, ..., helped shape opinion ... in areas such as ... and ...

### 考点：

固定搭配(Idiom) 有效用词 (Diction)

- 1. Help的用法：Help sb. (to) do; Help (to) do; Be helpful in (特别注意)
- 2. 列举用such ... as A, B, ... and C结构，不可以用like代替。like在GMAT中通常做介词表示“像...一样”，要求前后严格对称，但不可表示列举。
- 3. such as的两种形式：A such as B, such A as B  
such as的用法：  
such as + 具体名词 (n1 and n2或doing n1 and doing n2;) 表示举例  
such as + noun/ doing/ what从句/介词短语  
错误表达：  
such as + there/they/these 错，必须是具体的东西，不能加代词  
such as + to do 错 such as + 句子 错 such as + when错。  
X1, X2, X3 such as these 错，such as要放在列举之前。
- 4. Along with短语引导的是伴随状语，不可以表示平行关系也不可以做连词使用
- 5. 在...方面要用in ... area(s).

### 选项分析：

- A. On areas 搭配错误；like无法表示列举，应当换成such as；along with不能代替and表示并列
- B. Correct; such as的列举中，attitudes与relative merits的并列
- C. Help to do不如help do简洁有效，但不能称其为绝对性错误；about areas 搭配错误；like无法表示列举，

应当换成such as; also about错误, also不可以作为副词连接词(副词连接词)使用

- D. Help the doing搭配错误; for...areas搭配错误; 逻辑意思上讲such as的列举中应该是attitudes与relative merits的并列, 也可以从另一个角度分析: 如果是attitudes与merits并列的话, 不应该再用those toward, 而直接用and连接, 如果是两个attitudes并列的话最多补出and toward, 从两个方面来讲and those toward都是错的; 另外and those toward前面的逗号不应该有
- E. Help the doing搭配错误; around area搭配错误; like无法表示列举, 应当换成such as; 逻辑意思上讲列举中应该是attitudes与relative merits的并列; 另外and those of前面的逗号不应该有

## 171.

One of the primary distinctions between our intelligence with that of other primates may lay not so much in any specific skill but in our ability to extend knowledge gained in one context to new and different ones.

- A. between our intelligence with that of other primates may lay not so much in any specific skill but  
B. between our intelligence with that of other primates may lie not so much in any specific skill but instead  
C. between our intelligence and that of other primates may lie not so much in any specific skill as  
D. our intelligence has from that of other primates may lie not in any specific skill as  
E. of our intelligence to that of other primates may lay not in any specific skill but

句子结构: One of the primary distinctions between ... and ... may lie not so much in ... as in...

### 考点:

- 固定搭配(1) distinction(s) between...and...  
(2) difference(s) between...and... / A has difference from B
- 固定搭配 so much...as..., 要保证平行
- May, must, should, would 等情态动词后面要接动词原形
- 注意当 lay 和 lie 都为动词的原型时的区别: lay 是使役动词; lie 表达的是状态, 可以作为 Linking Verb.

### 选项分析:

- A. between ... with 搭配错误; so much ... but 搭配错误; lay 不是原形, 应该换成 lie  
B. between ... with 搭配错误; so much ... but 搭配错误; instead 多余  
C. correct; that 指代 intelligence  
D. distinction 要用 between...and...来搭配, 不能用 A has distinction(s) from B, 只有 A has difference(s) from B; 固定搭配 between...and...不完整; 缺少了 so much, 被改为 not... as..., 改变合理句意  
E. distinction 要用 between...and...来搭配, of...to 搭配错误; lay 不是原形, 应该换成 lie; not so much...as... 被改为 not...but, 改变了合理句意

### 补充说明:

- 有difference from和difference/distinction between A and B, 而没有distinction from
- lie/ lay做动词时用法说明  
lie为不及物动词; lay为及物动词。  
lie : 1.lie - lied - lied 撒谎

2.lie - lay - lain 躺着；平放  
lay : lay - laid - laid 产卵，下蛋；放，搁

172.

Introduced by Italian merchants resident in London during the sixteenth century, in England life insurance remained until the end of the seventeenth century a specialized contract between individual underwriters and their clients, typically being ship owners, overseas merchants, or professional moneylenders.

- A. in England life insurance remained until the end of the seventeenth century a specialized contract between individual underwriters and their clients, typically being
- B. in England life insurance had remained until the end of the seventeenth century a specialized contract between individual underwriters with their clients, who typically were
- C. until the end of the seventeenth century life insurance in England had remained a specialized contract between individual underwriters and their clients, typically
- D. life insurance in England remained until the end of the seventeenth century a specialized contract between individual underwriters and their clients, typically
- E. life insurance remained until the end of the seventeenth century in England a specialized contract between individual underwriters with their clients, who typically were

句子结构：Introduced by ..., life insurance remained until ... a ... contract between ... and...  
其中a contract是同位语修饰life insurance

### 考点：

1. 固定搭配 between ... and ...
2. 时态问题：

以下情况用现在完成时：

- within/during/in/over+ the past/recent/last+时间段
- 出现since考虑现在完成时

以下情况用一般过去式：

- 出现original/originally, first
- 过去明确时间
- 过去段时间

以下情况用一般现在时

- 自然现象
- 统计数据
- 实验结论
- 客观事实

### 拓展：

- continue这个词，对于时态方面有一点特殊性：1) 不用进行时态；2) 不用两种以上的时态
- 现在完成时与过去时：过去时就是过去的动作，完成了；现在完成时，除了过去的动作完成了，它区别于过去时的地方就在于它强调对现在的影响。要说什么时候通用，那就是抓住本质“对现在有

没有影响？”没有的话，两者都可以。（personal comment by aeoluseros）

- 过去完成时表达的是过去的过去，所以需要与一个过去的时态作对比，也即如果句子里面没有特别明显表达过去的过去或者没有某个动词是过去时态，那么必不会出现过去完成时。

C. 同位语：同位语由unrestricted adjectival phrase而来，同位语的修饰对象：名词或名词短语或代词  
同位语的特征

- a) 起修饰语的作用，一般用于修饰名词或名词短语；同位语解释的是整个名词，不是名短中某个词，故同位语不是核心词修饰。
- b) 必须对其修饰对象具有解释力；
- c) 位置：名词前或名词后，一般在修饰对象的后面；
- d) 不影响主谓一致（谓语应该和主语保持一致，而不是和同位语）；
- e) 同位结构中名词的数可以和其修饰对象的数不一致。

### 同位语的形式

- 1) 名词性同位语：名词解释名词。（以下三种，第二个n.后可以跟修饰词）
  - i. N., n.;
  - ii. n., a/an + n.或a/an + n., n.;
  - iii. the + n., n.（前面的the + n 为同位结构）
- 2) 内容具体化同位结构：抽象名词（theory/evidence/belief/principle）+that 从句，that从句对抽象名词进行具体化解释（注意与of 结构的区别），that从句部分才是同位语。（that是小品词，连词，和一般的名词性that分句中的that一样）
- 3) 概括性同位语：用一个概括性的名词去概括前面的修饰对象：短语/句子，n. + that / doing / done...

### 选项分析：

- A. in England 位置不好，应该在修饰对象life insurance后面以使introduced修饰life insurance更为清晰；being多余
- B. in England 位置不好，应该在修饰对象life insurance后面以使introduced修饰life insurance更为清晰；between ... with搭配错误；who typically were多余
- C. 时间状语until the end of the seventeenth century位置不好，应放到动词remained后面以使introduced修饰life insurance更为清晰，也使得与其修饰对象remained更加接近。
- D. Correct；remain如果像在B,C中用了过去完成时语法上并没有错，只是句意就imply了“life insurance在17世纪末以后就变了”，而如果是一般过去时，则有可能18世纪初了英国的寿险可能还是那样子，因为这个改变不是必须的，所以不一定要过去完成时。
- E. between ... with搭配错误；in England没有紧靠其修饰的名词life insurance；who typically were多余

### 补充说明：

in the last century与in last century的区别：

参见例题大全242：

242. Despite the recent election of a woman to the office of prime minister, the status of women in Pakistan is little changed from how it was in the last century.

- (A) is little changed from how it was
- (B) is a little change from how it was
- (C) has changed little
- (D) has changed little from how it has been
- (E) is little changed from the way it was



Key: C. last 此处意思为"最近的"而不是"上一个",否则就不必用the, 因此要用现在完成时。

如:

Did you see the game on TV last night? 昨天晚上

Interest in golf has grown rapidly in the last ten years. 最近十年

### 173.

The widely accepted big-bang theory holds that the universe began in an explosive instant 10 to 20 billion years ago and has been expanding ever since.

- A. that the universe began in an explosive instant 10 to 20 billion years ago and has been expanding
- B. that the universe had begun in an explosive instant 10 to 20 billion years ago and had been expanding
- C. that the beginning of the universe was an explosive instant 10 to 20 billion years ago that has expanded
- D. the beginning of the universe to have been an explosive instant 10 to 20 billion years ago that is expanding
- E. the universe to have begun in an explosive instant 10 to 20 billion years ago and has been expanding

句子结构: The ... theory holds that the universe began in ... and has been...

#### 考点:

- 1. 主系表结构中表语是对主语的描述、说明, 因此要搭配合理。
- 2. 描述自然现象、统计数据、实验结论、客观事实的时候用一般现在时  
同样需要注意的是在描述法律规定的时候定语从句要用Ving形式

#### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; 10 to 20 billion years ago做定语修饰instant
- B. Had begun时态错误, begin是即时动词不能用完成时态, 而且只是描述过去某个时间点的事件, 不需要用完成时; 第二个had应该改为has, 因为至今仍在扩大, 应该用现在时态
- C. the beginning of the universe was an instant主语和表语搭配错误; was应该改为is; that has expanded修饰instant错误
- D. the beginning of the universe was的表达wordy; hold ... to have been表达不如宾语从句直接, 而且wordy, 只有knowned to have done这种不得已的时候才用这样的结构; that is expanding将原句中并列的句子改为从句, 改变了原句意思; is expanding时态错误, 应用现在完成进行时与ever since搭配
- E. had been expanding与holds并列错误, begin逻辑上应该与expand并列; hold...to have begun的表达不如宾语从句直接

#### OG12-8 的解释:

Logical predication; Verb form

The sentence describes the central tenet of a theory about how the universe began. The focus of the second clause should be consistently on the subject *the universe*, and all verbs in the clause beginning with *that* must describe what the universe did at the initial explosive moment.

- A. Correct. Both verbs in the second clause correctly take *universe* as their subject.
- B. *Had begun* is the wrong tense because it describes action that occurred farther in the past than some



other, specified past action.

- C. The relative clause that has expanded describes instant, which makes no sense.
- D. *The beginning of the universe to have been ...* is unnecessarily indirect and wordy; illogically suggests that *beginning* is expanding, not the universe.
- E. The verb phrases *to have begun* and *has been expanding* both reference the same subject of the clause, *universe*, and therefore need to be parallel.

下划线的两个句子并不矛盾，因为that从句前面的beginning be an instant是主系表结构，所以that从句describe的是instant和beginning.

## 174.

Often major economic shifts are so gradual as to be indistinguishable at first from ordinary fluctuations in the financial markets.

- A. so gradual as to be indistinguishable
- B. so gradual so that they can be indistinguishable
- C. so gradual that they are unable to be distinguished
- D. gradual enough not to be distinguishable
- E. gradual enough so that one cannot distinguish them

句子结构: Often major economic shifts are so ... as to be...

### 考点:

- so ... that V.S. so ... as to be/do的用法:  
so ... that可以用作多个主语时, so前面的主语和that后面的主语可以不一样;  
so ... as to be/do一般用于单一主语, 但是不能相隔太远, 否则可以视为错误  
原理: so ... as to事实上是三个结构的结合, so引出的是状语, as指代句子前面的核心含义, to是不定式引导状语结构(adverbial structure), 此不定式修饰的正是前面的核心动词以及该动词的逻辑主语, 所以只有当前面只有一个核心动词而且很明确的时候才能够用so...as to, 也正因为修饰成分离被修饰词过远会造成修饰不清, 所以to be/do结构不能与前面动词不能太远。
- 关于enough:  
enough的固定搭配:  
enough for sb. 对某人来说足够了  
enough to do something 足够做某事  
错误搭配: (X) enough + "that / so as to / so to / so that".  
(参考prep语法笔记2-94)enough to, so/such...that..., so/such...as to三者都表示结果, 区别在于: enough to表示主观满足, 在标准书面语中很少使用; so/such...that不用考虑逻辑主语问题; so/such...as to逻辑主语等于句子主语, 即句子主语可以执行as to后面动词所表达的作用

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct. 主句为简单主系表结构
- B. so...so that搭配错误(Incorrect Idiom)
- C. able/unable to be done的结构错误
- D. enough偏向于主观判断, 不符合逻辑语境; not to be distinguishable不如to be indistinguishable简洁

E. enough so that 错误搭配(Incorrect Idiom)

参考例题 1:

OG10-171. In 1527 King Henry VIII sought to have his marriage to Queen Catherine annulled so as to marry Anne Boleyn.

- (A) so as to marry
- (B) and so could be married to
- (C) to be married to
- (D) so that he could marry
- (E) in order that he would marry

Key: D

补充说明:

关于so as to连写。So as to跟to并不是完全对等的! so as to里面有as这个连词, 隔开前后, 前面的统统是过程, 后面统统是目的, 而to没有连词, 如果to do做状语, 修饰的是最近谓语动词。

参考例题2:

738. The Emperor Augustus, it appears, commissioned an idealized sculptured portrait, the features of which are so unrealistic as to constitute what one scholar calls an "artificial face."

- A. so unrealistic as to constitute
- B. so unrealistic they constituted
- C. so unrealistic that they have constituted
- D. unrealistic enough so that they constitute
- E. unrealistic enough so as to constitute

Key: A

解析: constitute的动作发出者是features很明确, 所以可以用so...as to...

constitute可以做linking verb, 也可以做transitive verb, 在本题是linking verb.

① [linking verb, not in progressive]

to be considered to be something

■ *Failing to complete the work constitutes a breach of the employment contract.*

■ *The rise in crime constitutes a threat to society.*

② [linking verb, not in progressive]

if several people or things constitute something, they are the parts that form it

■ *We must redefine what constitutes a family.*

③ [T usually in passive] *formal*

to officially form a group or organization

■ *The Federation was constituted in 1949.*

OG的解释:

The verbs *are* and *calls* indicate that the sculpture is being viewed and judged in the present. Thus, neither the past tense verb *constituted* (in B) nor the present perfect verb *have constituted* (in C) is correct; both suggest that the statue's features once constituted an *artificial face* but no longer do so. Also, B would be better if *that* were inserted after *so unrealistic*, although the omission of *that* is not ungrammatical. Choices D and E use unidiomatic constructions with *enough*: *unrealistic enough to constitute* would be idiomatic, but the use of *enough* is imprecise and awkward in this

context. Choice A, which uses the clear, concise, and idiomatic construction *so unrealistic as to constitute*, is best.

175.

Experts estimate that ten times as much petroleum exists in sources like tar sands, heavy oil, and perhaps even in shale than in conventional reservoirs.

- A · sources like tar sands, heavy oil, and perhaps even in shale than
- B · sources like tar sands, heavy oil, and perhaps even in shale than are
- C · such sources as tar sands, heavy oil, and perhaps even in shale as are
- D · such sources as tar sands, heavy oil, and perhaps even shale as
- E · such sources as tar sands, heavy oil, and perhaps even shale than

句子结构: Experts estimate that ten times as much petroleum exists in ... as in ...

考点:

1. as much ... as 平行结构固定搭配
2. ten times as much + subject + verb. + prep. phrase + as + (subject + verb.) + prep. phrase 固定比较结构。
3. such as 表示列举, 列举末尾不能跟etc.; like 在正式语体里只表示比较, 不表示列举, 且遵循严格比较结构的对称。
4. N1, N2, and N3 并列, and N3 前面的逗号作为强调。

选项分析:

- A. like 在正式语体里只表示比较, 不表示列举, 应该改为such as; as much... than 错误, 应该改为as much ... as
- B. like 在正式语体里只表示比较, 不表示列举, 应该改为such as; 系动词are 没有与其并列的词, 且多余
- C. In 多余, 造成such as 列举的三个并列成分不平行; 系动词are 没有与其并列的词, 多余
- D. Correct; 通过such...as 迅速排除A,B, 通过as much ... as 排除E, 通过such as 列举的三个成分并列平行排除in
- E. as much... than 错误, 应该改为as much ... as

176.

For at least two decades or more previous to when the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo died in 1770, he was the most admired painter in Italy.

- A. For at least two decades or more previous to when the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo died in 1770, he was
- B. For at least two decades before the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo died in 1770, he had been
- C. For at least two decades or more before the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo's dying in 1770, he had been

- D. When the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo died in 1770, for at least two decades previously he was
- E. When the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo died in 1770, having been for at least two decades before that

句子结构： For at least ... before the V artist GBT died, he had been ...

### 考点：

- 时态问题：
  - 过去时：originally, from 1978 to 1985, previously
  - 完成时态：since; within/during/over/in+the past/last/recent+时间短语(注意during/in/over the last year可以用现在时也可以用完成时，取决于当时发生的事情是否延续到现在或对现在是否还有影响，而last year用过去时)
  - 将来时：
    - 条件从句/时间从句/方式从句/让步从句不能用将来时或过去将来时，常用一般现在时代替一般将来时，一般过去时代替过去将来时。（对比状从省略的几种是：转折，时间，条件。）
    - possibility that.../likelihood that.../expect that...中,that从句后用一般将来时
    - 标准书面语中,优先使用一般将来时,主观将来时用be supposed to do,较少用be going to do,不用be to be doing/be to be done
  - 一般现在时：common: the most common reasons, the common procedure
- 过去完成时的使用：必须在语义上有时间的对照(不一定会有一般过去时的出现)，来反映出发生在过去的过去。
- die为瞬间动词，不能用dying，而且die有自己的名词形式death。
- When引导时间状语或名词性从句表示“当...的时候”，表示主句事件在该时间发生。

### 选项分析：

- A. 从句用了一般过去时，而主句描述的是发生在相对与从句还要早的之前，故主句应该用过去完成时（时间的对照）；at least和or more用词重复；previous to when表达笨拙。
- B. Correct。
- C. die有自己的名词形式death，由于before/after等可以作为连词，所以GBT's dying表达不如GBT died简洁；at least和or more用词重复。
- D. 同A，主句时态错误；一个时间状语分拆为两个的表达非常累赘。
- E. 没有主语和主句；从E的写法看，是想把When the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo died in 1770作为主句（但是前面多了When），而having been作为伴随状语。

## 177.

In her 26 years in the forests of Gombe, Jane Goodall collected data that proved that chimpanzees exhibit the kind of curiosity so that new patterns of behavior and expression can be passed on from each one to others by imitating and practicing.

- A. exhibit the kind of curiosity so that new patterns of behavior and expression can be passed on from each one to others by imitating and practicing
- B. will exhibit the kind of curiosity so that new patterns of behavior and expression can be passed on from

- one to another by imitating and practicing
- C. will exhibit the kind of curiosity so that new patterns of behavior and expression can be passed on from one to another by imitation and practice
- D. exhibit the kind of curiosity by which new patterns of behavior and expression can be passed on from one to another by imitation and practice
- E. exhibit the kind of curiosity where new patterns of behavior and expression are passed on to others by imitation and practice

句子结构: In..., JG collected that proved that chimpanzees exhibit the kind of curiosity...

### 考点:

1. 描述客观事实、科研成果要用一般现在时
2. 定语从句连接词
3. one... the other 只有两个  
some... the others 有三个以上  
one... another, another...  
some... others, others...  
others = other people/things  
the others = the rest 剩余的全部
  - 1) 泛指另一个用another。
  - 2) 一定范围内两人(物), 一个用one, 另一个用the other。
  - 3) 一定范围内三者, 一个用one, 另一个用one (another), 第三个可用the other, a third。
  - 4) 一定范围内, 除去一部分人/物, 剩余的全部用the others。
  - 5) 泛指别的人或物时, 用others当在一定范围内, 除去一部分后, 剩余部分但不是全部时, 也用others。
4. By+ doing(by imitating and practicing)和by+noun(by imitation and practice)的区别还是在于doing和noun之间:doing为动名词形式描述的是动作的发生, noun则是对动作的单纯描述。
5. TIP(不做绝对判断原则): 原句中如果含有情态动词, 一般不可以随意添加、删除、改变, 要根据句子逻辑含义来判断。

### 选项分析:

- A. s.v.o. + so that + 情态动词+ v.引导的是目的性状语, 用在此处逻辑错误; imitating and practicing不如imitation和practice语义相符及简洁; from each one to others用法错误, 泛指群体里两个个体之间的关系应该用one...another...
- B. Will时态不对, 虽然will+v.可以表达的某个动作的常常发生(略带预测的味道), 但此处为描述科研成果用一般现在时更为恰当; So that用法不对, 同上; imitating and practicing不如imitation和practice好。
- C. Will时态不对, 同上; So that用法不对, 同上;
- D. Correct; 本题可以从the kind of curiosity前的the推出后面用so that引导目的或结果状语并不恰当, 另外因为前面也没有提到过这种curiosity, 应该用定语从句才对。
- E. Where用法错误, 先行词并不是表示地点、位置的名词, 所以用where不合适; are在语义上太过绝对, 不如“情态动词+be”好; from each one to others用法错误。

178.

Last week local shrimpers held a news conference to take some credit for the resurgence of the rare Kemp's ridley turtle, saying that their compliance with laws requiring that turtle-excluder devices be on shrimp nets protect adult sea turtles.

- A. requiring that turtle-excluder devices be on shrimp nets protect
- B. requiring turtle-excluder devices on shrimp nets is protecting
- C. that require turtle-excluder devices on shrimp nets protect
- D. to require turtle-excluder devices on shrimp nets are protecting
- E. to require turtle-excluder devices on shrimp nets is protecting

题目释义: Last week local shrimpers held a conference ..., saying that their compliance ... is protecting ...

### 考点:

1. 主谓一致
2. 描述法律法规的内容要用ing分词短语修饰, 如; 除非表达的是法规的目的, laws后面不能用to do修饰, 而应该用doing.
3. With独立主格的名词后面不能跟不定式

### 选项分析:

- A. requiring后面的表达wordy; 主语是compliance, 谓语要用单数形式protects
- B. Correct; is requiring用现在进行时表示当前说本句的时刻该compliance是在保护海龟的
- C. 描述法律法规的内容要用ing分词短语修饰, that require应该改为requiring, 换个角度想: 导致saying that后面的宾语从句不完整, 而且意思也不对, 意思不是法律require protect, 而是遵守法律protect, requiring只是说明了法律的内容; protect与compliance主谓不一致
- D. 描述法律法规的内容要用ing分词短语修饰, to require应该改为requiring; Protect与compliance主谓不一致, are要改为is
- E. 描述法律法规的内容要用ing分词短语修饰, to require应该改为requiring

### 相似例题链接:

法令的内容通常以分词引导表效力的延续性, 如 laws, agreement (prep 1-221) 和 directive, 后面不跟定语从句。

大全 559. One of Ronald Reagan's first acts as President was to rescind President Carter's directive that any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States be prohibited from sale to other countries.

- (A) that any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States be prohibited from sale to other countries
- (B) that any chemical be prohibited from sale to other countries that was banned on medical grounds in the United States
- (C) prohibiting the sale to other countries of any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States
- (D) prohibiting that any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States is sold to other countries
- (E) that any chemical banned in the United States on medical grounds is prohibited from being sold to other countries

Key: C

### 讨论点:

为什么 is protecting 要用现在时(而不是与主句一致用一般过去时), 并为什么用进行时。



1、用了现在时在 GWD 里面有一道类似：

GWD-30-Q39

In addition to being China's first administrators, in the sense that they developed a coherent bureaucracy for their empire, the first literate culture in East Asia were the Shang, and they were well known for crafting ornate bronze ritual vessels.

- A. the first literate culture in East Asia were the Shang, and they were well known for crafting
- B. the first literate culture in East Asia were the Shang, well known as the crafters of
- C. the Shang, as the first literate culture in East Asia, is well known for its crafting
- D. the Shang were the first literate culture in East Asia and **are** well known as the crafters of
- E. the Shang were the first literate culture in East Asia and well known

key: D

现在时表示了到**现在**还是认为 well known as the crafters,

前面用 were 可能是**强调就过去某时间而言**其在东亚是第一个文字文化，不能成为判断错误的标准。

2. 为何用 is protecting, 能用 protects 吗?

Is protecting 更为合适, compliance 是一个动作“合规、遵守”，做某个动作正在产生的效果是保护海龟，应该用 is protecting。

## 179.

Unlike George Wallace in 1968 and John Anderson in 1980, both of whom running as independent candidates, H. Ross Perot's independent run for the presidency in 1992 arose not from an unsuccessful effort to gain a major party nomination but from a desire to establish a viable third party in American politics.

- A. George Wallace in 1968 and John Anderson in 1980, both of whom running as independent candidates,
- B. George Wallace in 1968 and John Anderson in 1980, each of whom ran as independent candidates,
- C. George Wallace in 1968 and John Anderson in 1980, both of which ran as an independent candidate,
- D. the independent candidates, George Wallace in 1968 and John Anderson in 1980,
- E. the independent candidacies of George Wallace in 1968 and John Anderson in 1980,

题目释义: Unlike the independent candidacies of..., H.RP'S independent run... arose not... but ...

### 考点:

1. Unlike/like 前后连接的结构要对称平行

拓展:

contrary to: 一般接抽象名词(ideas, opinions, or actions), 在句首的时候不需要逻辑主语

in contrast with: 后面接具体名词和抽象名词都可以(a difference between people, ideas, situations, things etc), 要求平行

Unlike/like: 可接抽象名词和具体名词, 需要平行

Similar=like, different from=unlike, 但是similar to和different from一般不可放在句首

2. Independent run for the presidency表示“独立竞选总统职位” = independent candidacy

选项分析:

- A. Unlike连接结构不平行; both of whom引导非限定性定从, running应该改为ran做定从谓语。
- B. Unlike连接结构不平行; each和independent candidates单复数不一致。
- C. Unlike连接结构不平行; an independent candidate和both单复数不一致; which应该改为whom。
- D. Unlike连接结构candidates与run不平行
- E. Correct

## 180.

Noting that the Federal Reserve had raised a key short-term interest rate again last month, analysts said that they expected orders for durable goods to decline soon because rising interest rates makes it more expensive to buy them on credit

- A. rising interest rates makes it more expensive to buy them on credit
- B. rising interest rates make buying on credit more expensive
- C. a rise in interest rates make it more expensive to buy on credit
- D. a rise in interest rates make buying on credit more expensive
- E. a rise in interest rates makes it more expensive for them to be bought on credit

题目释义: Noting that..., analysts said that they expected ... because... rates make ... more ...

考点:

- 1. 主谓一致
- 2. 逻辑主语用法
- 3. Make短语:  
Make it adj. to do  
Make (doing) sth. Adj.  
Make N1 N2
- 4. buy on credit是"分期付款/赊购"的固定用法, buy on credit是"分期付款/赊购"的固定组织, buy后面可以不需要宾语, 但跟上宾语也没有问题

选项分析:

- A. rates和makes主谓不一致; make it more expensive to buy them中them无所指, 语法上指代orders, 但逻辑上应该指代durable goods
- B. correct; 从意合角度可看出: rising interest rates与前面的again遥相呼应。因为有again的存在, 说明不是一次利率上涨(a rise in interest rates), 借此可以排除C,D,E; by on credit固定搭配
- C. a rise和make主谓不一致; make it more expensive to buy on credit不如make buying on credit更简洁; 从意合角度讲rising IRs比a rise in IRs 好
- D. a rise和make主谓不一致; 从意合角度讲rising IRs比a rise in IRs 好
- E. for them to be bought on credit不简洁, 被动语态不好, 且them指代不清, 语法上指代orders, 逻辑上指代orders; 从意合角度讲rising IRs比a rise in IRs 好。

## 181. 重点题



The number of people flying first class on domestic flights rose sharply in 1990, doubling the increase of the previous year.

- A. doubling the increase of
- B. doubling that of the increase in
- C. double as much as the increase of
- D. twice as many as the increase in
- E. twice as many as the increase of

题目释义: The number... rose sharply..., doubling the increase of...

### 考点:

1. 伴随状语: doing引导伴随状语或者目的状语
2. 前后句关系平行一致
3. 不可数名词, 抽象名词不可用many形容
4. AlienX: "of XXX(年份)"在OG/Prep上常出现, 所以of previous year没问题  
([http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-373482-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-373482-1-1.html)):  
prep1#245: In no other historical sighting did Halley's comet cause such a worldwide sensation as in its return of 1910-1911.
5. 注意这个题的含义:  
不是说: 今年的人数(total number)在增长以后, 是去年增长人数 (increase of the previous year)的两倍。  
而是说: 今年的增长(increase)是去年(increase)的两倍。  
aeoluseros: 这里的double是"make twice as great"(造成两倍的\*\*)的意思, 也就是使increase/growth两倍, 直译过来就是“今年的人数造成了去年增长人数两倍的增加”。(Explanation from LDOCE: "To become twice as big or twice as much or to make something twice as big or twice as much")  
AlienX: 我觉得doubling the increase of the previous year=使1990年的increase在the increase of the previous year的基础上倍增。  
来看另外一个非常像的句子:  
P1#242: Retail sales rose 8/10 of 1 percent in August, intensifying expectations that personal spending in the July-September quarter would more than double the 1.4 percent growth rate in personal spending for the previous quarter. (7-9月的个人支出造成了前三季度1.4增长量两倍的增加。)  
同理, personal spending in the July-September quarter would more than double the 1.4 percent growth rate in personal spending for the previous quarter=personal spending in the July-September quarter的growth rate在the 1.4 percent growth rate in personal spending for the previous quarter的基础上倍增。
6. Double和twice都可以直接作为predeterminer(如C,D,E选项), 而doubling中的double是作为及物动词(如A,B选项)。

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; 这里的double是"make twice as great"的意思, 也就是使increase/growth两倍; present participle结构修饰前面整个分句。
- B. That无指代对象, 有人说that是指代the number, 如果是指代the number的话, 是累赘的, 所以that并不指向任何成分; the increase in previous year是指previous year的增长(这个逻辑doesn't make sense), 而不是在previous year增长, 应该用the increase of the previous year。

- C. double应该改为doubling, 这样划线成分才能修饰前面整个分句, double as much as是同位语修饰词 (appositive modifier), 要紧接其修饰的内容, 在此句子中逗号前不是一个figure, 所以不能用double as many as这个结构; 即便as much as能成功修饰number也不对, 数量应该用great来修饰, 见下面补充5。
- D. Many用法错误, 因为the increase不是一个countable quantity(这里the increase可以看做是一个代词, 而它所指代的对象就是前面出现过的内容: the number of the people, 而the number of the people是一个表达数量的数字而不是可数名词, 所以the increase也不能够用many来修饰); twice as many as是同位语修饰词(appositive modifier), 要紧接其修饰的内容, 在此句子中逗号前不是一个figure, 所以不能用twice as many as这个结构, awkward。(见下面知识点补充1); the increase in previous year错误。
- E. Many用法错误, 因为the increase不是一个countable quantity(from Manhattan); twice as many as结构使用错误同上。

### 知识点补充说明:

- "twice Y" / "X times Y" can definitely be used as an appositive.
- 注意doubling the increase of 和 double as much as the increase of是两个完全不同的结构。
- 关于twice as many/much as结构:  
(<http://www.manhattangmat.com/forums/the-number-of-people-flying-first-t5600.html>)  
(1) If you say "twice as **many**", then this construction should be paired with **countable noun**.  
e.g., *twice as many dogs* --> "dogs" is a countable noun  
(2) If you said "twice as **much**", then this construction should be paired with an **uncountable noun**.  
e.g., *twice as much water* --> "water" is an uncountable noun  
(3) If the noun in question is already an **explicitly numerical quantity**, then you should use **neither** "much" nor "many". Instead, you should just use "twice" or "double" by itself.  
e.g., *twice the increase* --> "increase" is an explicitly numerical quantity  
(4) These rules are followed pretty closely.  
so, for instance:  
*twice as much water* --> correct, since "water" is an uncountable noun (but is not an explicitly numerical quantity)  
*twice the water...* --> incorrect, since water is not a numerical quantity  
*twice as much as the increase...* --> incorrect; redundant  
*twice the increase...* --> correct
- 注意不能看到the increase就认定它是不可数的, 要用much来修饰, 而应该看the increase所指向的东西。
- 关于numbers与greater和more搭配的另一道题:  
**OG251.** The gyrfalcon, an Arctic bird of prey, has survived a close brush with extinction; its numbers are now five times greater than when the use of DDT was sharply restricted in the early 1970's. .  
a) extinction; its numbers are now five times greater than  
b) extinction; its numbers are now five times more than  
c) extinction, their numbers now fivefold what they were  
d) extinction, now with fivefold the numbers they had (A)  
e) extinction, now with numbers five times greater than  
A, the best choice, uses a singular pronoun, its, to refer to the singular antecedent *The gyrfalcon*, and it properly uses the construction *its numbers are now ... greater than*. In B, the construction *its numbers are ... more* is not idiomatic: there are more birds, but not more numbers. Choices C and D use a plural pronoun, *their* or *they*, to refer to a grammatically singular antecedent, *The gyrfalcon*.  
Choices D and E wrongly use a phrase introduced by *now* with *to* modify *The gyrfalcon*. In both choices, the

phrase confusingly seems to parallel with extinction; a new clause with a present tense verb is needed to state what the gyrfalcon's numbers are now.

6. 关于类似twice as many/much as的结构: appositive modifier (同位语修饰词)。

不仅仅名词,有些形容词也是可以做为appositive modifier的,这种形容词用逗号隔开放在句尾,还是习惯于修饰最近的词语(但是不绝对)。这样的形容词有different from, (double/twice) as many as等。

一道来自 Manhattan 的模考题:

Antigenic shift refers to the combination of two different strains of influenza; in contrast, antigenic drift refers to the natural mutation of a single strain of influenza.

- A. influenza; in contrast, antigenic drift refers to the natural mutation of a single strain of influenza
- B. influenza, different than the natural mutation of a single strain, known as antigenic drift
- C. influenza, in contrast to the natural mutation of a single strain, known as antigenic drift
- D. influenza, different than antigenic drift, which refers to the natural mutation of a single strain of influenza
- E. influenza; in contrast to antigenic drift, which refers to the natural mutation of a single strain of influenza

Key: A. 此题里面D选项different than先改为different from。而即便改为different from,也修饰不到Antigenic shift,因为太远了,需要在different from前面加上and is(其他错误暂不考虑)。

不过如果前面的成分比较短,不会引起歧义,这个同位语还是可以跳跃修饰的,比如这个例子:

According to surveys by the National Institute on Drug Abuse, about 20 percent of young adults used cocaine in 1979, doubling those reported in the 1977 survey.

- (A) doubling those reported in the 1977 survey
- (B) to double the number the 1977 survey reported
- (C) twice those the 1977 survey reported
- (D) twice as much as those reported in the 1977 survey
- (E) twice the number reported in the 1977 survey

OA: E. 其中twice跳跃used cocaine修饰20 percent of young adults.

7. as many可以当一个数目来用。但是如果连接twice这样的倍数,则后面要用as many as, 做比较来用。

## 182.

The organic food industry has organized a successful grassroots campaign—using Web sites, public meetings, and also mass mailings—that have convinced the Department of Agriculture to change the proposed federal regulations for organically grown food.

- A. using Web sites, public meetings, and also mass mailings—that have convinced
- B. using Web sites, public meetings, and mass mailings—that has convinced
- C. by using Web sites, public meetings, and mass mailings—in convincing
- D. by the use of Web sites, public meetings, as well as mass mailings—that convinced
- E. which used Web sites, public meetings, and mass mailings—in convincing

题目释义: The industry has organized a ...campaign—using ...—that has convinced ... to

### 考点:

1. 破折号在GMAT里的用法: 用于插入语, 解释说明(代替冒号或分号), 话语/语义的中断和转折, 反讽。

2. As well as不等同于and, 不表示并列关系, 而是侧重其前面的部分, 后面部分处于从属地位。
3. that引导限定性定语从句, in convincing(in doing sth.)是状语。
4. campaign的固定搭配: 正确形式为campaign for/against。

### 选项分析:

- A. and also在列举的时候多余, 不过在also有时候是作为强调而且不用在列举中不一定多余 (and also还有一种情况下是redundant的: both X and also Y); have应该改为has
- B. Correct; 原句含义为: 组织了一个成功的草根运动--其中用到了网站、公共集会、广发邮件--该草根运动.....
- C. By using逻辑含义上不等于using, 其表达的是因为通过那三个方式草根运动才是成功的, 这个含义不对; in convincing不做定语而是状语, 修饰的是前面分句及前面整个分句的动作organized, 表达organize是convincing中的一个动作, 改变原句合理逻辑含义。
- D. By using错误同C; and不可以换为as well as, as well as只是一个修饰语, 其使mass mailings与前两项的并列关系改变为从属结构, 而且并没有A, B, as well as C的结构; the use of表达wordy; 用了convinced一般过去时表示convinced发生在has organized之前, 逻辑含义不合理。
- E. Which used时态错误, 其使得web sites, public meetings, and mass mailings的使用是发生在运动之前, 逻辑含义矛盾; in convincing不做定语而是目的状语, 改变原句合理逻辑含义。

## 183.

Despite recent increases in sales and cash flow that have propelled automobile companies' common stocks to new highs, several industry analysts expect automakers, in order to conserve cash, to set dividends more conservatively than they were

- A. to set dividends more conservatively than they were
- B. to set dividends more conservatively than they have been
- C. to be more conservative than they have been in setting dividends
- D. that they will be more conservative than they were in setting dividends
- E. that they will be more conservative than they have been to set dividends

题目释义: Despite ..., analysts expect automakers to be more ... than they have been in ...

### 考点:

1. Expect的固定搭配:

意为“预料”时:

sth. be expected to do/be; 指望, 期望

it is expected that 预期 (与上着一个意思, 但是没有上者简洁) (prep 1-107)

expect to do sth.

expect sb./sth. to do sth.

expect that

expect sth.

意为“想要”时:

expect sth. from sb.

expect sb. to do sth.

错误用法:

sth. be expected for sth. to do(也就是说for sth.不能加)

sth. be expected that 错 (T-4-Q31)

it is expected for stb. to do累赘, 不如直接用sth. be expected to do/be

expect sb. that 错

2. 比较结构的比较对象要平行: no alternations, no tense changes, no nothing(unretriviable omission)。
3. In doing sth. 和 for doing sth. 都有“在做...这方面”的含义;  
而to do sth.通常情况下表示目的, 可以翻译为: “为了做...”

### 选项分析:

- A. 实义动词to set(表达预测, 将来时)与系动词were不平行, 应该是: to set Div. more conservatively than they have done.
- B. to set与have been不平行, 要在been后面加上setting或改为have set以修正平行。
- C. Correct; be + adj + in doing something很顺口, e.g. She is very active in posting questions on CD.;  
时态也很好: to be表示从现在开始的未来, have been 从过去到现在, 时间轴上没有空缺
- D. Expect sb. that搭配错误, 只能用expect that或expect sb. to do; were的时态问题
- E. 不能用Expect sb. that, 同D; to set错误, 应该改为in setting

## 184.

Japan's abundant rainfall and the typically mild temperatures throughout most of the country have produced a lush vegetation cover and, despite the mountainous terrain and generally poor soils, it has made possible the raising of a variety of crops.

- A. it has made possible the raising of
- B. has made it possible for them to raise
- C. have made it possible to raise
- D. have made it possible for raising
- E. thus making it possible for them to raise

题目释义: Japan's rainfall and the ... temperatures... have produced ... and, ..., have made it ...

### 考点:

1. 主语单复数
2. 主谓一致
3. And前后并列, 在文中为have produced... and have made it ...
4. Make短语:  
Make it adj. (to do)  
Make sth. Adj.  
Make (doing) sth. Adj.  
Make N1 N2

### 选项分析:

- A. and前后不平行(run-on), it无指代对象。

- B. 主语(rainfall and temperatures)为复数, 和has主谓不一致; them没有指代对象, for them多余
- C. Correct
- D. for doing是介宾短语, 不能用it指代, 而to do是不定式可以做名词性成份并用it指代, 所以make it adj. for doing错误, 应该是Make it adj. to do
- E. thus是强调因果关系, 并不多余; making和have produced不并列; them没有指代对象, for them多余

## 185.

Because the budget package in Congress promises a combination of higher taxes and reduced spending that may slow economic growth, many in the credit markets wonder whether the Federal Reserve will compensate and help the economy by keeping interest rates low, or perhaps even if they push them lower.

- A. by keeping interest rates low, or perhaps even if they push
- B. by its keeping interest rates low, or perhaps even by their pushing
- C. by keeping interest rates low, or perhaps even by pushing
- D. through their keeping interest rates low, or perhaps even push
- E. through their keeping interest rates low, or perhaps it will even push

题目释义: many ... wonder whether the FR will compensate & help ... by keeping, or even by pushing...

### 考点:

1. Or并列结构前后要平行对称
2. 动词优于one's doing
3. 代词指代
4. through和by的区别: 表示“通过做B达成了A(A已经做到)”时倾向于through, 表示“通过做B做A(A还在被做)”时倾向用by。

### 选项分析:

- A. Or前后不对称; they无所指, Federal Reserve为单数
- B. Its keeping不如keeping简洁有效; their指代错误
- C. Correct, or perhaps even前的逗号是强调作用
- D. Their指代错误; one's doing不如doing简洁有效; Or前后不对称; compensate and help两个动作都未完成, 故用through不如用by好
- E. Their指代错误; one's doing不如doing简洁有效; Or前后不对称; through不如by好

## 186.

Laos has a land area about the same as Great Britain but only 4 million in population, where many are members of hill tribes ensconced in the virtually inaccessible mountain valleys of the north.

- A. about the same as Great Britain but only 4 million in population, where many
- B. of about the same size as Great Britain is, but in Laos there is a population of only 4 million, and many
- C. that is about the same size as Great Britain's land area, but in Laos with a population of only 4 million



people, many of them

- D. comparable to the size of Great Britain, but only 4 million in population, and many
- E. comparable to that of Great Britain but a population of only 4 million people, many of whom

题目释义: Laos has a land area... but a population...

### 考点:

1. 比较对象要形式对称, 性质相同; 特别指出文中size和area是可以比的。
2. land area: 土地面积。
3. 连词的运用: 仅凭逗号是不可以连接两个句子的。
4. 定语从句的关系连词: that/介词+which。

### 选项分析:

- A. Land area不可以和Great Britain不可比; where引导的定语从句修饰population错误。
- B. is和has不平行; land area和size重复; many无指代对象。
- C. 定语从句wordy, 用形容词短语就可以, 更加简洁, 而且意思没减少; land area的重复使用也累赘; population为抽象名词, them指代不明; but后面不成句子, 无法与前面平行; with a population of only 4 million限定性修饰Laos错误, 显得有很多个Laos。
- D. Comparable to the size of Great Britain没有问题; only 4 million in population表达不地道; many无所指; 在正式语体里面不应该用and many, 而应该用“, many of whom”, 否则割裂了many与前句的关系。
- E. correct; 有说法E中people和population是重复表达, 但population和people一个是“数量值”(the number of people), 一个人群, 重心不同, 并不重复。注意population也有all of the people和a city, town的意思, 单数名词。

## 187.

United States Senator Daniel Inouye was appointed to several posts within the Democratic Party during his first term, that included assistant majority whip and vice-chair of the Democratic Senatorial Committee.

- A. that included
- B. which includes
- C. including
- D. some of which were
- E. among them being

题目释义: DI was appointed to several posts.....,including.....

### 考点:

1. 定语从句; 普通的非限定性定语从句要用which引导(个别非限定性定语从句依然用that引导, 但不在GMAT考核范围之内), 而限定性定语从句要用that引导。(关于限定性定语从句与非限定性定语从句区别见07prep语法笔记)
2. 这里including并不是做伴随使用, Include和continue都很少有V-ing用法, 这里的including是介词。

选项分析:

- A. 引导普通的非限定定语从句用which; 改为which后, which与所指的posts相隔太远, 也不太好。
- B. 根据句意, 定语从句应该修饰several posts, 故为复数, 使用includes错误, 并且时态上讲应该使用一般过去时; which与所指的posts相隔太远, 不好。
- C. Correct; including比which included更为简洁、明确, including介词短语修饰前面短语的核心词posts。
- D. some of which与所指的posts相隔太远。
- E. Being累赘; among them being修饰对象不明确(awkward), 并且无法引导独立主格。

## 188.

Neuroscientists, having amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood, are now drawing solid conclusions about how the human brain grows and how babies acquire language.

- A. Neuroscientists, having amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood, are
- B. Neuroscientists, having amassed a wealth of knowledge about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood over the past twenty years, and are
- C. Neuroscientists amassing a wealth of knowledge about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood over the past twenty years, and are
- D. Neuroscientists have amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood,
- E. Neuroscientists have amassed, over the past twenty years, a wealth of knowledge about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood,

题目释义: Ns, having done....., are doing sth.....

考点:

1. 句子完整结构,
2. V-ing(present participle)修饰:  
V-ing结构在句子中可以做定语, 状语。
  - 1) 放在句子末尾时, 如果前面是主谓宾结构, 如果同时时态上与主句搭配合理, V-ing结构作状语, 作为:
    - ① 伴随动作, 表与主句动词同时发生的动作
    - ② 伴随结果, 表主句动作带来的结果。此时注意其逻辑主语的判断: 其所修饰分句的动作发出者。
  - 2) 如果前面是主系表结构, 由于系动词是一个状态不存在“被伴随”, 但是V-ing结构依然修饰的是整个主系表结构, 所以后面的V-ing结构也可以被解读为修饰前面的名词成分—主语(如果宾语是名词, 也一同修饰, 因为主系表结构中主语和宾语所指是同一事物--见OG10-39, OG11-24中对正确选项C的解释)。

例: OG10-39 For members of the seventeenth-century Ashanti nation in Africa, animal-hide shields with wooden frames were essential items of military equipment, a method to protect warriors against enemy arrows and spears.

- A. a method to protect



- B. as a method protecting
- C. protecting
- D. as a protection of
- E. to protect

OG10-39 的解释（注意 C 选项的解释）：

**Choice C is best because the participle *protecting* begins a phrase that explains what the shields did.** Choices A and B awkwardly use the singular word *method* to refer to *items of military equipment* rather than to the use of such items. Also, *a method of protecting* would be more idiomatic than *a method to protect* in A or a *method protecting* in B. In B and D, *as* is incorrect; also, *a protection* in D has no noun for which it can logically substitute. Choice E is incomplete; *used to protect* would have been acceptable.

OG11-24 的解释（注意 C 和 E 选项的解释）

Logical predication + rhetorical construction

The underlined part of the sentence begins a phrase describing *items of military equipment*. It is awkward and inaccurate to describe *items* as *a method*. Replacing the underlined phrase with the participle *protecting* creates a modifying phrase that clearly explains the purpose of the *items of military equipment*.

- A A method to protect is an awkward reference to items
- B The singular *a method* should not refer to the plural *items*, *as a method protecting* is not idiomatic
- C Correct. In this sentence, *protecting* properly introduces a modifying phrase revealing the purpose of the *items*.
- D Beginning the phrase with *as* is incorrect; using the noun form *protection* creates wordiness
- E The infinitive *to protect* cannot act as an adjective modifying *items*; the participial form of the verb, *protecting*, is required

The correct answer is C.

- 3) 现在分词在句尾用逗号隔开，必须要注意的一点是这个结构从来都没有失去过“做定语”的功能，只是优先做状语而已，即优先修饰到前面主句的主语和谓语。如下题如果前面主句的谓语是完成时态，那么既然已经完成了，*drawing*就无法再做其的伴随，所以只剩下做定语的功能。

例：OG12-21

Neuroscientists, having amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood, are now drawing solid conclusions about how the human brain grows and how babies acquire language.

- (A) Neuroscientists, having amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood, are
- (B) Neuroscientists, having amassed a wealth of knowledge about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood over the past twenty years, and are
- (C) Neuroscientists amassing a wealth of knowledge about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood over the past twenty years, and are
- (D) Neuroscientists have amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood,
- (E) Neuroscientists have amassed, over the past twenty years, a wealth of knowledge about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood,

答案是A。OG对D项的解释：The final descriptor in present tense, *now drawing conclusions*....does not fit the opening clause, which is in present-perfect tense(have amassed a wealth)and seems to modify adulthood.

3. aeoluseros对于Having done知识点的补充说明：

- 1) 不能作为名词结构，因此不能用该结构作主语。
- 2) 我对定语、状语的理解是这样的：有的时候同一个成分、结构可以做定语，也可以做状语，只要区分被修饰对象与结合时态等分析逻辑上能不能合理修饰就够了，没必要太在意是做定语还是做状语。也就是说，区分定语、状语都可以，关键是要明白定语和状语的功能都是“修饰”（有点像废话，不过我的意思是平时我统一把他们记为“修饰语”，只有在做题目解释的时候才区分一下）。

prep1-188 中，A 选项 "having amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood"，你可以把这个成分理解成状语，也可以理解为定语，修饰的都是 Neuroscientists 这个主体或这个主体发出的动作，只要你把 having 看做定语和状语时，句意理解起来是一样的，那么就没有歧义问题。

而 prep1-97: Industrialization and modern methods of insect control have improved the standard of living around the globe while at the same time they have introduced some 100,000 dangerous chemical pollutants, having gone virtually unregulated since they were developed more than 50 years ago. 这里面 having 可能修饰 pollutants，也可能修饰 they have introduced some 100,000 dangerous chemical pollutants 整个分句，所以 having 产生了修饰歧义

- 3) having done 可以做非限定性修饰，不能做限定性修饰。

夸克的语法大全里面明确写出 having done 做限定性修饰是错误的：

The perfective aspect cannot usually be expressed in the finite clause:

wrong: The man having won the race is my brother.

correct: The man who has won the race is my brother.

也就是说，完成时的 ing 分词形式(having done)作为限制性的修饰是不可以的，但是可以作为非限制性的修饰。

- 4) having done 短语中所表达的内容发生在主句动作之前
- 5) When having done 结构一定错，因为不应该有 when。单是 Having done 就够了。Have 有很多地方与正牌动词不同，When 后就不能用 having 了。原因是 having done 是过去，而 when 是当时，所以有冲突。

4. a wealth of 大量的

### 选项分析：

- A. Correct;
- B. 句子结构不完整，and前半分句没有谓语动词；over the past twenty years错误修饰adulthood
- C. having amassed改成了amassing时态上发生变化，即amass发生的时间有变化，使得逻辑不合理；句子结构不完整，and前半分句没有谓语动词；over the past twenty years错误修饰adulthood
- D. 由于v-ing短语无法伴随修饰现在完成时，伴随动作与伴随结果均不对
- E. 同D

### OG12-21 对本题解释：

#### **Grammatical construction; Logical predication**

This sentence introduces the subject (*Neuroscientists*), pauses to explain what neuroscientists have accomplished in the past twenty years, and then concludes by explaining what neuroscientists are presently doing as a result of their past accomplishments. The second part of the sentence—the explanation—interrupts the flow of the sentence from the subject (*Neuroscientists*) to the predicate (*are now drawing solid conclusions ...*); it should therefore be bracketed by commas. The sentence construction should provide a main verb for the subject *neuroscientists*.

- A. **Correct.** The explanatory phrase between the subject and predicate is set off by commas, and the main

clause contains both a subject (*Neuroscientists*) and a corresponding verb (*are now drawing*).

- B. *And are* indicates that *are* follows a previous verb, but in fact the sentence has not yet provided a first main verb for the subject *Neuroscientists*; the sentence is therefore incomplete; *over the ... years* appears to be modifying *adulthood*.
- C. *Amassing*, like *having amassed*, functions as an adjective, not a verb; the sentence therefore lacks the first main verb implied by the compound verb construction *and are now drawing*. ...
- D. The final descriptor in present tense, *now drawing conclusions* ... does not fit the opening clause, which is in present-perfect tense (*have amassed a wealth* ...) and seems to modify *adulthood*.
- E. Like D, this sentence attempts to attach a present-tense descriptor to a present-perfect clause.

## 189. (OG12-123)

She was less successful after she had emigrated to New York compared to her native Germany, photographer Lotte Jacobi nevertheless earned a small group of discerning admirers, and her photographs were eventually exhibited in prestigious galleries across the United States.

- A. She was less successful after she had emigrated to New York compared to
- B. Being less successful after she had emigrated to New York as compared to
- C. Less successful after she emigrated to New York than she had been in
- D. Although she was less successful after emigrating to New York when compared to
- E. She had been less successful after emigrating to New York than in

题目释义: she.....,photographer LJ.....,and .....

### 考点:

句子结构, 比较对象对等

- 1. Less要与than搭配, 不能与(as) compared to搭配。
- 2. Run-on sentence.

aeoluseros关于run-on sentence知识点的补充说明:

找过很多解释, 包括一些语法书(也包括老外的)、百度, 始终觉得措辞上不合适, 不过在了一本手册上终于看到了满意的解释:

run-on sentence 连写句:

连写句指错误将两个独立分句合写在一个句子里面没有正确地用标点分离。

连写句有两种类型:

溶合句(fused sentence): 根本不使用标点把两个独立分句合写在一个句子里

逗号错误(comma splice):使用逗号但没有并列连词将两个独立分句写在一个句子里。

BTW: 所谓的独立分句即"主句", 其对应的是"从句", 都属于"分句"。

而run-on sentence的重点在于其改正方法:

- 1) 分为两个句子
- 2) 用一个逗号加上and, but, or或者其他并列连词
- 3) 两个句子中间使用分号

This sentence compares the success J experienced after moving to New York to the success she had previously experienced in Germany. The phrase *less successful* anticipates the conclusion of the comparison with the phrase *than...*. The main subject of the sentence is *photographer LJ*, and the main

verb is *earned*. The opening clause *She was less successful...*. Therefore creates a comma splice if the comma is not followed by a conjunction. The most efficient way to incorporate the information about J's comparative successes in Germany and in New York is to turn the clause into an adjectival phase describing J. (FROM OG12)

### 选项分析:

- A. *Less successful...* anticipates *than* rather than *compared to...*; a comma is insufficient to join two independent clauses into a single sentence.
- B. *As compare to* is an incorrect way to complete the comparison introduced by *less*; *being...* is unnecessarily wordy and awkward.
- C. Correct.
- D. *When compared to* is an incorrect phrase to complete the comparison introduced by *less*.
- E. A comma is insufficient to join two independent clauses into a single sentence; past-perfect tense is misleading, since it refers to J's experience in New York, which in fact followed her experience in Germany.

## 190.

The thirteen original British colonies in North America, some formed as commercial ventures, others as religious havens, each had a written charter that set forth its form of government and the rights of the colonists.

- A. some formed as commercial ventures, others as religious havens, each had a written charter
- B. some being formed as a commercial venture, others as religious havens, all of which had written charters
- C. some that formed as commercial ventures, others as religious havens, all had written charters
- D. with some being formed as a commercial venture, others as religious havens, all had a written charter
- E. with some formed as commercial ventures, while others as religious havens, each had a written charter

题目释义: The thirteen..., some..., others..., each...

### 考点:

1. 独立主格, 表示伴随, 所以必须修饰主谓宾结构, 而非主系表结构。  
独立主格三种形式:
  - 1)一般形式(独立部分与主句部分无太多关联) n.+n., n.+V-ed/v-ing, n.+介词短语/形容词短语
  - 2)with形式(与主句主语有紧密的逻辑关系): with+宾语+宾补, 如: with+n.+v-ed/v-ing/介词短语/形容词短语
  - 3)each形式(必须前面有复数名词): each+v-ed/v-ing, each+介词短语/形容词短语, each+n.+介词短语

\*: with型独立主格在GMAT中常常被判累赘。
2. 固定搭配some...others
3. set forth 阐明, 宣布, 提出, 陈列, 出发

选项分析:

- A. Correct; some formed as commercial ventures, others as religious havens 做为 the thirteen original British colonies in North America 的同位语, each 为 the thirteen original British colonies 的同位语
- B. Being 多余; all 与后面的 its 单复形式不统一; 全句缺少谓语动词
- C. some that formed 结构中 some 在定语从句中做主语, 主动行使 form 动作错误; all 与后面的 its 单复形式不统一
- D. with 的存在使得 some 并不是指代 colonies, 而是与 colonies 相关的东西; all 与后面的 its 单复形式不统一; 这里 with 并没有夹心修饰的歧义, 因为 all/each 和 colonies 是同一类东西, 所以向前向后修饰逻辑上都一样 (夹心修饰见 prep 1-207 补充说明)。
- E. with 的存在使得 some 不是指代 colonies, 而是与 colonies 相关的东西; while 多余, 因为后面的 others as religious havens 中没有谓语动词, while 必须省 (如果有谓语动词则不能省, 如 Some cleaned the windows, while others mopped the floor)。

## 191.

The loan company announced it would soon lend money to borrowers with proven records of their not paying back their loans on time, collectively known as the subprime lending market.

- A. of their not paying back their loans on time,  
B. of not paying back their loans on time, a group  
C. of not paying back their loans on time, with such a group  
D. that they do not pay back their loans on time,  
E. that they do not pay back their loans on time, such a group

题目释义: loan company announced (that)...borrowers with proven records of ..., a group known as...

考点:

## 1. 同位语

## 1)、同位结构的特征

- (1) 起修饰语的作用, 一般用于修饰名词或名词短语; “解释的是整个名词, 不是名短中某个词”, 故同位语不是核心词修饰。
- (2) 必须对其修饰对象具有解释力;
- (3) 位置: 名词前或名词后, 一般在修饰对象的后面;
- (4) 不影响主谓一致 (谓语应该和主语保持一致, 而不是和同位语);
- (5) 同位结构中名词的数可以和其修饰对象的数不一致。

## 2)、同位结构的形式

- (1) 名词性同位语: 名词解释名词。(以下三种, 第二个 n. 后可以跟修饰词)

- i. N., n.;

- ii. n., a/an + n. 或 a/an + n., n.;

- iii. the + n., n. (前面的 the + n. 为同位结构)

- (2) 内容具体化同位结构: 抽象名词 (theory/evidence/belief/principle) + that 从句, that 从句对抽象名词进行具体化解释 (注意与 of 结构的区别), that 从句部分才是同位语。 (that 是小品词, 连词, 和一般的名词性 that 分句中的 that 一样)

- (3) 概括性同位语：用一个概括性的名词去概括前面的修饰对象：短语/句子，n.  
+ that/doing/done...  
(4) 名词重复性同位结构：n,n (重复所修饰的名词) +that 定语从句  
(5) 代词代替性同位结构：n,one/ones+that 定语从句

### 3)、同位语从句

有很多名词后可以跟 that 引起的从句，说明其内容，可以称作同位语从句。

He referred to Copernicus's statement that the earth moves round the sun.

有时同位语从句可以和同位的名词分开。（其实是同位语从句太长后置）

The rumour spread that a new school would be built here.

在少数情况下也可用连接副词（代词）引起的从句作同位语。

He had no idea why she left.

2. Proven records: 良好记录

3. Records of sth. 固定搭配，比records that简洁地道。

### 选项分析:

- A. of their not paying back their loans表达不简洁，第一个their累赘；未划线部分的known修饰loans不合理  
B. correct；本题关键在于识别出逗号后面成分的修饰对象 -- borrowers的同位语必须是a group才合理，。  
C. With引导独立主格，其逻辑主语应为主句主语，逻辑不合理；such无所指，错误且多余。  
D. 定语从句在这里表达不简洁地道；未划线部分的known修饰loans不合理  
E. 定语从句在这里表达不简洁地道；such无所指，错误且多余。

### 补充说明:

1. 关于A选项中的they的分析：

with引导一个形容词性介宾短语，我们可以转换为have来看：

borrowers have proven records of not paying back their loans on time, ...

对比：

borrower have proven records that they do not pay back their loans on time,...

可以发现整句就这么一个主语，没有必要再次强调主语they.

## 192.

In 1988, the Council on Economic Priorities began publishing Shopping for a Better World, with the simple thesis of consumers having the power to change companies by the simple expedient of refusing to buy.

- A. with the simple thesis of consumers having  
B. which had the simple thesis of consumers having  
C. where the thesis was simple: consumers having  
D. with a thesis that is a simple one: consumers have  
E. whose thesis was simple: consumers have

题目释义：the Council began publishing SFBW, whose thesis was simple: consumers have...



考点:

定于从句, 同位语从句, 句子结构

1. with型独立主格做伴随状语, 修饰前面分句, 亦可以称修饰前面谓语动词与主语。

选项分析:

- A. 用with引导的非限定性短语做伴随状语错误, 而事实上, thesis是Shopping for a Better World这本书的主题, 不能作为前面整句话的伴随; thesis后面用of不好, thesis变成了某一类特定的consumers, 而合理含义上应该是一个thesis应该是某个现象, 因此要改为that从句(同位语从句), 或者用冒号来引出从句
- B. thesis应该用同位语从句修饰, thesis of sb. doing sth.结构中thesis的核心只是sb., 而并不是"sb做某事"
- C. 关系代词where指向Shopping for a Better World不恰当; 冒号后虽然可以用名词短语, 但此处冒号后核心意思变成了consumers, 而不是"consumers怎么怎么样", 逻辑含义不符。
- D. with的错误同A; a thesis that is a simple one不简洁
- E. correct; thesis的内容是"顾客有……的能力"

## 193.

New equipment and other improvements reduced the amount of time—from eleven hours in 1982 to six in 1988—needed by workers so that they could produce a ton of steel.

- A. needed by workers so that they could produce
- B. needed when workers are producing
- C. workers need in producing
- D. workers needed to produce
- E. workers need for their producing of

题目释义: A reduced the amount of time workers need for doing sth. ...

考点:

- 1. 定语从句: 如果关系代词that在定语从句中做宾语成分, 那么这个that一般都要省略。
- 2. Need 的固定搭配: need sth. for sth. need sth to do

选项分析:

- A. time needed by workers错误, 工人"做什么"需要的时间没有写明; so that + 情态动词表示目的, 整句的含义是: 新器材把工人需要的时间减少了为了工人可以生产一吨煤, 逻辑上不合理; they指代workers没有问题
- B. when扭曲了句子原本要表达的意思, 成了时间状语表示特定时间下才need, 同时工人"做什么"需要的时间没有写明(显然不是生产a ton of steel, 而是在生产a ton of steel中的某一个环节所需要的时间); are与主句的时态不一致
- C. need与主句时态不一致; need sth. in doing搭配错误
- D. correct
- E. 时态不一致; for their producing累赘, 不如to produce简洁有效。

## 194.

Whereas the honeybee's stinger is heavily barbed and cannot be retracted from the skin, because the yellow jacket has a comparatively smooth stinger, it is therefore able to be pulled out and used again.

- A. because the yellow jacket has a comparatively smooth stinger, it is therefore able to be pulled out and used
- B. the comparative smoothness of the yellow jacket's stinger allows them to pull it out and then can therefore use it
- C. the yellow jacket's stinger is comparatively smooth, and can therefore be pulled out and used
- D. in comparison, the yellow jacket's stinger is smooth, and thus able to be pulled out and used
- E. in comparison, the yellow jacket has a smooth stinger, thus allowing it to be pulled out and used

题目释义: Whereas the HBS is barbed and cannot be retracted..., YJS is smooth and can...

### 考点:

1. 句子完整结构 (结合前面提到的run-on)
  - 1) S+V1+O1, and V2+O2. 是很常见的结构. and 之后的主语是 S, 可是被省了.
  - 2) S+V1+O1, and pronoun(指代 S)+V2+O2. 也是很常见的结构.  
一般在 and 之后用 pronoun 指代 S 作主语是因为 and 跟 S 的距离太远.
  - 3) S+V1+O1 and pronoun(指代 S)+V2+O2. 被 OG10 列为 run-on sentence
2. can 和 be able to 的区别:

You can say that somebody **is able to** do something, but **can** is more usual.

Bau **can** has only two forms: **can** and **could**. So sometimes it is necessary to use **be able to**.

For instance: **I will be able to get the car in a week.**

就是说不需要从意思上(能力还是可能性)加以区分, 只要注意时态和对称的角度看哪个更合适就行。

\*\*：can 和 be able to 在与主语搭配逻辑上没有问题的情况下(如主语都是“人”，而不是物)，可以平行。

### 选项分析:

- A. whereas表示对比, 但前后分句逻辑上无法形成对比(because从句也属于夹心修饰); 因为前面未划线部分用的是cannot, 后面用can更加呼应; be able to be done错误; it指向yellow jacket错误
- B. the comparative smoothness of结构复杂(形容词形式简洁于名词形式), 且与前面不对称; them指代不明; use的动作发出者为smoothness错误
- C. correct; 从形合上直接判断C也是最好的: whereas honeybee's stinger is barbed, yellow jacket's stinger is smooth; cannot be retracted与can be pulled out。注意! 形合意合的方法是迅速解决难题的一大技巧。另外还有一处意合点: comparatively与前面heavily的对称, 可以直接排除B,C,D。
- D. In comparison 和 whereas 语义重复; 因为前面未划线部分用的是cannot, 后面用can更加呼应。
- E. In comparison 和 whereas 语义重复; 划线部分与前面未划线部分不对称, ineffective。

## 195. (GWD-7-Q13)

Like the grassy fields and old pastures that the upland sandpiper needs for feeding and nesting when it returns in May after wintering in the Argentine Pampas, the sandpipers vanishing in the northeastern United States is a result of residential and industrial development and of changes in farming practices.

- A. the sandpipers vanishing in the northeastern United States is a result of residential and industrial development and of changes in



- B. the bird itself is vanishing in the northeastern United States as a result of residential and industrial development and of changes in
- C. that the birds themselves are vanishing in the northeastern United States is due to residential and industrial development and changes to
- D. in the northeastern United States, sandpipers' vanishing is due to residential and industrial development and to changes in
- E. in the northeastern United States, the sandpipers' vanishing, a result of residential and industrial development and changing

题目释义: Like the grassy fields and old pastures..., the birds are vanishing...

### 考点:

1. 比较: like/unlike的对比双方需要遵循严格词性、功能等的平行。
2. Due to可以用attributed to或caused by替代来权衡逻辑上是否合理, 其次due to, similar to, differing from等有形容词性质的介词, GMAT中一般不能出现在句首。

aeoluseros补充说明:

- 1) due to 一般作为复杂介词与 owing to 同义。然而有些人认为 due 在该组合中是形容词, 因此反对下句中的用法, 因为它违背了无动词分句的依附规则:

Due to bad weather, classes have been cancelled today.

那些人认为下句是可以的: Cancellation of classes today is due to bad weather.

由于 GMAT 语法的严格性, due to 也不应该被放在句首。

- 2) due to 有 attribute, caused by 的意思。

**Due to** means "cause by". It should only be used if it can be substituted with "caused by".

It does not mean the same thing as "because of",

Incorrect: The game was postponed due to rain.

Correct: The game was postponed because of rain.

Correct: The game's postponement was due to rain.

### 选项分析:

- A. the sandpipers vanishing的中心词是sandpipers不是一个result, vanishing只是修饰语, 且sandpipers与后面的is主谓不一致
- B. correct; 就像草原和牧场, sandpiper itself 在消失→like 的比较对象很平行
- C. that引导的名词性从句描述的是一个事件与the grassy fields and old pastures不对等
- D. sandpipers' vanishing事件与the grassy fields and old pastures不对等。由于like/unlike的比较相对严格, 所以比较对象应尽可能接近, 所以把in the northeastern United States放在中间很awkward
- E. the sandpipers' vanishing事件与the grassy fields and old pastures不对等; 主句不完整, 缺少谓语; development与changes平行, 不与practices平行

### 补充说明:

1. 注意这里未划线部分the grassy fields and old pastures的定语从句that the upland sandpiper needs中的that没有省略, 因为that后面成分过于复杂, 加入that句子结构更为清晰。
2. 注意未划线部分it的提示, 数的单复。
3. Change做n, 搭配: Change in; Change of; Change from A to B

## 196. (T-9-Q26) (OG12-11)

There are several ways to build solid walls using just mud or clay, but the most extensively used method has been the forming of bricks out of mud or clay, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, they are laid in the wall in mud mortar.

- A. the forming of bricks out of mud or clay, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, they are laid
- B. forming the mud or clay into bricks, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, to lay them
- C. having bricks formed from mud or clay, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, they were laid
- D. to form the mud or clay into bricks, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, to lay them
- E. that bricks were formed from mud or clay, which, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, were laid

题目释义: ... the most extensively used method has been to do sth. and to do sth....

考点:

- 1. 平行考得非常严重的一个题
- 2. 搭配:
  - (1) Aim, goal, intention, objective, function, way, method, purpose + be + to do当然最常用的还是 method of doing/for doing
  - (2) Use, cite, function, regard, think/conceive of, view, act + as
  - (3) Consider, deem, make, call, find, elect+宾语+宾补

选项分析:

- A. the method与the forming不对等; the forming of bricks out of mud or clay和they are laid in the wall in mud mortar不平行; they指代不明
- B. forming the mud or clay into bricks与to lay them不平行
- C. having bricks formed from mud or clay, they were laid不平行
- D. Correct; 本题主考平行; several ways可以与there be搭配; A method is to do X and to do Y常见搭配; and后面加上逗号的表达并不常见, 从本题可见GMAT接受这样的用法(prep1-247也出现类似用法)
- E. Which指代错误, 它无法跨越谓语动词指向bricks; 一般过去时错误

OG12-11 的解释

The purpose of the sentence is to describe the historically most popular method of building walls. The first clause announces this topic and the second clause describes the particular method. The clearest, most efficient way to accomplish these two pieces of business is to use a parallel structure. The *ways to build* in the first clause is narrowed to the single way *to form* and *to lay* in the second clause. There is no need to alternate the verb phrases between active and passive voice or to shift tenses.

- A. The active gerund phrase *the forming of bricks* does not fit with the passive verb phrase that follows (*they are laid*).
- B. The verb phrases *forming the mud ...* and *to lay them* are not parallel.
- C. In addition to faulty parallelism between *having bricks formed* and *they were laid*, the tense in the second half of the sentence unaccountably shifts from present to past.

- D. Correct. The phrases *to form* and *to lay* in the second clause are parallel to *to build* in the first clause.
- E. The relative clause beginning with *which* apparently (but nonsensically) describes the closest nouns, *mud or clay*, rather than *bricks*.

## 197. (GWD-8-Q20)

Not only did the systematic clearing of forests in the United States create farmland (especially in the Northeast) and gave consumers relatively inexpensive houses and furniture, but it also caused erosion and very quickly deforested whole regions.

- A. Not only did the systematic clearing of forests in the United States create farmland (especially in the Northeast) and gave consumers relatively inexpensive houses and furniture, but it also
- B. Not only did the systematic clearing of forests in the United States create farmland (especially in the Northeast), which gave consumers relatively inexpensive houses and furniture, but also
- C. The systematic clearing of forests in the United States, creating farmland (especially in the Northeast) and giving consumers relatively inexpensive houses and furniture, but also
- D. The systematic clearing of forests in the United States created farmland (especially in the Northeast) and gave consumers relatively inexpensive houses and furniture, but it also
- E. The systematic clearing of forests in the United States not only created farmland (especially in the Northeast), giving consumers relatively inexpensive houses and furniture, but it

题目释义: The systematic clearing of forests did sth....,but it also...

### 考点:

1. 平行, 关于not only...but also, 参见本题后补充说明所摘录的Zeldaw里程碑式的帖子:
2. 逻辑为王:

如果你一眼看出这个句子考not only, but also于是开始找答案, 恭喜你, 又上当了。

做题的时候要弄清楚句子的意思是递进还是转折,如果是递进not only...but also 没问题,如果是转折的话,就要考虑一下是否是GMAC的陷阱了, but/but also才是表示转折的意思。

### 选项分析:

- A. not only 位于句首时, 所引导的句子要用倒装, give 和 create 是 and 连接的两个并列成分, 而时态已经被 did 提前, 只能用原形, 所以这里 gave 错; But it also 在此没有错, 例见本题后补充的大全 354。
- B. Which 定语从句修饰 farmland, 逻辑意义错误, 是 systematic clearing 给了 consumers houses and furniture, 不是 farmland。
- C. But also 之前分句缺谓语
- D. Correct; But it also 转折前后句, 说明 systematic clearing 既带来了好东西, 也带了坏东西, also 的使用, 精妙。
- E. Giving 修饰 created,改变了原来的句意: 并列的两个动作; Not only...but...也可以, 例见大全 189、241。

### 补充说明:

Zeldaw 的帖子摘录如下:

关于 not only...but also.....从 GWD8-20 总结出的

看了 GWD8-20, 以前的 NN 讨论的太好了,可是藏的太深,很多人都看不见,后来又看了好些的帖子,,收益良多.所以我把大家观点总结一下,

首先 Not only.....but (also)表示的关系是递进, 其中 also 可以省略

But/but also 表示的是转折. 在 but also 中, ring\_cheng 认为 also 不属于重复, 所以应当保留.该观点尚未证实.

not only ...but also 表示并列, 不能表示转折, 不要有先入为主的感觉认为 not only...but also 必须一起出现. 单独出现 but also 是可能的, 此时表示的是转折, 参见大全 74

All-terrain vehicles have allowed vacationers to reach many previously inaccessible areas, but they have also been blamed for causing hundreds of deaths, injury to thousands, and seriously damaging the nation's recreational areas.

- (A) deaths, injury to thousands, and seriously damaging
- (B) deaths and injuring thousands, and serious damage to
- (C) deaths, thousands who are injured, as well as seriously damaging
- (D) deaths and thousands of injuries, as well as doing serious damage to (D)
- (E) deaths, thousands are injured, and they do serious damage to

关于 not only...but also.. 的用法,我根据前人的发言并结合 GMAT 的思路挑出了这几条:

1.在正常语序中: not only ... but also 应连接两个相对称的并列成分。例如:

Not only Mr Lin but also his son joined the Party two years ago. (连接两个主语)

I not only play tennis but also practise shooting. (连接两个谓语动词)

He plays not only the piano but also the violin. (连接两个宾语)

在正常语序中: 短语本身不可以加入其它成份, 比如变成: not only...but it also...是错误的(因为破坏了平衡)。

如大全中:

125.The winds that howl across the Great Plains not only blow away valuable topsoil, thereby reducing the potential crop yield of a tract of land, and also damage or destroy young plants.

- (A) and also damage or destroy
- (B) as well as damaging or destroying
- (C) but they also cause damage or destroy
- (D) but also damage or destroy (D)
- (E) but also causing damage or destroying

Choice D, the best answer, correctly employs the correlative construction *not only x but also y*, where *x* and *y* are grammatically parallel and where both *x* and *y* (*damage and destroy*) apply to *young plants*. Choices A, (*not only... and also*), B (*not only... as well as*), and C (*not only... but they also*) violate the *not only... but also* paradigm. Moreover, B contains terms (*blow... damaging*) that are not parallel. In C and E, *damage* is used not as a verb with *young plants* as its direct object but as a noun receiving the action of *cause*; consequently, these choices fail to state explicitly that the damage is done to *young plants*. E also violates parallelism (*not only blow... but also causing*)

2. not only ... but also 连接两个主语时, 谓语动词要和与其最近的主语保持人称和数的一致。例如:

Not only the students but also the teacher **was** against the plan. / Not only the teacher but also the students were against the plan.

3. not only ... but also 不能用在否定句中。例如:

误: They don't fear not only hardship but also death.

正: They fear neither hardship nor death.

正: They don't fear either hardship or death.

4. not only ... but also 连接两个分句，并且 not only 位于句首时，第一个分句中的主语和谓语要部分倒装。例如：

Not only does the sun give us light, but also it gives us heat.

Not only did he speak English correctly, but he also speaks it fluently.

《新编英语语法》薄冰 P633: Not only does he compose music, but he also play./ Not only does he have to type out the answer on a computer, but he also gets the computer to translate it into sounds.

《新编英语语法》章振邦 1005: She was not only compelled to stay at home, but she was also forbidden to see her friends

英语语法大全上的例句是： Not only did they break into his office and steal his books, but they also tore up his manuscripts. 所以我个人认为在倒装的情况下, but also 是可以被主语拆开的。

这里附上 ring\_cheng 的观点:倒装时可以在短语中插入某类成分，如：not only did sb do sth, but sb also did sth （之所以前后都加入主语，不是为了连接主语，而是为了句子的对仗工整而补足主语，连接的其实是主语的两个不同的谓语动作。又因为 not only 在句首已经倒装过了，所以 but also 用正常语序即可。依然满足句子平衡的要求）。如大全 354 中 but also 被主语+助动词拆开：

354. In 1978 a national study found that not only had many contractors licensed by a self-policing private guild failed to pass qualifying exams, they in addition falsified their references.

- A. they in addition falsified their references
- B. they had their references falsified in addition
- C. but they had also falsified their references
- D. they had also falsified their references (C)
- E. but their references were falsified as well

## 198. (GWD-1-Q23)

Past assessments of the Brazilian rain forest have used satellite images to tally deforested areas, where farmers and ranchers have clear-cut and burned all the trees, but such work has not addressed either logging, which is the removal of only selected trees, as well as surface fires, burning down individual trees but do not denude the forest.

- A. which is the removal of only selected trees, as well as surface fires, burning
- B. which removes only selected trees, or surface fires that burn
- C. which removes only selected trees, along with surface fires that burn
- D. removing only selected trees, or surface fires, burning
- E. removing only selected trees, as well as surface fires that burn

题目释义：..., but such work has not addressed either logging, which..., or surface fires, that burn...but do not denude the forest...

### 考点：

1. 定语从句与分词短语作定语的区别：

1) 定语从句强调具体时间具体动作,以及动作的一次性;

1. 分词短语强调笼统不确定的时间，抽象/客观/重复性/多次性的行为

2) 都可以接受时,分词短语优于定语从句(更简洁),定语从句要转换为分词短语(但不能引起歧义或破坏平行)

3) 定语从句包含情态动词时不能转化为分词短语

4) ing分词的完成时态不能充当名词的定语,必须转化为定语从句n. + having done —》 n. that...

2. either...or平行搭配

### 选项分析:

- A. which is the removal表达不简洁; either.... as well as搭配错误; Burning和denude不平行
- B. Correct; either ... or的平行, removes和burn的平行。
- C. either...along with搭配错误。
- D. Burning和denude不平行
- E. either.... as well as搭配错误;

## 199. (GWD5-Q4)

The Quechuans believed that all things participated in both the material level and the mystical level of reality, and many individual Quechuans claimed to have contact with it directly with an ichana (dream) experience.

- A. contact with it directly with
- B. direct contact with it by way of
- C. contact with the last directly through
- D. direct contact with the latter by means of
- E. contact directly with the mystical level due to

题目释义: Q believed that all things participated in both A and B, and many Q claimed to have direct contact with the latter by means of...

### 考点:

词性, 固定搭配

- 1. 通过...方式: through... /by means of.../with.../by way of...

### 选项分析:

- A. it指代不清; directly有修饰contact或with an ichana experience的歧义: 修饰contact时意为通过ichana来直接接触, 修饰with短语意为只能通过ichana来接触(不一定是直接接触)
- B. it指代不清
- C. 两者之间的后者应该用later; directly有修饰contact或through an ichana experience的歧义: 修饰contact时意为通过ichana来直接接触, 修饰through短语意为只能通过ichana来接触(不一定是直接接触)。
- D. Correct; direct直接修饰contact最合理
- E. due to不能引导表原因, 用此逻辑不符; directly错误同A

## 200. (T-3-Q14)

A scrub jay can remember when it cached a particular piece of food in a particular place, researchers have discovered, and tend not to bother to recover a perishable treat if stored long enough to have rotted.



- A. tend not to bother to recover a perishable treat if
- B. they tend not to bother recovering a perishable treat
- C. tending not to bother to recover a perishable treat it
- D. tends not to bother recovering a perishable treat
- E. tends not bothering to recover a perishable treat it

题目释义: A scrub jay can remember ..., ..., and tends not to bother recovering a treat...

### 考点:

主谓一致 (Agreement), 平行对称 (Parallelism)

- 1. 主谓一致
- 2. 固定搭配:
  - 1) Tend用法  
Tend to do sth -- If something tends to happen, it happens often and is likely to happen again  
Tend to sb/sth 照顾
  - 2) Bother(费功夫)的固定搭配:  
(not) bother to do something He didn't bother to answer the question.  
not bother about/with He didn't bother with a reply.  
(not) bother doing something Many young people didn't bother voting.
- 3. scrub jay 林鸟

### 选项分析:

- A. tend单复数错误, 应为单数, 对应主语A scrub jay; if从句省去主谓, 还原后主语是jay而不是treat, 错误; Bother to do/bother doing都是对的
- B. they指代不明, 与scrub jay单复数不一致
- C. and后分句少谓语; it多余, 有了it, 指代的是jay, 后面的stored要用stores, 因为it stores long enough 已经是一个定语从句, 但此时have rotted作为it即jay的动作又逻辑不合理, 所以依然错误
- D. Correct; tends使用正确, 主谓一致; bother doing用法idiomatic; stored后置定语修饰treat正确
- E. tend doing没有这种用法; it多余, 错误同C

## 201. (GWD30-Q4)

The three women, liberal activists who strongly support legislation in favor of civil rights and environmental protection, have consistently received labor's unqualifying support.

- A. have consistently received labor's unqualifying support
- B. are consistently receiving the unqualifying support of labor
- C. have consistently received the unqualified support of labor
- D. receive consistent and unqualified support by labor
- E. are receiving consistent and unqualified support by labor

题目释义: The three women, ..., have consistently received....



考点:

1. by someone 修饰的动词, 所以不能 receive support by labor
2. support 作为 n.时的固定搭配:  
(have/receive/win) support of/from someone 来自某人的支持  
support for something/someone 支持某事/某人  
in support of something 支持某事
3. unqualifying 与 unqualified(from manhattan)  
unqualifying 释义: not meeting some sort of standard for qualification  
unqualified 释义: without any sort of restriction or reservation
4. 关于时态使用: 除非 1.原句有明显的动词时态和状语搭配错误。(比如用过去时修饰 NEVER,用完成时修饰 YESTERDAY) 2.原句有明显的语法问题, 而语法正确答案之中, 没有和原句一致的时态; 其他情况, 慎重修改原句时态。另外, 现在完成时态, 一般不需要明显的时间词就可以使用, 因为它所隐含的时间是现在 now.

选项分析:

- A. unqualifying使没有资格的, 意思不对, 应该用unqualified绝对的(used for emphasizing that a quality is complete and total), 记住unqualified support常用表达。N's n或n of N, 都可以, 能表达清楚意思又简洁的为上, 这里labor's后面已经有一个unqualified这种不是专门为了组成名词短语而存在的形容词(如 vocal tract)了, 所以还是用n of N比较清晰。
- B. are consistently receiving不能算错, 只是其和原句have consistently received的时态不符, 一般没有特殊原因不改变原句的逻辑意思, 时态等, 除非有很明显的标志, 有必改不可的原因; unqualifying错误。
- C. correct; A,B根据unqualifying排除; D,E根据support by labor排除(by sb.修饰的是动词); support of/from someone正确搭配
- D. 用一般现在时也是合理的, 时态没有问题; 错误的用consistent修饰support改变原句含义; receive support by labor错误, 正确搭配是support of/from labor
- E. 用consistent修饰support改变原句含义; receive support by labor错误

补充说明:

Prep08版着实有几个地方强调不更改A句的含义, 基本可以有这样的结论: 如果A句逻辑含义合理, 则没有特殊原因(比如与A句逻辑含义相同的选项都有明显错误), 那么就不可以随意更改句意。

## 202. (GWD-27-Q7)

Providing initial evidence that airports are a larger source of pollution than they were once believed to be, environmentalists in Chicago report that the total amount of pollutant emitted annually by vehicles at O'Hare International Airport is twice as much as that which is being emitted annually by all motor vehicles in the Chicago metropolitan area.

- A. as much as that which is being emitted annually by all
- B. as much annually as is emitted by the
- C. as much compared to what is annually emitted by all
- D. that emitted annually by all
- E. that emitted annually compared to the

题目释义：Providing initial evidence..., environmentalists...the total amount of pollutant emitted annually by vehicles at O'Hare International Airport **is twice....**

考点：

1. 比较结构
2. 倍数表达：twice (as much as) sth.; X times adj. than; X times as adj. as; double sth.
3. as, than 可以做比较从句的主语，例：  
In one of the bloodiest battles of the Civil War, fought at Sharpsburg, Maryland, on September 17, 1862, four times as many Americans were killed as would later be killed on the beaches of Normandy during D-Day. As 指代了 Americans。

选项分析：

- A. is being 错误，且 as 可以做比较从句的主语，删去 being 后可以直接用 as much as is emitted annually; 但是即便如此 amount X is twice as much as amount Y 也不如直接 twice amount Y 简洁
- B. annually 位置错误，应该放在 is emitted 后面修饰 emitted
- C. as...compared to 搭配错误；what is annually emitted by all 中 what 的范围大于 the total amount of pollutant，而且其实可以简化
- D. Correct; twice 后面可以直接接名词，twice as much as 也是对的
- E. compared to 多余，且 compared to 的比较两端不平行，一边是 pollutants，一边是 motor vehicles

## 203. (T-4-Q29)

In late 1997, the chambers inside the pyramid of the Pharaoh Menkaure at Giza were closed to visitors for cleaning and repair due to moisture exhaled by tourists, which raised its humidity to such levels so that salt from the stone was crystallizing and fungus was growing on the walls.

- A. due to moisture exhaled by tourists, which raised its humidity to such levels so that salt from the stone was crystallizing
- B. due to moisture that tourists had exhaled, thereby raising its humidity to such levels that salt from the stone would crystallize
- C. because tourists were exhaling moisture, which had raised the humidity within them to levels such that salt from the stone would crystallize
- D. because of moisture that was exhaled by tourists raising the humidity within them to levels so high as to make the salt from the stone crystallize
- E. because moisture exhaled by tourists had raised the humidity within them to such levels that salt from the stone was crystallizing

题目释义：C...were closed....because moisture had raised the humidity... to such levels that...

考点：

1. Because of 后只能加简单的名词结构，because of sb's doing 一定要改成 because 这种情况同样适用于 due to, despite (in spite of), as a result of
2. 代词指代
3. Such/so...that 固定搭配。Such ... so that 搭配错误。

选项分析:

- A. due to moisture无法表达closed for cleaning and repair的直接原因；用which引导非限定性定语从句不能表达出该有的意思；such...so that固定习语使用错误；its无所指代。
- B. due to moisture无法表达closed for cleaning and repair的直接原因。thereby raising用法awkward；its无所指；such that + would(情态动词)是表达目的，逻辑含义错误；stone would crystallize和fungus was growing on the walls不平行。
- C. tourists were exhaling moisture无法表达closed for cleaning and repair的直接原因；Which在GMAT里面不可以指代前面整个分句（至今没有一道官方题目有which指代前面整句）；Such that + would(情态动词)是表达目的，逻辑含义错误；them指代了tourists错误；stone would crystallize和fungus was growing on the walls不平行。
- D. because of moisture无法表达closed for cleaning and repair的直接原因；so ... as to make使得与后面的fungus was growing on the walls不平行；that was exhaled没有必要补出that was，累赘。
- E. Correct. humidity within them...tourists身体里面不可能包含有humidity，而且by tourists在从句的介宾短语里，是不会被指代的，所以them不会指代混乱。

补充说明:

根据逻辑含义本题可以迅速得出选项：

首先were closed to visitors for cleaning and repair的原因，只有一个，就是“潮气引发了什么”而使得它需要修理了，只有E表达了这个意思，其他选项，看前三个词，就可以排除。A,B,D表达的是，是因为“潮气”本身，使得他们要修。C表达的是，旅客们呼出潮气，所以他们会关闭整修，也是不对的。只有E，表达出了潮气引起了湿度上升，所以chambers要关闭整修。

## 204. (T-9-Q16) (OG12-53)

The nineteenth-century chemist Humphry Davy presented the results of his early experiments in his "Essay on Heat and Light," a critique of all chemistry since Robert Boyle as well as a vision of a new chemistry that Davy hoped to found.

- A. a critique of all chemistry since Robert Boyle as well as a vision of a  
 B. a critique of all chemistry following Robert Boyle and also his envisioning of a  
 C. a critique of all chemistry after Robert Boyle and envisioning as well  
 D. critiquing all chemistry from Robert Boyle forward and also a vision of  
 E. critiquing all the chemistry done since Robert Boyle as well as his own envisioning of

题目释义：“essay on heat and light”，a critique of...as well as a vision of...

考点:

句子结构（grammatical construction） 平行结构（parallelism） 逻辑意思（logical predication）

## 1. 同位语

同位语结构的形式：（参考白勇语法）

1) 名词性同位语， 名词解释名词：

n. , n. ; n. , a/an + n. 或 a/an + n. , n.

2) that引导同位语结构：

抽象名词(evidence, result, principle等等) + that从句, that从句对抽象名词进行具体化解释

## 3) 概括性同位语结构:

用一个概括性的名词去概括前面的解释对象;短语/句子, a program/ an advance/ a practice that...

## 4) 名词重复性同位语结构:

n., n.(重复所修饰的名词) + that...或 n., the same n.(重复所修饰的名词) that...

2. as well as前后对称, 并且应当注意的是在A as well as B的用法中, 强调的是A。

选项分析:

- A. correct; a critique是“essay on heat and light”的同位语; a critique和a vision在as well as前后对称
- B. critique与his envisioning不平行; envisioning有具体的名词形式即vision, 应直接用名词; his指代不清
- C. critique与envisioning不平行; and...as well混搭累赘; envisioning有具体的名词形式即vision, 应直接用名词。
- D. critiquing做伴随状语修饰前面分句错误; critiquing和a vision在and also前后不对称。From...forward不简洁, 不如直接用since。
- E. done多余; envisioning错误同B; his own改变句意; all the chemistry和his own envisioning的对称使得Davy批判的是他自己;

OG12-53 解释:

Parallelism; Rhetorical construction

The main objective of the sentence is to describe “Essay on Heat and Light” as Davy’s presentation of his own experiments and to further explain that the essay served as both a critique of previous chemistry and a vision of a new kind of chemistry. The clearest, most effective form for providing this explanation of the essay’s function is to make *critique* and *vision* both appositives of “Essay on Heat and Light,” and to present them in a parallel structure.

- A. Correct. The phrases describing the essay’s function are presented in parallel form.
  - B. *Critique* and *his envisioning* are not parallel; the phrase *and also his envisioning* is unnecessarily wordy; it is also unclear to whom *his* refers.
  - C. The two descriptors are not parallel.
  - D. The two descriptors are not parallel.
  - E. The meaning is confused in the assertion that Davy critiqued his own vision of chemistry.
- The correct answer is A.

## 205. (T-9-Q15)

The commission’s office of compliance, inspections, and investigations plans to intensify its scrutiny of stock analysts to investigate not only whether research is an independent function at brokerage firms, but also whether conflicts result when analysts own the stocks they write about or when they are paid for their work by a firm’s investment banking division.

- A. to investigate not only whether research is an independent function at brokerage firms, but also whether conflicts result when analysts own the stocks they write about or when they are
- B. to investigate not only whether research is an independent function at brokerage firms, but also if conflicts result when analysts own the stocks they write about or they are
- C. to not only investigate whether or not research is an independent function at brokerage firms, but also if conflicts result when analysts own the stocks they write about or are

- D. not only to investigate whether or not research is an independent function at brokerage firms, but also whether conflicts result when analysts own the stocks they write about or are
- E. not only to investigate whether research is an independent function at brokerage firms, but also whether conflicts result when analysts own the stocks they write about or when

题目释义: The commission's office of compliance and investigations plans to...to investigate not only whether..., but also whether... when analysts...or when they are...

### 考点:

平行结构 (parallelism) 习惯用语 (idiom)

#### 1. not only...but also

重新摘录一下前面提到过的用法:

首先Not only.....but (also)表示的关系是递进, 其中also可以省略.....But/but also表示的是转折.

not only ...but also表示并列, 不能表示转折, 不要有先入为主的感觉认为not only...but also必须一起出现. 单独出现but also是可能的.

- 1) 在正常语序中: not only ... but also 应连接两个相对称的并列成分。  
在正常语序中: 短语本身不可以加入其它成份, 比如变成: not only...but it also...是错误的 (因为破坏了平衡)。
- 2) not only ... but also 连接两个主语时, 谓语动词要和与其最近的主语保持人称和数的一致。
- 3) not only ... but also 不能用在否定句中。
- 4) not only ... but also 连接两个分句, 并且 not only 位于句首时, 第一个分句中的主语和谓语要部分倒装。

#### 2. whether or not的使用: (见the handbook of good english)

- 1) 在引导宾从的时候只能用whether, 而不能加or not, 否则累赘
- 2) 在引导状从的时候必须加上or not, 即whether or not.

#### 3. whether表示列举时候的用法: Whether A, B, or C.

### 选项分析:

- A. correct. Not only...but also前后对称; Whether后省略or not正确; Or前后平行对称。
- B. if在书面语中不能表示“是否”, 只能表示“如果”, 所以应该使用whether, 且not only...but also前后不对称; Or前后不对称。
- C. whether or not不简洁; If错误同B; not only后面跟了动词, but also后面不对称; Or错误同B。
- D. whether错误同C; or错误同B。
- E. not only...but also前后不对称; or错误同B。

## 206. (GWD-21-Q29)

While studying the genetic makeup of corn, a new class of mutant genes was discovered by Barbara McClintock, a discovery which led to greater understanding of cell differentiation.

- A. a new class of mutant genes was discovered by Barbara McClintock, a discovery which led
- B. a new class of mutant genes in corn were discovered by Barbara McClintock, leading
- C. Barbara McClintock discovered a new class of mutant genes, and it led
- D. Barbara McClintock discovered a new class of mutant genes, a discovery that led

E. Barbara McClintock, who discovered a new class of mutant genes, leading

题目释义: while studying the genetic makeup of corn, Barbara McClintock discovered..., a discovery that led...

### 考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

#### 1. 状语从句的省略:

##### 1) 两点省略要求:

第一点是毫无疑问的: 逻辑主语等于句子主语

第二点也是必须的: 从句的谓语必需是be (没要求主句谓语也必需是be! 换句话说状从的省略可以看成是省略了一个be), 且从句主语和谓语要么同省, 要么同留。

##### 2) 形式

(5) 正确形式: 表示时间/条件/转折/让步的连词 (when/while/if/unless/although/even though/even if) + 形容词短语/-ing 短语/-ed 短语

(逻辑主语等于句子主语) (所以 when a child/ when children 是错的; if + n. 也是错的)

(6) 错误形式: 表示时间/条件/转折的连词 + 介词短语/名词短语 (although just inside the orbit of Jupiter 是错的)(OG10-69)

(7) 特殊情况: once 可以加介词短语/名词短语; whatever 可以加名词短语

#### 2. 同位语结构

### 选项分析:

- A. While studying 状语从句的省略在句首, studying 的逻辑主语为句子主语, 执行 studying 动作的应该是人, a new class of mutant genes 错误; 要用 that 引导限制性定语从句。
- B. 逻辑主语错误同A。leading 在句尾做伴随结果, 逻辑主语 Barbara McClintock 错误。
- C. It 不能指代前面整句因此无指代对象, 最好用同位语。
- D. Correct; 逻辑主语正确; A discovery 作为同位语指代前句, that 引导限定性定语从句修饰 a discovery
- E. who...genes 作为插入语出现; 整个句子缺少谓语动词。

## 207. (T-4-Q30)

Unlike the short flights of the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, which carried sufficient power in fuel cells and batteries, a permanently orbiting space station will have to generate its own electricity.

- A. the short flights of the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, which carried sufficient power in fuel cells and batteries,
- B. the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, with sufficient enough power in fuel cells and batteries for their short flights,
- C. the short flights of the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, which enabled them to carry sufficient enough power in fuel cells and batteries,
- D. the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, which were capable of carrying sufficient power in fuel cells and batteries for their short flights,
- E. the flights of the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, whose shortness allowed them to carry sufficient power in fuel cells and batteries,



题目释义: Unlike the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, ..., a permanently orbiting space station...

### 考点:

比较 (comparison)

1. 比较结构双方应对等 (看见是比较考点时, 最重要的是找到比较对象)。
2. with结构。
3. 同义词重复。

### 选项分析:

- A. 比较对象不对等, Unlike后的关键字是the short flights, 而比较对象是a space station
- B. Sufficient和enough同义词重复; With引导独立主格结构有修饰歧义
- C. 比较对象错误同A; which指代的是shuttle and earlier spacecraft, 它们逻辑上无法成为enable的动作发出者; them指代不清晰; sufficient和enough同义词重复
- D. Correct; 句子含义为shuttle和spacecraft有能力带足够完成短程飞行的power
- E. 比较对象错误同A; whose指代flights, them指代不清晰; 逻辑错误, 并不是短程允许了他们可以带足够的power, 而是他们能带足够的power来完成短程飞行

### 补充说明:

1. 关于夹心修饰 (by aeoluseros):

所以歧义修饰, 是因为引发了不同的理解, 而并不是语法上是否会有不同的修饰, 所谓夹心修饰也是这个原则。很多人对“夹心修饰”都有过一个误解, 认为S, v-ing, V. + O.结构中, v-ing既可以往前修饰S, 也可以往后修饰V就是夹心, 而实际上夹心并不是“可以往前修饰S, 也可以往后修饰V”。在S, v-ing, V. + O.这样的表达中, v-ing约定俗成只伴随修饰动词, 见下例:

prep 2-104 The yield per acre of coffee berries varies enormously, because a single tree, depending on its size and on climate and altitude, is able to produce enough berries to make between one and twelve pounds of dried beans a year.

这个句子里depending不能改为dependent, 因为depending和dependent的区别在于, 前者伴随修饰谓语动词is able to produce, 后者则是修饰名词single tree, 会造成逻辑上不对 —— “一棵树依靠它的size”。

2. Windmaple: 以下redunancy word list兼出自官方资料:

lag behind, by xx% (less)  
from ... (down/up) to  
rise (higher)  
then .. (subsequently)  
now .. (currently)  
(to someone,) Paris is someone's home  
enable someone to (be able to)  
continue, and (have already done)  
(up) until...  
per capita consumption ... (per person)  
each year ... (annually)  
(consistently) ... doing sth.  
also ... (as well)  
the more ..., the more ..., become (increaseingly)



there is (continuous) sth occurring  
someone is doing sth (continuously)  
(so) in order to  
then (later)  
then (subsequently)

## 208. (GWD-11-40)

Scientists who studied the famous gold field known as Serra Pelada concluded that the rich lode was not produced by the accepted methods of ore formation but that swarms of microbes over millions of years concentrated the gold from jungle soils and rivers and rocks.

- A. not produced by the accepted methods of ore formation but that swarms of microbes over millions of years
- B. not produced by the accepted methods of ore formation but instead swarms of microbes over millions of years that
- C. not produced by the accepted methods of ore formation but swarms of microbes over millions of years that
- D. produced not by the accepted methods of ore formation but by swarms of microbes that over millions of years
- E. produced not by the accepted methods of ore formation but that swarms of microbes over millions of years

题目释义: Scientists studied the famous god filed not by...but by...

### 考点:

平行结构 (parallelism)

1、not...but...后面要平行, 如not by...but by...

### 选项分析:

- A. not produced by...but that不平行
- B. not by...but swarms搭配错误; but instead语义重复; that位置错误, 使得状语over millions of years修饰对象不清
- C. not by...but不平行
- D. correct; Not by...but by正确
- E. 错误同A

### 补充说明:

1. 看见这类单纯的考平行的题, 可以迅速看选项选择。
2. windmaple: 如果but后面接名词是不能有instead的, 因为but是介词; 但是如果but后面接动词就变成了连词, 中间加副词instead没问题。Prep07 1-73: Evolutionary psychology holds that the human mind is not a "blank slate" but instead comprises specialized mental mechanisms that were developed to solve specific problems human ancestors faced millions of years ago.

## 209. (T-3-Q7)

In Scotland, the number of wild salmon have been reduced because of uncontrolled deep-sea and coastal netting, by pollution, and by various other threats to the fish's habitat.

- A. number of wild salmon have been reduced because of uncontrolled deep-sea and coastal netting,
- B. number of wild salmon is reduced because deep-sea and coastal netting is not controlled,
- C. numbers of wild salmon has been reduced because of uncontrolled deep-sea and coastal netting,
- D. wild salmon's numbers are reduced by deep-sea and coastal netting that is not controlled,
- E. wild salmon's numbers have been reduced by uncontrolled deep-sea and coastal netting,

题目释义: In Scotland, wild salmon's numbers have reduced by...by....and by...

考点:

主谓一致 (agreement) 平行结构 (parallelism predication) 逻辑意思 (logical construction)

- 1. the number of + 复数名词, 谓语用单数; a number of + 复数名词, 谓语用复数。
- 2. and 平行结构。

选项分析:

- A. have 错误, 主谓不一致; because of 与未划线部分的 by 不平行
- B. because 与未划线部分的 by 不平行
- C. the numbers 错误 (MANHATTAN SC 上提到: Never select an answer choice containing the phrase THE NUMBERS OF); and 平行错误同 A
- D. that is not controlled 不如 uncontrolled 简洁
- E. correct; 关于 number 与 numbers 无需做过多区分, 只要保持主谓一致即可 (有一种说法认为因为总数量的持续改变所以要用复数 numbers, 有一定道理, 不过未经理论证实)

补充说明:

Number 的用法小结—by Mayanist:

几种用法之间区别: 非核心词与核心词; number 的意义; number 与相关成分的单复数一致关系。

1) a number of / numbers of + 可数名词复数 + 动词复数

可以理解为量词结构, a number of 表示一些, numbers of 表示大量  
of 后面的复数名词才是核心词, 谓语动词因此总是复数

Many students arrived early, but only a number of them worked on their exercises.

The lake produces a good number of (=a lot of) salmon each season.

Numbers of birds fly across the lake.

另外: any number of 用于非正式场合, 表示大量

There could be any number of (=many) reasons why she's late.

OG237. It seems likely that a number of astronomical phenomena, such as the formation of planetary nebulas, are caused by the interaction of two stars orbiting each other at close range.

OG152. When the technique known as gene-splicing was invented in the early 1970's, it was feared that scientists might inadvertently create an "Andromeda strain," a microbe never before seen on Earth that might escape from the laboratory and kill vast numbers of humans who would have no natural defenses against it.

709. The Coast Guard recently redesigned channel markers in the Chesapeake Bay to accommodate large numbers of ospreys, whose huge nests formerly obstructed the lights.

829. The speculative fever of the Roaring Twenties infected rich and poor alike; great numbers of people were dangerously overextended, credit was absurdly easy to obtain, and most brokerage houses required only ten percent cash for stocks bought on "margin."

- 2) the number of + 可数名词复数 + 动词单数: number 是核心词, 可以被具体的一个数字表示可数物品累积起来的数量, 可数名词需用复数形式

这时 number 是核心词, 可以被具体化为一个数字, 如 50 或者 100, 谓语动词因此总是单数

The number of students who participated the interview was 100.

Today's case brings the number of successful prosecutions in the region to thirty-four.

[这里有个疑问有待考证: 是否可以从例子派生出 The numbers of girl and boy students are respectively 30 and 70? 如果可以, 则规则为: the number(s) of + n.(总是复数) + v.(单数或者复数-取决于 number 的形式)].

OG-verbal-5. A Labor Department study states that the number of women employed outside the home increased by more than thirty-five percent in the past decade and accounted for more than sixty-two percent of the total growth in the civilian work force.

492. Los Angeles has a higher number of family dwellings per capita than does any other large city.

有人问为什么不选(D) higher numbers of family dwellings per capita than do other large cities.

ETS: the plural numbers is incorrect in that there is only a single number of such dwellings.

这题是什么时候用单数, 什么时候用复数 number 的好例证: ETS 的意思是, 因为人均住房面积只用一个数值就可以表示了, 例如 20 平方米/人, 即 number 就是这个数, 所以 number 和对应谓语动词都用单数。另外, 比较级 higher 表示将 LA 的 number 和其他城市相应的 number 相比: one number is larger/greater/higher than the other number.

- 3) numbers 作为核心词, 表示可以被具体化的几个数

530. New Jersey has one of the five highest numbers of reported cases of Lyme disease in the United States.

908. Upset by the recent downturn in production numbers during the first half of the year, the board of directors, at its quarterly meeting, raised the possibility of adding worker incentives.

因为每个公司的生产指标有很多, 所以用复数形式的 production numbers。比较题 No.492, 在那里 *family dwellings per capita* 只可以被具体化为一个数。

这些情况下, 如果明确知道有多个数字, 就用 numbers。再例如 Don't judge a team by its numbers. 不能仅仅从数字(指标)上判断一个队(的好坏)。如 NBA 队伍中每个球员都有 rebound, assist, turnover, score 等指标, 球队有胜率, 排名等指标。这些指标就是由多个数字表达的, 所以即使 team 是单数, 但是 its + numbers 是最合理的。上面的句子也可以改写为: Don't judge a team by those numbers listed on its website.

- 4) numbers 作为核心词, 但可以被具体化的几个数倾向不明显

OG-verbal-72. The gyrfalcon, an Arctic bird of prey, has survived a close brush with (A) extinction; its numbers are now five-times greater than when the use of DDT was sharply restricted in the early 1970's.

因为动词是复数, 所以可推知 numbers 是 number 的复数形式, 而不是什么固定用法。

TTGWD9-Q7: In Scotland, the (E) wild **salmon's numbers have** been reduced by uncontrolled deep-sea and coastal netting, by pollution, and by various other threats to the fish's habitat.

另外，一些讨论中说：numbers 是复数做“人数，鸟群”讲。Longman 字典：Visitor numbers increase in the summer. 游客人数在夏季增加。现代英汉词典：Birds gather in large numbers beside the river. 鸟儿一群群地聚在河边。但是显然后面一个例子中 in large numbers 是做副词用，参见 5)。这一类用法是最难的，还没有找到最有说服力的解释。但是作题的时候，我们可以借用其他方面的线索，排除错误项。

- 5) in number(s) 惯用法：如 downturn/decline in number(s)，表示在数量指标方面

In number *adv., prep., n.* 总共，在数目上

They were printed **in** limited **numbers**.

Young people have been leaving the countryside **in** large **numbers** for urban areas. [*leave ... for ...*]

The condors have dwindled to an estimated sixty **in number**.

48(non-OG). The golden crab of the Gulf of Mexico has not been fished commercially in great **numbers**, primarily because it lives at great depths – 2,500 to 3,000 feet down.

550. Once common throughout the Western plains, black-footed ferrets are thought to have declined in number as a result of the poisoning of prairie dogs, their prey. 这题主要是考察逻辑关系：black-footed ferrets (is) common throughout ..., 只有 A 正确。

看来 in number 或者 in numbers 在某些情况下，并不需要严格区分，毕竟 GMAT 时要求找最佳答案。或许 550 中用 numbers 也没错。

- 6) the number (s) of + 名词单数或者复数 + 动词单数或者复数，表示**标号**，**数字标识**

这时 number 是核心词，number、物品、谓语动词三者的单/复数形式要一致

The numbers of the machine parts A and B are respectively 201 and 203.

机器零件 A 和 B 的标号分别是 201 和 203。

派生出 The number of machine part A is 201.

这时 number 与 numbers 互为单复数的关系。注意，这里。

The numbers of the machine parts are not available. 这些机器零件的号码找不到了。

## 210. (GWD-1-Q2) 重点题

By merging its two publishing divisions, the company will increase their share of the country's \$21 billion book market from 6 percent to 10 percent, a market ranging from obscure textbooks to mass-market paperbacks.

- A. their share of the country's \$21 billion book market from 6 percent to 10 percent, a market ranging
- B. from 6 percent to 10 percent its share of the \$21 billion book market in the country, which ranges
- C. to 10 percent from 6 percent in their share of the \$21 billion book market in the country, a market ranging
- D. in its share, from 6 percent to 10 percent, of the \$21 billion book market in the country, which ranges
- E. to 10 percent from 6 percent its share of the country's \$21 billion book market, which ranges

题目释义：By merging its two publishing divisions, the company will increase to ... from ... market, which ranges...

考点：

指代一致 (agreement) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

1. the company是主语，指代也用单数。
2. which的指代

选项分析：

- A. their指代the company错误。Ranging使得后面的分句没有谓语。
- B. which可以跳跃指代，但是此处which离其指代对象隔了一个状语in the country，而且country与ranges是gramatically matched的，故B不佳。
- C. their错误同A，ranging错误同A。
- D. which错误同B；of和要连接的对象离的太远不好。
- E. correct；which离其指代对象比B更近，因此更好，记住选项是比出来的；to...from...结构中to 10 percent提前以示强调；逻辑上讲，一个国家的图书市场不可能只有从from obscure textbooks to mass-market paperbacks，所以which逻辑上指代its share of the country's \$21 billion book market整体。

补充说明：**Which指代小结—by aeoluseros:**

以下收录官方材料中能对于which的使用，可以发现which的指代其实并没有固定死规则，不一定只指代最近的名词，跟所有代词一样，有就近指代的倾向，但是具体修饰对象，应该根据各种线索或者逻辑含义来判断：

1. 尽管A of B的结构，which没有就近修饰。

561. One pervasive theory explains the introduction of breakfast cereals in the early 1900s as a result of the growing number of automobiles, which led to a decline in horse ownership and a subsequent grain glut; by persuading people to eat what had previously been horse feed, market equilibrium was restored.

2. which不一定跳过插入语指代：

462. Judge Lois Forer's study asks why some litigants have a preferred status over others in the use of a public resource, the courts, which in theory are available to all but in fact are unequally distributed between rich and poor.

3. 通过单复数判断which的所指：

80. Changes in sea level result not only from changes in water temperature, which affect water density, but also from the melting of glaciers.

44. The survival of coral colonies, which are composed of innumerable tiny polyps living in a symbiotic relationship with brilliantly colored algae, is being threatened, experts say, not only by pollutants such as agricultural runoff, oil slicks, and trash, but also by dropped anchors, probing divers, and global warming.

173 (GWD-10-Q18) In analyzing campaign expenditures, the media have focused on the high costs and low ethics of campaign finance, but they have generally overlooked the cost of actually administering elections, which includes facilities, transport, printing, staffing, and technology.

205. (GWD-9-Q17) Unlike most other mergers in the utility industry, which have been driven by the need to save money and extend companies' service areas, the merger of the nation's leading gas company and leading electric company is intended to create a huge network for marketing the utilities in question as states open their utility markets to competition.

216. (GWD-13-1) Although she had been known as an effective legislator first in the Texas Senate and

later in the United States House of Representatives, Barbara Jordan did not become a nationally recognized figure until 1974, when she participated in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon, which were televised nationwide.

4. 通过时态区别which的所指:

488. Like the government that came before it, which set new records for growth, the new government has made laissez-faire capitalism its cornerstone.

Stoneren关于which指代的一个观点:

OG10-114: From the bark of the paper birch tree the Menomini crafted a canoe about twenty feet long and two feet wide, with small ribs and rails of cedar, which could carry four persons or eight hundred pounds of baggage yet was so light that a person could easily portage it around impeding rapids.

当 which 的潜在指代对象是一个独立的主语结构或独立的宾语结构时,且其指代对象的修饰成分比较简单,那么定语侧重于指代核心名词(在没有语法和逻辑问题的前提下)。

相似题链接:

对于from...to...倒用的合理性:

127. (31278-!-item-!-188;#058&004418)

After decreasing steadily in the mid-1990's, the percentage of students in the United States finishing high school or having earned equivalency diplomas increased in the last three years of the decade, up to 86.5 percent in 2000 from 85.9 percent in 1999 and 84.8 percent in 1998.

- (A) finishing high school or having earned equivalency diplomas increased in the last three years of the decade, up to 86.5 percent in 2000 from 85.9 percent in 1999 and
- (B) finishing high school or earning equivalency diplomas, increasing in the last three years of the decade, rising to 86.5 percent in 2000 from 85.9 percent in 1999 and from
- (C) having finished high school or earning an equivalency diploma increased in the last three years of the decade, and rose to 86.5 percent in 2000 from 85.9 percent in 1999 and from
- (D) who either finished high school or they earned an equivalency diploma, increasing in the last three years of the decade, rose to 86.5 percent in 2000 from 85.9 percent in 1999 and
- (E) who finished high school or earned equivalency diplomas increased in the last three years of the decade, to 86.5 percent in 2000 from 85.9 percent in 1999 and

答案是E

## 211. (GWD-8-Q39, OG12-136)

Whereas in mammals the tiny tubes that convey nutrients to bone cells are arrayed in parallel lines, in birds the tubes form a random pattern.

- A. Whereas in mammals the tiny tubes that convey nutrients to bone cells are arrayed in parallel lines, in birds the tubes
- B. Whereas the tiny tubes for the conveying of nutrients to bone cells are arrayed in mammals in parallel lines, birds have tubes that
- C. Unlike mammals, where the tiny tubes for conveying nutrients to bone cells are arrayed in parallel lines, birds' tubes



- D. Unlike mammals, in whom the tiny tubes that convey nutrients to bone cells are arrayed in parallel lines, the tubes in birds
- E. Unlike the tiny tubes that convey nutrients to bone cells, which in mammals are arrayed in parallel lines, in birds the tubes

题目释义: Whereas in mammals..., in birds...

### 考点:

比较 (comparison)

#### 1. 比较:

(1) whereas = while (while前后句子之结构要求并列相对)

(2) whereas连接的平行比较只要求对比的核心逻辑上有对称关系, 不要求对称位置必须是对称名词, 下面句子中主从句的主语分别是energy和nuclear power并不是对称名词, 但是对比的核心都是“核能发电占总产出能量的份额”:

如OG12-131 Over 75 percent of the energy produced in France derives from nuclear power, whereas nuclear power accounts for just over 33 percent of the energy produced in Germany.

\*: 但是如果whereas后面接介词短语, 那么主句的开头也必须需要是介词短语(whereas后出现介词短语或者状语都会非常对称), 如果whereas后接单纯主谓宾(或主系表), 主句也要尽量用单纯的主谓宾(或主系表)来对应, 除非同下面GWD 18-2一样后半句主谓即已经可完全表达出“对称”的含义(each language occupies a distinct area of the brain是主谓宾齐全; language areas overlap是主谓, 没有宾语。但两个分句依然算是平行, 因为逻辑已经平行。):

prep1-29 Pine trees thrive in relatively wet climates, whereas oaks prefer drier ones.

prep1-54 In cooking, small quantities of spices are used, whereas in medicinal usage spices are taken in large quantities in order to treat particular maladies.

prep2-102 Whereas a female grizzly bear in the Rockies typically occupies a range of 50 to 300 square miles, a male will cover 200 to 500 and occasionally as many as 600.

prep1-194. Whereas the honeybee's stinger is heavily barbed and cannot be retracted from the skin, the yellow jacket's stinger is comparatively smooth, and can therefore be pulled out and used again.

大全933. Whereas owners of condominium apartments have free and clear title to their dwellings, owners of cooperative apartments have shares in a corporation that owns a building and leases apartments to them.

GWD18-2 According to findings derived from functional magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), the area of the brain in which a second or third language is stored depends on the age of the language learner; whereas each language occupies a distinct area of the brain in an adult learner, language areas overlap in a young child.

(3) 标准书面语中, like/unlike后只加名词(不一定具体名词)表比较, 不能加不定式短语, 分词短语(prepare 1-54 unlike cooking with speices错), 句子或介短。(后面接这些东西的时候unlike要改为whereas等等)。

(4) like/unlike是严格的硬梆梆比较, 比较对象必须严格对等, 中间不能插入任何成分比如介词短语

#### 2. 关系代词用法

### 选项分析:

A. correct; whereas后的介词需要位置上平行对称, 在此in mammals和in birds平行; 本句比较的是



mammals的血管和birds的血管；除了A选项，其他选项结构上都很混乱

- B. 虽然whereas不要求对称位置必须是对称名词，但本选项主从句核心含义不对等，一个是tiny tubes的排列，一个是birds用怎么样的tubes，比较主体成了tubes和birds，因此错误；the tiny tubes for the conveying of nutrients to bone cells表达不清晰，不如用定语从句来修饰：the tiny tubes that convey nutrients to bone cells are arrayed
- C. mammals和tubes不对等；mammals不是地点、位置，用关系代词where指代mammals错误；the tiny tubes for the conveying of nutrients to bone cells表达不清晰同B
- D. mammals和tubes不对等；in whom关系代词错误，要用in which
- E. 主句主语tubes前面不能插入in birds，需要改为tubes in birds；which指代cells，原句是the tiny tubes are arrayed in parallel lines，此句变成了bone cells are arrayed in parallel lines，改变句意

### 补充说明：

1. who, whom 只能指人，不可指物（如 language，要用 which 指代）；which 只能指物，不可指人
2. 传统语法规则规定 that 不能用于指人，而只能用 that 指思想观点、动物或不具有生命的物体(植物属于不具有生命的物体)，要用 whose, whose 可以指人也可以指物(pre1-192)
3. OG11-130 里面说 that 不能指代人，只能用 who 来指代。(虽然现代英语用法中 that 可以用于不同情形)
4. 本题为 OG12-136: OG 解释为：

Idiom; Rhetorical construction; Parallelism

Whereas introduces two contrasting situations or events and should be followed by parallel structures.

In this sentence, *whereas* is immediately followed by a clause beginning with the prepositional phrase *in mammals*; this means that the second part of the sentence must also be a clause that opens with a preposition that functions in the same way—in this case, *in birds*. This structure clarifies that the things being contrasted are the *tubes* in mammals and the *tubes* in birds. Incorrect versions of the sentence grammatically contrast *tubes* and *birds*, *mammals* and *tubes*, or *birds* and *mammals*.

A Correct. Parallel structures make clear that the tubes in mammals are being contrasted with the tubes in birds.

B The faulty parallelism results in a sentence that is confusing and unnecessarily wordy.

C The sentence compares *mammals* and *birds' tubes*.

D Because of faulty parallelism, this sentence also compares *mammals* and *tubes in birds*.

E This structure is wordy and confusing because of faulty parallelism.

The correct answer is A.

## 212. (GWD-10-Q1)

According to a survey of graduating medical students conducted by the Association of American Medical Colleges, minority graduates are nearly four times more likely than are other graduates in planning to practice in socioeconomically deprived areas.

- A. minority graduates are nearly four times more likely than are other graduates in planning to practice
- B. minority graduates are nearly four times more likely than other graduates who plan on practicing
- C. minority graduates are nearly four times as likely as other graduates to plan on practicing
- D. it is nearly four times more likely that minority graduates rather than other graduates will plan to practice
- E. it is nearly four times as likely for minority graduates than other graduates to plan to practice

题目释义: According to..., minority graduates are...four times as likely as...to plan on...

### 考点:

习惯用语 (idiom) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

1. as+adj/adv+as, more than固定搭配:

2. Plan的用法:

plan to do something: He said he planned to write his essay tonight.

plan on doing something: When do you plan on going to Geneva?

plan something: The former president is planning a return to politics.

3. be likely to do 很容易、倾向于做某事。

4. 强调句的结构是: It +be +强调部分+ that (who) + 主谓句。强调句的连词只有两个, that和who。当强调的部分是人, 且为句子的主语时, 才用"who", 其余用that。强调句中it无所指。

\*: 区别强调句型和其他从句的最好方法是“试减法”。也就是说, 如果把句子中 “It be...that...”这一框架去掉, 句子的剩余部分(可以进行位置上的调整)结构完整, 意思通顺, 合乎逻辑, 则that引导的是强调句型, 否则为其他从句。例如: It was at nine yesterday that we met the film star.

运用“试减法”, 此句可改写为: We met the film star at nine yesterday. 显然, 句子结构完整, 意思通顺, 故为强调句型。

### 选项分析:

- A. 主系表结构的比较中, 如果是主语比较, 系动词要省略, are多余; be likely in doing用法错误, 应为be likely to do...
- B. who plan on practicing变成定语从句修饰graduates, 使得be likely to结构不完整
- C. 正确; four times as likely as...和four times more likely than...都是可以的, 且含义相同; Be likely to do...使用正确, plan on doing...使用正确
- D. 这里是强调句型, It is likely that...句型可以用(OG 10-237); more...than比较句型不完整, 使得minority graduates不知道和谁比, 选项这么写minority graduates一定不是和other graduates比, 合适的结构应该是it is X times more likely that A will happen than that B will happen, 不过更合适的是'A is X times more likely to happen than B'
- E. four times as...than...比较结构错误; for minority graduates和other graduates不平行(将than还原为as后即可发现)

### 补充说明:

1. 关于倍数的表达---by balabaladou7:

白勇《GMAT语法全解》中说过 “...times + 形容词/副词比较级 + than....”属于有争议的结构, 因为产生歧义。标准书面语中避免使用此结构。 “....times + as+形容词/副词+as” 则常用。

但好像张道真语法上有说:--6道OG例子证明这个两种表达都可以。

five times as...as 和 five times more/greater than...是表达相同的数量概念的.这是英语国家的语言习惯,不能用中文硬翻理解. 张道真语法 P384/页尾注释。

2. as或than引导比较从句中的省略原则---form 白勇语法

1) 比较从句谓语与主句谓语相同, 可用do, did, does代替。

2) 比较从句连系动词be与主句连系动词be相同, 可以省略be, 也可以不省略。

3) 主语谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should)+verb”形式时, 比较从句往往省略verb, 保留助动词或情态动词。

- 4) 比较从句的主语和谓语与主句的主语和谓语相同时，可以全部省去，常常保留做状语的介词短语或状语从句。
- 5) 比较从句的主语与主句主语相同，可以省略。
3. It is likely that是可以用的，只是需要看清楚这里的it是形式主语还是指代。
4. 关于更多讨论请访问：[http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-22751-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-22751-1-1.html)

## 213. (GWD-3-Q34)

Shoppers in sporting goods stores, unlike in department stores, do very little impulse shopping, not buying a pair of skis and a boomerang when they come in for a basketball, but they leave with a basketball only

- A. in department stores, do very little impulse shopping, not buying a pair of skis and a boomerang when they come in for a basketball, but they leave with a basketball only
- B. in department stores, shop impulsively very little; someone who comes in for a basketball will leave with a basketball only and not also buy a pair of skis and a boomerang as well
- C. those in department stores, do very little impulse shopping, do not buy a pair of skis and a boomerang when they come in for a basketball, but leave with only a basketball
- D. those in department stores, do very little impulse shopping; someone who comes in for a basketball will leave with a basketball only and not buy a pair of skis and a boomerang as well
- E. department stores, shop impulsively very little; someone will not buy a pair of skis and a boomerang when they come in for a basketball but will leave with only a basketball

题目释义：Shoppers in in sporting goods stores, unlike those in department stores, do...; someone...

### 考点：

比较（comparison） 逻辑意思（logical predication）

1. like/unlike比较对象要绝对对等。
2. 各个分句之间的逻辑关系。
3. 平行对称：not... but...
4. 副词的修饰位置：even修饰比较级时，放在比较级之前。ever放在助动词之后。only、first放在被强调的成分之前，alone放在被强调的成分之后。

### 选项分析：

- A. shoppers和department stores不对等；not...but...不平行，应改为but leaving with a basketball only，但这样改了也有but leaving修饰they come in for a basketball的歧义，还是不好
- B. shoppers和department stores不对等；shop impulsively very little有另一个含义：冲动地买一些小东西（little可以作为adj.，不一定是adv.），所以还是do very little impulse shopping更明确；also和as well重复；leave with only a basketball强调的是带走的是一个篮球，而不是两个或者更多，而leave with a basketball only强调的是带走的只是篮球
- C. do very little impules shopping和do not buy a pair of skis一个是概括，一个是细化，功能不同无法平行，而且but不能连接三个并列成分，只能连接两个，所以即便不考虑逻辑上的层次，do not buy之前也要加上and
- D. correct；两个不同层次却有联系的句子用semicolon连接是最合适的。And...as well在此并不重复， as

well修饰的是and后面的谓语动词buy（类似见prep 2-166补充说明中对but instead的说明）；Only做adj. 修饰basketball

- E. shoppers和department stores不对等；shop impulsively very little错误同B；they没有指代；only放在a basketball前强调含义改变，同B

## 214. (T-9-Q31)

Scholars who once thought Native American literatures were solely oral narratives recorded by missionaries or anthropologists now understand this body of work to consist of both oral literatures and the written works of Native American authors, who have been publishing since 1772.

- A. Scholars who once thought Native American literatures were solely oral narratives
- B. Scholars thinking of Native American literatures once solely as oral narratives, and
- C. Scholars who once had thought of Native American literatures solely as oral narratives and
- D. Native American literatures, which some scholars once thought were solely oral narratives
- E. Native American literatures, which some scholars once, thinking they were solely oral narratives

题目释义：Scholars who once thought (that) NAL were narratives ... now understand...

### 考点：

句子结构（grammatical construction） 逻辑意思（logical predication）

1. some scholars thought是一种特殊的语法结构，叫做“嵌入式关系分句”，具体见后面补充说明。
2. 过去完成时的使用必须有时间上的参照点，以显示动作发生在过去的过去。
3. 定语从句作定语与分词短语作定语的区别
  - (1) 定语从句强调具体时间具体动作，以及动作的一次性；分词短语强调笼统不确定的时间，抽象/客观/重复性/多次性的行为 → 故定语从句变为分词时会少掉时态
  - (2) 都可以接受时，分词短语优于定语从句（更简洁），定语从句要尽量转换为分词短语（但不能引起歧义）
  - (3) 定语从句包含情态动词时不能转化为分词短语
  - (4) ing分词的完成时态不能充当名词的定语，必须转化为定语从句n. + having done n. that...
4. think of sth. as sth. (Longman): to consider that someone or something is a particular thing or has a particular quality

### 选项分析：

- A. correct
- B. 用分词短语来代替定语从句去掉了时态指示词；once有修饰solely as oral narratives的歧义；and的插入使得前半句没谓语
- C. 过去完成时表示过去的过去，在此没有必要使用过去完成时；think of sth. ... as...意思是“把...看作...”，而原句表达的是“认为...是...”，故用think...as...更合适；and后recorded修饰对象不明确
- D. 未划线部分谓语understand主语成了Native American literatures错误
- E. “which some scholars once, thinking they were solely oral narratives”结构混乱，且which引导的定语从句没有谓语。

### 补充说明：

关于嵌入式关系分句—by tankobe:

OG12-118. The world wildlife fund has declared that global warming, a phenomenon most scientists agree to be caused by human beings in burning fossil fuels, will create havoc among migratory birds by altering the environment in ways harmful to their habitats.

- a) A phenomenon most scientists agree to be caused by human beings in burning fossil fuels,
- b) a phenomenon most scientists agree that is caused by fossil fuels burned by human beings,
- c) **a phenomenon that most scientists agree is caused by human beings' burning of fossil fuels**
- d) which most scientists agree on as phenomenon caused by human beings who burn fossil fuels,
- e) which most scientists agree to be a phenomenon caused by fossil fuels burned by human beings

查了很多贴（国内和国外），对 C 选项的解释都是半斤八两，看得我一头雾水！（为什么一个定语从句里有两个动词 agree 和 is）

一个普遍的误读是：说 most scientists agree 是插入语，虽然是没加逗号！（此解释绝对是误人子弟!!!）

今天我翻遍章振邦的《新编英语语法》（CD 上有下载），在 1193—1395 页赫然发现一个语法词条——**嵌入式关系分句**，详解如下：

“有一种关系分句（即**定语从句**），它既是先行项的后置修饰语（即**定语**），同时又是另外一个分句结构的**宾语**（即**宾语从句**）”此分句结构就被嵌入在定语从句中，即**嵌入式关系分句**。

该书举例：In his breast-pocket he had a patch of scarlet, which i suppose was the paper cap serving as a handkerchief.

注意两点：

- 1) 从句 which was the paper cap serving as a handkerchief 首先是 patch of scarlet 的**定语从句**。
  - 2) 从句 which (patch of scarlet) was the paper cap serving as a handkerchief 也是 i suppose 的**宾语从句**，即 I suppose (that) the patch of scarlet was the paper cap serving as a handkerchief。
- 综上所述，当一个定语从句同时是另一个主谓结构的宾语从句是，就可以写为嵌入式关系分句。

## 215. (GWD-3-Q3)

A study by the Ocean Wildlife Campaign urged states to undertake a number of remedies to reverse a decline in the shark population, which includes the establishment of size limits for shark catches, closing state waters for shark fishing during pupping season, and requiring commercial fishers to have federal shark permits.

- A. which includes the establishment of size limits for shark catches, closing
- B. which includes establishing limits to the size of sharks that can be caught, closing
- C. which include the establishment of size limits for shark catches, the closing of
- D. including establishing size limits for shark catches, closing
- E. including the establishing of limits to the size of sharks that are caught, the closing of

题目释义：A study urged to..., including..., closing..., and requiring....

### 考点：

句子结构（grammatical construction） 逻辑意思（logical predication）

- 1. 定语从句关系代词which的指代
- 2. 现在分词伴随功能动作时，与句子谓语同时发生，逻辑主语等于句子主语。
- 3. and平行结构。
- 4. limit做动词时的固定搭配：limit to + 界限；limit on doing sth.(做某事的限制)



名词: size limits 大小、规模限制

5. urge的固定搭配: urge sb. to do sth.

6. shark catches: 捕鲨量, 此处catch意为a quantity of fish that has been caught at one time

### 选项分析:

- A. which离其逻辑上所指的remedies太远, 且如果指代remedies不该用单数includes; the establishment of不如动词establishing简洁, 而且与后面的closing不平行。
- B. which和includes错误同A; limits to the size of sharks that can be caught不够简洁, 直接用size limits和shark catches就行
- C. which错误同A; the establishment of和the closing of名词短语不简洁且和requiring不平行
- D. correct; including修饰remedies, including是介词, 其跳跃能力比which强
- E. limits to the size of sharks that can be caught 不够简洁, 直接用 size limits 和 shark catches 就行; the establishment of 和 the closing of 名词短语不简洁且和 requiring 不平行

## 216. (T-3-Q39) (天山-7-39, OG12-18)

Plants are more efficient at acquiring carbon than are fungi, in the form of carbon dioxide, and converting it to energy-rich sugars.

- A. Plants are more efficient at acquiring carbon than are fungi,
- B. Plants are more efficient at acquiring carbon than fungi,
- C. Plants are more efficient than fungi at acquiring carbon,
- D. Plants, more efficient than fungi at acquiring carbon,
- E. Plants acquire carbon more efficiently than fungi,

题目释义: Ps are more efficient than Fs at doing sth., ..., and doing sth. ...

### 考点:

比较 (comparison) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

1. 比较双方要对等。

### 选项分析:

- A. 后面的in the form of carbon dioxide错误的修饰了fungi; converting应当与acquiring平行
- B. Than后面需要补出are, 否则有acquiring fungi的歧义; 后面的in the form of carbon dioxide错误的修饰了fungi; converting应当与acquiring平行
- C. Correct; in the form of carbon dioxide修饰carbon
- D. ", more efficient than fungi at acquiring carbon,"作为插入语, 使得句子没有谓语东西, 并且and没有平行对象
- E. 比较对象错误会导致carbon与fungi对比的歧义; 修饰错误同A

### 补充说明:

1. OG12-18解释

**Logical predication; Grammatical construction**

This sentence compares how efficiently plants and fungi acquire carbon and convert it into sugars. The sentence construction needs to make clear that plants and fungi are the two topics being compared, and it must also clarify that *in the form of carbon dioxide* refers to *carbon* rather than to either *plants* or *fungi*.

A According to the sentence grammar, *in the form of carbon dioxide* describes *fungi*, which is nonsensical.

B This sentence claims that plants acquire carbon more efficiently than they acquire fungi, which is also nonsensical; *the form of carbon dioxide* still modifies *fungi*.

**C Correct.** The sentence clearly compares plants to fungi, and *in the form of carbon dioxide* correctly modifies *carbon*.

D This sentence is grammatically incomplete; there is no verb for the subject *plants*.

E As in B, this sentence claims that plants acquire carbon more efficiently than they acquire fungi; it is also grammatically incomplete because *and converting* does not clearly refer to anything.

**The correct answer is C.**

2. 关于比较，摘自prep笔记1-128。

### 比较-主语比较

1. 对主谓宾全的句型主语比较：A do sth than B do. (AB为对等名词，加do是为了显示这是一个可以发出动作的名词，因而确定是主语，进而确定是主语对比)。时态要据后定。There be 句型等同于一般的主谓宾俱全的句型。

主语若相同，可省，但助动词不能省。如：

As a result of the continuing decline in the birth rate, [fewer people] will enter the labor force [in the 1980's] than (few people省略) did [in the 1960's and 1970's], a twenty-year period during which people born after the war swelled the ranks of workers.

2. 对只有主谓（如果主语有定语成分，必须要that/those来指代），没有宾语的句子，因为没有宾语，只可能有主语比较，因而不需要重复do来确认这是一个可发出动作的主语，所以其比较形式如下：

I eat faster than you. 注意与下句区别 I eat apple faster than you do 如果写成 I eat apple faster than you 按GMAC的理解，从语法上就变成我吃苹果比吃你快，成了宾语比较。逻辑上显然不通。

3. 主系表结构的比较与主谓结构相同。如果时态不一致，则需补出助词，如：

The economy of Florida is more diversified than it was ten years ago

## 217. (T-3-Q17) (天山-7-14)

Not one of the potential investors is expected to make an offer to buy First Interstate Bank until a merger agreement is signed that includes a provision for penalties if the deal were not to be concluded.

- A. is expected to make an offer to buy First Interstate Bank until a merger agreement is signed that includes a provision for penalties if the deal were
- B. is expected to make an offer for buying First Interstate Bank until they sign a merger agreement including a provision for penalties if the deal was
- C. is expected to make an offer to buy First Interstate Bank until a merger agreement be signed by them with a provision for penalties if the deal were
- D. are expected to make an offer for buying First Interstate Bank until it signs a merger agreement with a provision for penalties included if the deal was
- E. are expected to be making an offer to buy First Interstate Bank until they sign a merger agreement including a provision for penalties if the deal were



题目释义: Not one of n.s is expected to do sth. until a MA is signed that includes a provision for penalties if the deal were not to be concluded.

### 考点:

主谓一致 (agreement) 习惯用语 (idiom)

1. (not) one of the+ 名词复数+ 单数形式谓语; Not one of =none of.
2. 虚拟语气: 与将来事实相反, 条件从句的谓语be动词一律用were to+动词原形。
3. 被动语态未必比主动语态差, 被动语态有其特殊功能, 比如可以避免写出动作发出者来避免错误或累赘。

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; a merger agreement引导的句子并不是if the deal were的主句, If the deal were中的If可以理解为“in case (that)”, 后接虚拟语气, 由此可见虚拟条件句不一定非要虚拟主句才能使用 (if the deal were这个用法其实也和if any类似, 作为独立成分出现在句中); a merger agreement is signed that includes中that没有直接与a merger agreement相邻而且跳过了谓语动词修饰, 这说明关系代词短距离跳跃指代是允许的
- B. 表示动作的目的用to do比for buying更好, 表示一个动作趋向; they无指代; 虚拟语气用was错误
- C. be signed时态错误; with a provision修饰be signed, 意思成了需要一个条例来规范“签署”这一动作, 而不再是签署有这一条例的协议; them和an offer单复数不匹配, 一个投资者只能有一个offer, 并不需要写出by them
- D. are错误, 主谓不一致; For buying错误同B; 虚拟语气用was错误; It无指代
- E. are 错误, 主谓不一致; they 和 an offer 单复数不匹配, 一个投资者只能有一个 offer, 选项这么写好像在说只要一有投资者, 那么所有的潜在投资者都要签署 agreement, 所以最好的写法是通过被动语态来避免直接写出动作行使者

### 补充说明:

1. 关于定语从句的关系代词能否跨越谓语动词指代: 如果关系代词与先行词相隔较短, 关系代词能跨越谓语动词指代, 如本句a merger agreement is signed that includes a provision.
2. 关于none of(by windmaple): None可以等于not one (动词用单数), 也可以等于not any (动词用复数), 这个是有争论的, Manhattan Review SC上的SANAM说none要看情况定动词单复数; manhattan forum上的结论是: 因为none在OG里面从来没用过复数动词, 所以大家还是选单数吧。

## 218. (GWD7-Q4)

Only seven people this century have been killed by the great white shark, the man-eater of the movies—less than those killed by bee stings.

- A. movies—less than those
- B. movies—fewer than have been
- C. movies, which is less than those
- D. movies, a number lower than the people
- E. movies, fewer than the ones

题目释义: Only seven people this century have been killed by ... --- fewer than have been killed...

考点：

比较 (comparison) 习惯用法 (idiom)

1. 比较双方对等。
2. people作为人民讲的时候是复数名词，所以用few不用little。
3. 破折号在本题中有**反讽或表达意外**的含义：被蜜蜂蛰死的人比被专门吃人的白鲨吃掉的人还多。破折号其他用法见prep 1-182
4. as,than可以做比较从句的主语(见prep 1-202)

选项分析：

- A. less错误。those指代people，比较对象没有问题，但是比较结构上却不平行，前面用的是主谓结构，people是主语，been killed是谓语，后面虽然比较词people正确，可却没有用谓语的形式
- B. correct；than可以即做连词又做代词，即than作为比较连词的同时指代了people(见prep 1-202)；另外破折号的使用是适合的；本题用fewer than those也没有问题，具体见补充说明。
- C. which可以跳过插入语指代没问题；less错误；those使得比较结构不平行
- D. a number同位语与其所修饰对象seven people太远；不能跟people相比较
- E. ones不能指代people (Manhattan)，即使能够指代，比较结构也不平行

补充说明：

1. 一道类似却不一样的题 -> 未完稿：

OG10-19. In addition to having more protein than wheat does, the protein in rice is higher quality than that in wheat, with more of the amino acids essential to the human diet.

- (A) the protein in rice is higher quality than that in
- (B) rice has protein of higher quality than that in
- (C) the protein in rice is higher in quality than it is in
- (D) rice protein is higher in quality than it is in
- (E) rice has a protein higher in quality than

In this sentence, the initial clause modifies the nearest noun, identifying it as the thing being compared with *wheat*. By making *protein* the noun modified, choices A, C, and D illogically compare *wheat* with *protein*(是指 *In addition to having more protein than wheat does* 这个从句里面) and claim that the protein in rice has more protein than wheat does. In C and D, the comparative structure *higher in quality than it is in in wheat* absurdly suggests that rice protein contains wheat. B, the best choice, logically compares *wheat* to *rice* by placing the noun *rice* immediately after the initial clause. B also uses *that* to refer to *protein* in making the comparison between the proteins of rice and wheat. Choice E needs either *that in* or *does* after *wheat* to make a complete and logical comparison.

从 E 可以看出，用 *than that in wheat* 或 *than does wheat* 都可以，但这并不能说明在其他的比较结构中也能用 *that in*，而不是用主谓(宾)结构来与 *than* 前面的结构平行。在这个句子里：Only seven people this century have been killed by the great white shark, the man-eater of the movies—fewer than have been killed by bee stings.后面的比较成分是不可以改为 *less than those killed by bee stings* 的。具体原因如下：

在 *rice has a protein higher in quality than that in wheat* 这个句子里，比较对象是 *protein* 和 *that* (*that* 指代的也是 *protein*)，比较的仅仅是 *protein* (*rice has* 不在比较成分之内，比较的是 *protein* 的属性)，所以允许平行。而在 *Only seven people this century have been killed by the great white shark, the man-eater of the movies—fewer than ...* 中，不仅仅 *Only seven people*，后面的 *this century have been killed by the great white shark* 也都在比较对象里面，所以后文不能用 *those killed by bee stings*，而应该用平行的结构 *than have been killed*。

再比如这个句子(GWD-29-24): According to recent studies comparing the nutritional value of meat from wild animals and meat from domesticated animals, wild animals have less total fat than (that of) livestock fed on grain and more of a kind of fat thought to be good for cardiac health. 这个句子不对。其在 livestock 前加上 that of...比较的对象是 animals has less fat 和 that, that 指代 fat, 而事实上比较的应该是 wild animals 和 livestock 的属性, 即拥有 fat 的多少, 所以 than 后面也应该用平行的句式, 即主谓宾形式。正确句子为: According to recent studies comparing the nutritional value of meat from wild animals and meat from domesticated animals, wild animals have less total fat than livestock fed on grain and more of a kind of fat thought to be good for cardiac health.。要注意的一点: 在此省略了相同的谓语和宾语(因为不会有 wild animals have livestock 的歧义, 只要逻辑上基本成立, GMAT 并不认为所有没有补出谓语动词的形式都是"ambiguities"的)。(原句不对的另外一个证据: more of a kind of fat 后面省略了(than...), 而省略的部分应该和 less total fat than 后面的词句是一致的, 这样才能省略 逻辑上看省略的必须是 livestock, 而不能是 that of livestock, 因此 less total fat than 后面跟的也应该是 livestock。)

## 219. (GWD-12-Q20)

Approved April 24, 1800, the act of Congress that made provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C., also established the Library of Congress.

- A. Approved April 24, 1800, the act of Congress that made provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C., also established
- B. The act of Congress, which was approved April 24, 1800, making provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C., also established
- C. The act of Congress approved April 24, 1800, which made provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C., and established
- D. Approved April 24, 1800, making provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C., the act of Congress also established
- E. Approved April 24, 1800, the act of Congress made provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C., also establishing

题目释义: Approved April 24, 1800, the act of Congress that made provision for sth...., also established

### 考点:

逻辑意思(logical predication) 句子结构(grammatical construction)

1. 逻辑主语。
2. The acts of Congress: 国会立法案(act不需要大写), 有public laws, 也有private laws。本题只要理解国会立法案不仅仅只有一个就能作出答案。
3. 限定性修饰与非限定性修饰的区别。

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; the act of Congress是主语也是逻辑主语; 法律法规的具体内容要用ving修饰, 比如法规规定捕的鱼必须小于一定尺寸, 但此处made provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C.意为“提供了政府迁移的相关条款”, 并没有说明法律法规的具体内容, 所以限定性定从更合适。
- B. that引导的限定性定语从句改为了which引导的非限定性定语从句, 使得国会立法案就只有1800年颁布的那一个, 违背常识; making作为伴随approved的结果状语, 逻辑意思不合理, 其应该是说明act的作

用，修饰act

- C. **which**指代太远不及A好；**and**的插入使得前面分句没有谓语，后面分句没有主语。
- D. 主语前面部分冗长awkward；**making**作为非限定性修饰，使得句子表达的是act of Congress只有那么一个，违背常识。
- E. The act of Congress少了限定性定语从句的修饰，使得句子表达的是act of Congress只有那么一个，违背常识；**establish**和**make provision**逻辑上是同一层次的，不应该把**establish**作为伴随结果(逻辑含义也变得不合理)，所以要不把**also establishing**改为**and also establish**，要不改为同A选项一样。

## 220. (GWD-24-8, OG12-86)

The results of the company's cost-cutting measures are evident in its profits, which increased five percent during the first three months of this year after it fell over the last two years.

- A. which increased five percent during the first three months of this year after it fell
- B. which had increased five percent during the first three months of this year after it had fallen
- C. which have increased five percent during the first three months of this year after falling
- D. with a five percent increase during the first three months of this year after falling
- E. with a five percent increase during the first three months of this year after having fallen

题目释义：The results ... are evident in its profits, which have increased 5% during the first three months of this year...

### 考点：

句子结构（grammatical construction） 逻辑意思（logical predication）

#### 1. with独立主格结构：

由“with + 宾语 + 宾补”构成的复合结构，在句中可作状语，表示伴随。这一结构中的宾语补足语可由现在分词、过去分词、形容词、副词或介词短语等来充当：

Visitors to the park have often looked into the leafy canopy and seen monkeys sleeping on the branches, with arms and legs hanging like socks on a clothesline.

#### 2. 时态问题。

#### 3. AlienX: after having done something是不可能对的

- 1) after已表示the sequence of events. 没有必要用having done来表示前后
- 2) 可是after someone/something has/have done something是acceptable; 如果变成after someone/something did something也可以

### 选项分析：

- A. Increased和have increased都可以，只是表达的意义不同，如果这句话写于今年3月底，那么就用have increased，要是写于4月及以后就用increased(此处与OG12的解释略有不同)；it指代profits单复数错误；after it fell应该用after it had fallen与over the last two years搭配，但是不如after falling简洁
- B. it错误同A；after it had fallen时态上没有问题，可以与over the last two years搭配，但是不如after falling简洁
- C. Correct；after falling简洁，状语从句的省略
- D. with独立主格修饰前面的分句，而不是its profits，修饰错误；falling的逻辑主语也成了results，错误。
- E. with错误同D；after having done错误。

补充说明:

OG12-86解释

Verb form; Agreement; Idiom

This sentence describes two sequentially ordered indicators by which the results of a company's cost cutting measures can be seen. The first indicator to be identified, *a 5 percent increase in profits*, occurred after the indicator mentioned next. The sentence therefore needs to clarify the sequence by presenting the first-identified indicator in a clause with a verb tense that indicates a later time period than the verb tense in the clause presenting the second-identified indicator(动词时态区分动作先后顺序). The subject of the relative clause, which, refers to the plural noun *profits*, so subsequent pronouns referring to these profits must also be plural.

A The verb tenses do not distinguish between the times at which these indicators occurred; the singular *it* does not agree with the plural *profits*.

B The verb tenses do not distinguish between the times when the indicators occurred; the singular *it* does not agree with the plural *profits*.

C Correct. The verb tenses clearly indicate the sequence of events.

D It is not clear what connection is being described by *with*; the prepositional phrase makes the sentence wordy and unclear.

E It is not clear what connection is being described by *with*; the prepositional phrase makes the sentence wordy and unclear.

## 221. (GWD-12-Q34)

In an attempt to guarantee the security of its innovative water purification method, the company required each employee to sign a confidentiality agreement prohibiting that its water purification methods be disclosed to companies using an analogous purification process.

- A. prohibiting that its water purification methods be disclosed to companies
- B. prohibiting them from the disclosing of its water purification methods to any company
- C. prohibiting disclosure of its water purification methods to any company
- D. that would prohibit them from disclosure of its water purification methods to companies
- E. that would prohibit its water purification methods to be disclosed to a company

题目释义: In an attempt to do sth., the company require employee to do sth. prohibiting disclosure of sth. to any company using an analogous purification process.

考点:

固定用法 (idiom)

1. prohibit固定搭配: prohibit sth; prohibit from doing; prohibit sb from doing
2. 指代问题。

选项分析:

- A. prohibit that是错误用法; companies和an process单复数不匹配
- B. prohibit sb from doing, 这里prohibit sb from sth错误; the disclosing不简洁, disclose有其名词形式, 直接用disclosure; them无指代, 前面的employee是单数



- C. correct; prohibit sth.是惯用法; 因为后面未划线部分已经用了analogous, 所以前面只需要any company, 而不必any other company来特意把自己公司排除开来
- D. 描述agreement的内容用现在分词作定语修饰更合适; them无指代; prohibit sb from sth错误; companies和an process单复数不匹配
- E. 描述agreement的内容用现在分词作定语修饰更合适; prohibit sth. to be done错误

## 222. (GWD-1-Q34)

Although people in France consume fatty foods at a rate comparable to the United States, their death rates from heart disease are far lower in France.

- A. people in France consume fatty foods at a rate comparable to the United States, their
- B. people in France and the United States consume fatty foods at about the same rate, the
- C. fatty foods are consumed by people in France at a comparable rate to the United States's, their
- D. the rate of fatty foods consumed in France and the United States is about the same, the
- E. the rate of people consuming fatty foods is about the same in France and the United States, the

题目释义: Although people in France & US consume fatty foods at about the same rate, the death rates from heart disease are far lower in France.

### 考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

1. 比较对象。
2. 逻辑意思。

### 选项分析:

- A. rate和US比较, 比较对象不对等; their为完全指代, 故their指代people in France, 代入句中即death rates of people in France...are far lower in France, 语义重复
- B. Correct
- C. Their指代People in France错误; 被动的使用awkward; the United States's后面的省略无法还原, 比较对象不明确
- D. the rate of fatty foods错, 不是foods的rate, 而应该是consuming foods的rate; consumed in France and the United States错误, 应该在the United States前加in, 同时主语rate应改为rates, 且谓语动词改为are
- E. the rate of people错误, 不是people的rate, 应该是the rate of consumption; 同时rate应改为rates, 且谓语动词改为复数, 在the United States前加in

## 223. (GWD-23-Q23)

After several years of rapid growth, the health care company became one of the largest health care providers in the metropolitan area, while it then proved unable to handle the increase in business, falling months behind in its payment to doctors and hospitals.

- A. while it then proved unable to handle the increase in business, falling months behind in its payment to
- B. while it then proved unable to handle the increase in business and fell months behind in its payment to



- C. but then it proved unable to handle the increase in business, falling months behind in its paying
- D. but then proving unable to handle the increase in business, falling months behind in paying
- E. but then proved unable to handle the increase in business, falling months behind in paying

题目释义: the company became one of the largest providers, but then proved unable to handle sth., falling months behind in panying

### 考点:

习惯用语 (idiom) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

1. 动词比动名词简洁: payment比paying好, development比developing好。对于没有专门名词形式的动词, 再应该用动名词。
2. While在表示转折对比时, 有两件events同时发生的含义。

### 选项分析:

- A. 即便表示转折对比, while也有“at the same time”的含义在里面, 与then矛盾, 并让句意变成了the health care company expanding and falling是同时发生的, 但是实际上应该是先became largest, 然后再fell; its payment没有问题, 只是没有in paying to简洁
- B. while的错误同A; fall用动名词形式做伴随状语更好, 因为fall和handle并不属于同一层次, 而是属于unable to handle的结果; its payment没有问题, 只是没有in paying to简洁
- C. 前面的it多余, 可以省略(effctiveness); in its paying, 使得paying从动词变成了动名词, 不简洁, 且paying这个动作就是the health care company执行的, 所以不用加上its。prep.+one's+doing往往是不简洁的, 要多加留意
- D. proving错误, 应该直接用prove
- E. Correct; Proved通常用主动表示被动, but后面省略了it, 因为主语相同

### 补充说明:

1. but后面本来是应该加句子的, 但是在主语相同的情况下可以省略主语。

## 224. (GWD-12-Q13)

Although energy prices have tripled in the United States over the last two years, research indicates few people to have significantly reduced the amount of driving they do, nor are they making fuel efficiency a priority when shopping for cars.

- A. few people to have significantly reduced the amount of driving they do, nor are they making
- B. few people having significantly reduced the amount of driving they do or made
- C. that there are few people who have significantly reduced the amount of driving they do, nor having made
- D. that few people have significantly reduced the amount of driving they do and are not making
- E. that few people have significantly reduced the amount of driving they do or made

题目释义: Although..., research indicates that few people have reduced the amount of driving they do or made fuel efficiency a priority when shopping for cars.

考点：

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 平行结构 (parallelism)

1. the amount of driving they do 中的 they do 是定语从句，先行词 the amount of driving 在定从中做宾语省略 that，还原也即 do the amount of driving，类似于 do a lot of homework/driving；在 formal problem 里出现 do driving 这样“不太正式”的结构其实还是有点令人诧异的。
2. 比较结构中的省略。
3. Nor 的相关用法：
  - 1) nor 用在否定句中表示“也不”的意思
  - 2) neither A nor B 后面跟的谓语动词由 B 决定：

Neither we nor they want it. (来自 AHD 的例子)，说明由 B 决定的。

再看两个来自 jukuu 的例子：

1. Neither menus nor dialog boxes have this immediate property. Each one requires an intermediate step, sometimes more than one.
2. Neither the salesman nor the supervisor has been notified of the sale.

另外单个 neither 的用法：

They were not in Shanghai at that time. Neither (nor) were we.

They are not from England. Neither (nor) is she.

4. indicate 的固定搭配：indicate (to sb.) something/that... 显示，展现

选项分析：

- A. indicate few people to have done 搭配错误；they 指代 few people，已经是否定含义了不需要再有 nor，只要用 or 就好；are making 和 reduced 不平行，应该用 made
- B. indicate 错误同 A；having done 是非谓语动词中现在分词的完成式，使得从句没有谓语动词。
- C. there are 表示自然存在或统计数据，用在此处并不合适 (记住一些有效性错误，能加速筛选选项)；having made 和 have reduced 不平行；因为前后主语都是 few people，不需要用 nor 来连接。
- D. and 前后不平行，并且后面半句变成了 few people are not making... 于原句意思相悖；and 在否定句中是“或”的意思，要用 or 来表示“和”。
- E. correct；made 前省略了 have，have reduced 和 have made 平行，也即两个平行的过去分词可以共享同一个助动词 have；由于宾语从句由 few 引导是一个否定含义的句子，所以 or 表示“并”，而不是“或”。

## 225. (GWD-1-Q24)

By sucking sap from the young twigs of the hemlock tree, tree growth is retarded by the woolly adelgid, causing needles to change color from deep green to grayish green and to drop prematurely.

- A. tree growth is retarded by the woolly adelgid, causing needles to change color from deep green to grayish green and to drop
- B. tree growth is retarded by the woolly adelgid, and this causes the color of needles to change from deep green to grayish green, and their dropping
- C. the woolly adelgid retards tree growth, which causes needles to change color from deep green to grayish green, and dropping
- D. the woolly adelgid retards tree growth, causing needles to change color from deep green to grayish green and to drop
- E. the woolly adelgid retards tree growth, and this causes the color of needles to change from deep

green to grayish green, and then their dropping

题目释义: By sucking sap from tree ..., the woolly adelgid retards tree growth, causing needles to change color ... and to drop prematurely.

考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 平行结构 (parallelism)

1. 现在在句首, 逻辑主语应等于主语。
2. and前后平行。
3. which不能指代前面整句话, 但是in which case就可以, 因为是固定搭配

选项分析:

- A. tree growth不能suck sap from tree, 因此sucking的逻辑主语错误
- B. sucking逻辑主语错误; this不能裸奔, 如果要指代前面整句, 需加上别的概括性名词组成this + n.; their dropping与to change不平行; their无指代
- C. GMAT语法中Which无法指代前面整句; dropping和to change不平行
- D. Correct; causing作伴随结果; to change和to drop对称
- E. this错误同B; cause the color of needles to change不如cause needles to change color简洁; and后不平行, their无指代

## 226. (GWD-3-Q1)

The four-million-year-old fossilized skeleton known as Lucy is so small compared with many other skeletons presumed to be of the same species, and so some paleontologists have argued that Lucy represents a different lineage.

- A. presumed to be of the same species, and so
- B. presumed to be of the same species that
- C. presumed that they are of the same species, and so
- D. that they have presumed to be of the same species, so that
- E. that they have presumed are of the same species, and

题目释义: The skeleton is so small compared with many other skeletons presumed to be of the same species that some Ps have argued that...

考点:

习惯用语 (idiom)

1. so....that结构
2. 简洁有效性
3. Presume的固定搭配:  
presume的固定搭配, 表示假设的时候就这三种用法:  
presume that

I presume we'll be there by six o'clock.

presume somebody/something to be somebody/something (被动即sth. presumed to be)

From the way he talked, I presumed him to be your boss.  
be presumed to do something  
The temple is presumed to date from the first century BC.

### 选项分析:

- A. so...that结构不完整; and so连用没问题
- B. correct; so...that比较远, 但不可忽略
- C. 用presumed to be更简洁; 后面and so破坏了so...that结构。
- D. that they have presumed中用现在完成时没有必要, they无所指; so...so that搭配错误。
- E. that they have presumed中用现在完成时没有必要, they无所指; have presumed are两个谓语动词错误; so...that结构不完整。

## 227. (GWD-3-Q41)

In ancient Thailand, much of the local artisans' creative energy was expended for the creation of Buddha images and when they constructed and decorated the temples that enshrined them.

- A. much of the local artisans' creative energy was expended for the creation of Buddha images and when they constructed and decorated the temples that enshrined them
- B. much of the local artisans' creative energy was expended on the creation of Buddha images and on construction and decoration of the temples in which they were enshrined
- C. much of the local artisans' creative energy was expended on the creation of Buddha images as well as constructing and decoration of the temples in which they were enshrined
- D. creating images of Buddha accounted for much of the local artisans' creative energy, and also constructing and decorating the temples enshrining them
- E. the creation of Buddha images accounted for much of the local artisans' creative energy as well as construction and decoration of the temples that enshrined them

题目释义: ...energy was expended on the creation of Buddha images and on construction and decoration of the temples in which they were enshrined.

### 考点:

平行结构 (parallelism) 逻辑意思 (logical predication) 习惯用法 (idiom)

- 1. and前后要平行
- 2. expend固定搭配: expend sth. in/on (doing) sth.
- 3. enshrine习惯用法: enshrine in或be enshrined in (enshrine通常用被动语态)

### 选项分析:

- A. for the creation of Buddha images和when they constructed不平行; they constructed中constructed应该用被动语态; expend for搭配错误; temples enshrine them的用法unidiomatic, enshrine通常用被动语态
- B. correct; 大平行夹着小平行, 因为which指代temples, 所以they就无歧义的指向之前唯一一个复数名词images
- C. A as well as B有主次顺序, A是主要的, B是次要的, 改变句意; construct有专门的名词construction,

不应该用—ing形式，而且要平行也要在前面加个on。

- D. construct和decorate有专门对应的名词；and前后也不平行；temples enshrine them的用法unidiomatic，enshrine通常用被动语态
- E. as well as错误同C；平行少on；temples enshrine them的用法unidiomatic，enshrine通常用被动语态

## 228. (GWD-8-Q2)

Thelonious Monk, who was a jazz pianist and composer, produced a body of work both rooted in the stride-piano tradition of Willie (The Lion) Smith and Duke Ellington, yet in many ways he stood apart from the mainstream jazz repertory.

- A. Thelonious Monk, who was a jazz pianist and composer, produced a body of work both rooted
- B. Thelonious Monk, the jazz pianist and composer, produced a body of work that was rooted both
- C. Jazz pianist and composer Thelonious Monk, who produced a body of work rooted
- D. Jazz pianist and composer Thelonious Monk produced a body of work that was rooted
- E. Jazz pianist and composer Thelonious Monk produced a body of work rooted both

题目释义：Jazz pianist and composer TM produced a body of work that was rooted in s-p tradition of WS and DE, yet ...

### 考点：

平行结构（parallelism） 逻辑意思（logical predication）

1. both...and平行结构，正确的搭配是Both X and Y 或 Both in X and in Y.
2. 关于职位、称号的同位语的用法，见补充说明

### 选项分析：

- A. 用非限定性定语从句不如用同位语简洁；both...and...结构不完整。
- B. Thelonious Monk, the jazz pianist and composer不如Jazz pianist and composer Thelonious Monk简洁；both错误同A。
- C. “, who...Duke Ellington,...”，句子结构变成了“主语+定语从句+转折句”，中间没有谓语。
- D. Correct；
- E. both错误同A

### 补充说明：

关于同位语用法中的the和逗号（如B选项中的TM, the jazz pianist and composer）--摘自Manhattan:

1. if you preface someone's name with a noun describing their occupation (or other word describing *what that person does*), WITHOUT AN ARTICLE, OR WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE "THE", you DO NOT use a comma. 如果把职位、称号放在人名前面，如果没有冠词，或者有定冠词，就不用逗号（本题的情况）。

example:

*Jazz pianist and composer Thelonious Monk ... --> correct*

注意：

- (1) if you are using "THE (description) (name)" to introduce someone for the first time, then you DON'T use a comma. 但有要注意：当职位、称号前是定冠词时，如果是第一次提到某

人，是不必用逗号的

example:

*The author Ernest Hemingway was known for his drunken and violent escapades.*

--> here we are introducing hemingway, so we don't use a comma.

- (2) if you have already introduced two or more people, but you are using "THE (description)" to single out one of them, then you DO use a comma.

example:

*Among her friends were an author and a painter; the author, Ernest Hemingway, went on to become an icon of American literature.*

--> we've already introduced "the author"; this time we use a comma to single him out.

2. if there's an **indefinite** article (**a/an**), you DO use a comma. 如果前面有不定冠词，就要用逗号。

example

*A jazz pianist and composer, Thelonious Monk ... --> correct*

3. if it's an adjective, you DO use a comma. 如果前面不是职位、称号，而是一个形容词，那就要用逗号。

example:

*Creative and original, Thelonious Monk ... --> correct*

## 229. (T-9-Q34)

Just like the background in art history needed by an archaeologist in order to evaluate finds of ancient art, the nautical archaeologist needs specialized knowledge of the history and theory of ship design in order to understand shipwrecks.

- A. Just like the background in art history needed by an archaeologist in order to evaluate finds of ancient art, the
- B. Just as an archaeologist who needs a background in art history to evaluate finds of ancient art, a
- C. Just as an archaeologist needs a background in art history to evaluate finds of ancient art, so a
- D. Like the archaeologist who evaluates finds of ancient art and requires a background in art history, so the
- E. As evaluating finds of ancient art requires an archaeologist who has a background in art history, so the

题目释义：Just as an archaeologist needs a BG in ..., so a nautical archaeologist needs knowledge of...

### 考点：

习惯用语 (idiom)

- just as A do, so B do 平行比较结构的习惯搭配：意思是：就如同A...B...  
\*：这里的as是不能用like, whereas的。而且like...so...不符合搭配习惯，应该去掉so...  
\*：just as with和just like都是很wordy的
- 下面三种形式无区别（后两种强烈语气，不可以随意删掉 so）前后都要用句子，不能只用短语。  
Just as ... , so ...      Just as you sow, so you will reap      主从句要尽量形式对称  
Just as ... , as ...      Just as you sow, as you will reap      主从句要尽量形式对称



Just as ... , so too ... 主句要部分倒装(so too 后是主句)

Just as you sow, so too will you reap

- so with 是错误结构。(prep 1-15)
- as with 的结构在日常语法中是对的(意思为“正如……的情况一样”，看作是 as is the same with 的省略式，with 后面常跟名词、动名词或 what 从句):

(1) As with other forward contracts, the cash settlement amount is the amount necessary to compensate the party who would be disadvantaged by the actual change in market rates as of the settlement date.

(2) As with most diseases and disasters, the young suffer the most.

就像大部分的疾病和灾难一样，最遭罪的是年轻人。

(3) As with drawing a picture, you should be patient and careful in doing this job.

正如画画一样，你应该耐心并且认真做这项工作。

(4) As with what I said, he failed again.

正如我所说的，他又一次失败了。

但用于 GMAT 语法中，需要有其他结构与之平行:

大全 938. With diamonds, as with all gems, you should ask for a written description of your purchase; the description may prove useful later if you have reason to believe the jeweler misled you.

单纯的 as with the case + prep. (of/with/in) + sth. 结构错误，应该用 as is the case + prep. (of/with/in) + sth.

prep 1-39 As is the case with traditional pharmacies, prescriptions are the cornerstone of a successful on-line drugstore, since it is primarily prescriptions that attract the customers, who then also buy other health related items.

- in the same way that..., as/so... 也是错误结构
- like..., so/as... 也是错误结构: like 的比较必须是严格对称的

### 3. to 和 in order to 的比较: (prep1-13 1-65 1-144)

(1) in order to 不如 to 简洁，但是 in order to 有强调含义，所以未必错。

prep1-101 Many environmentalists, and some economists, say that free trade encourages industry to relocate to countries with ineffective or poorly enforced antipollution laws, mostly in the developing world, and that, in order to maintain competitiveness, rich nations have joined this downward slide toward more lax attitudes about pollution.

(2) in order for sth. to do/be, in order that 和 in order to do sth. 都可以。

I am saving money in order that I can buy a house. 我正在攒钱，以便我能买一所房子。

(3) in order to 不能做主语，只能做状语；不定式可以做主语，因为它可以做名词成分。

(4) in order to 因为只做状语，所以不会修饰前面名词，to do 可以做定语，所以有修饰前面名词的功能。

Prep1-13 Unlike most severance packages, which require workers to stay until their last scheduled day in order to collect, the automobile company's severance package is available to workers.

(5) in order to 和 to 都不用考虑逻辑主语。

Prep1-1 To meet the rapidly rising market demand for fish and seafood, suppliers are growing fish twice as fast as they grow naturally, cutting their feed allotment by nearly half and raising them on special diets.

201. To be successful, cardiopulmonary resuscitation should begin within one to four minutes after a cardiac arrest.

957. In order to protect the public, by law only a qualified physician can prescribe medicine.

Manhattan CR: To help regulate the internal temperature of the tree, the outermost layers of wood of the Brazilian ash often peel away when the temperature exceeds 95 degrees Fahrenheit, leaving the tree with fewer rings than it would otherwise have.

### 选项分析:

- A. just like表达wordy; the background和the nautical archaeologist不平行; in order to不如to简洁
- B. just as后面没有so/as/so too搭配, 比较结构错误; just as后面句子主谓不完整
- C. correct
- D. like..., so...比较结构错误; evaluates finds of ancient art and requires a background in art history打破了原来的目的状语结构, evaluate应该是requires a BG in art history的目的
- E. as..., so...比较结构错误; 前一个分句更改原句合理句意; as...,so...逻辑上前后不平行

### 补充说明:

一个类似just as的结构—by aeoluseros

what = just as,意为“恰像, 犹如, 好比”用作连词,引导比较状语从句

(1) 惯用句式是: A is to B what C is to D. 意为“A对B而言正如C对D一样”例如:

Air is to us What water is to fish. 空气对于我们犹如水对于鱼。(介词to表示两者的关系)

(2) 也有“A is for B what C is for D.”句式。例如:

Poultry is for the cook what canvas is for the paint. 厨师离不了家禽正如画家离不开画布一样。(介词for表示“供...使用”)

(3) what 引导的从句也可以放在句首,其句式是: What C is to D, that A is to B.(= A is to B what C is to D.) 在这一结构中,喻体在前,主体在后,相当于“just as...,so...”结构,意思也是“A对B而言正如C对D一样”例如:

What blood vessel is to a man's body, that railway is to transportation. (=Just as blood vessel is to a man's body, so Railway is to transportation.) 铁路对于运输,好比血管对于人体一样。

(4) 需要注意的是what不可以直接被just as替换, just as需要有遵循属于自己的平行比较格式。

如下题OG12-58:

A leading figure in the Scottish Enlightenment, Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism what Marx's *Das Kapital* is to socialism.

- (A) Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism what
- (B) Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism like
- (C) Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism just as
- (D) Adam Smith wrote two major books that are to democratic capitalism similar to
- (E) Adam Smith wrote two major books that are to democratic capitalism what

Idiom; Logical predication

A leading figure in the Scottish Enlightenment describes Adam Smith, not his two books, so the name of Adam Smith must immediately follow the opening phrase. The comparison between Smith's books and Marx's book is expressed as a ratio, so the correct idiomatic expression is *x is to y what a is to b*.

A The opening phrase is a dangling modifier because it describes Smith, not his books.

B The opening phrase is a dangling modifier; *like* is an incorrect word for making the comparison.

C The opening phrase is a dangling modifier; *just as* is an incorrect term for the comparison.

D *Similar to* is an incorrect conclusion to the comparison introduced by *are to*.

E Correct. The opening phrase is followed by the subject that it modifies, Adam Smith, and the comparison of the two men's work is presented idiomatically.

## 230. (T-4-Q4)

Turning away from literary realism to write romantic stories about the peasant life and landscape of northern Sweden, in 1909 Selma Lagerlöf was the novelist who became the first woman and was also the first Swedish writer to win the Nobel Prize for Literature.

- A. Turning away from literary realism to write romantic stories about the peasant life and landscape of northern Sweden, in 1909 Selma Lagerlöf was the novelist who became the first woman and was also the first Swedish writer to win
- B. She turned away from literary realism and wrote romantic stories about the peasant life and landscape of northern Sweden, and novelist Selma Lagerlöf in 1909 became the first woman as well as the first Swedish writer that won
- C. Selma Lagerlöf was a novelist who turned away from literary realism to write romantic stories about the peasant life and landscape of northern Sweden, and in 1909 she became the first woman in addition to the first Swedish writer winning
- D. A novelist who turned away from literary realism to write romantic stories about the peasant life and landscape of northern Sweden, Selma Lagerlöf became in 1909 the first woman and also the first Swedish writer to win
- E. As a novelist, Selma Lagerlöf turned away from literary realism and wrote romantic stories about the peasant life and landscape of northern Sweden, in 1909 becoming the first woman and also the first Swedish writer that won

题目释义: A novelist who..., Selma Lagerlöf became...writer to win...

考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 习惯用语 (idiom)

- 1. 分词短语与逻辑主语之间插入东西不好。
- 2. the first...to do something: “数词+不定式”, 惯用法。

选项分析:

- A. in 1909放在Selma前面不好, turning away的修饰对象Selma被隔远了; in 1909 Selma Lagerlöf was the novelist荒谬的说SL只有在1909年才从现实主义文学成为浪漫小说家, 应该是1909年成为第一夫人; and后面的多用了was使得原义变为SL是第一个女人, 意思不对, 应去掉was
- B. She无指代, and novelist Selma使得两个分句分裂成两个人的事; turn away from...to...改为了from...and...少了“弃前取后”的逻辑关系; as well as有主次之分, 分开了first woman和first Swedish writer的平等关系, 使得that仅指代了Swedish writer, 使得前面became the first woman成为第一个女人, 意思不对
- C. the first...winning习惯用法错误; in addition的存在同样使句子含义犯了成为“第一个女人”的错误。
- D. Correct; 在这里如果去掉了also反而不好了, 如果就X and Y, 一般是指用于指两个不同的人, 如果有了also, 一般指的是对同一个对象的两个描述, 不过去掉also问题也不大; first woman和first Swedish writer必须平起平坐(凭这点就能排除A,B,C); the first...to do sth正确用法
- E. from...and错误同B; in 1909的位置不好, 最好是放在becoming后面; that不能指代人。

补充说明:

who, whom只能指人, 不可指物 (如language, 要用which指代); which只能指物, 不可指人

传统语法规则规定that不能用于指人，而只能用that指思想观点、动物或不具有生命的物体(植物属于不具有生命的物体)，要用whose, whose可以指人也可以指物(pre1-192)

OG11-130里面说that不能指代人，只能用who来指代。(虽然现代英语用法中that可以用于不同情形下)

## 231. (T-9-Q38)

The globalization of financial-services companies has been a boon to money launderers, because of allowing money placed in a bank in a less regulated jurisdiction to be transferred to a branch in a more regulated one.

- A. of allowing money placed in a bank in a less regulated jurisdiction to be transferred
- B. of allowing the transfer of money placed in a bank in a less regulated jurisdiction
- C. it allows that money placed in a bank in a less regulated jurisdiction is transferred
- D. it allows the transfer of money having been placed in a bank in a less regulated jurisdiction
- E. it allows money placed in a bank in a less regulated jurisdiction to be transferred

题目释义: The globalization has been a boon, because it allows sth. to be done.

### 考点:

习惯用语 (idiom)

- 1. because of 通常接简单的名词
- 2. allow的固定搭配:
  - (1) allow that承认/allow for考虑到, 允许/allow sb. to do sth.允许;
  - (2) allow sth. to be done也是对的;
  - (3) allow + sb. + 动作性名词 错, allow + 动作性名词 错

### 选项分析:

- A. because of后面累赘, 混乱, awkward
- B. because of后面累赘; allow sth.后所接的一长串过于累赘
- C. 如果allow意为允许, 则需要用allow sb. to do sth.搭配; If "allows that" did mean "permits," you'd have to change the "is transferred" to "to be transferred,".
- D. Allow sth.后所接的一长串过于累赘; having been不能做限定性修饰
- E. Correct

## 232. (TTGWD4-Q1)

The Acoma and Hopi are probably the two oldest surviving Pueblo communities, both dating back at least a thousand years.

- A. both dating
- B. both of which have dated
- C. and each has dated
- D. and each one dating
- E. each one of which date

题目释义: A&P are the two oldest communities, both dating back at least 1000 years.

### 考点:

句子结构 (grammatical construction) 习惯用语 (idiom)

1. each 型独立主格, 强调句尾名词, 形式为:  
句子 + 复数名词结尾, each + 介词短语/形容词短语/-ed形式/-ing形式
2. 独立主格独立主格结构 (Independent Genitive) 有两部分组成, 前一部份是名词或者代词, 后一部分是非谓语动词(不定式、动名词和分词)或形容词、副词、或介词短语。前后两部分具有逻辑主谓关系。在句子中作状语, 表示时间、原因、条件、伴随、目的、补充说明等。

### 选项分析:

- A. correct; both dating独立主格在此表示补充说明, 与each型独立主格同一原理; 这里both用each来替代也可以; dating用了分词形式, 其潜在时态与主句一致。
- B. which指代的是two oldest surviving Pueblo communities, 带入即both of two oldest surviving Pueblo communities可以发现both和two重复; date的现在完成时有潜在含义说“以后都不是追溯到1000年以前了”, 要用一般现在时或者分词形式, 分词形式的潜在时态与主句一致。
- C. 有and作为并列连词割裂了前后关系; 现在完成时错误同B
- D. and后面句子不完整(fragment)
- E. each one of which非限定性定语从句谓语用单数, 且定从不如同位语简洁

## 233. (GWD-12-Q32)

Prospecting for gold during the California gold rush was a relatively easy task, because of erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds thrust to the surface by volcanic activity put gold literally within reach for anybody with a pan or shovel.

- A. because of erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds thrust to the surface by volcanic activity put gold literally within reach for
- B. because of erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and volcanic activity that thrust ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds to the surface, and putting gold literally within reach of
- C. owing to erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and volcanic activity that had thrust ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds to the surface, and putting gold literally within reach of
- D. since erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and volcanic activity that thrust ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds to the surface, putting gold literally within reach for
- E. since erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds thrust to the surface by volcanic activity put gold literally within reach of

题目释义: P was an easy task, since X, Y, and Z put gold within reach of...

在加州黄金淘金热时期探金是很容易的事情, 冲蚀, 史前冰山运动, 被火山运动推到地表来的古老的产金河床把金子放到有淘金盘或铲子的人们触手可及的地方

### 考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 习惯用法 (idiom)



1. 其他条件都满足的情况下，一般表示原因用because，当后面的原因是推测的时候用for最合适，当后面的原因是大家看到就知道(顺其自然)时用as/since最合适。
2. reach for sth.: 伸手抓某物; reach of sb.: 在某人能触及到的范围内

### 选项分析:

- A. because of不能接句子(谓语动词是put)，且通常接简单的名词; reach for anybody含义错误
- B. because of后的核心名词是erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and volcanic activity that thrust ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds to the surface, 而并不是“事件”，逻辑含义错误; volcanic activity并不是put gold within reach of anybody的直接原因，而是gold-bearing riverbeds thrust to the surface的直接原因，所以第三个并列名词应该是ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds而不是volcanic activity; and putting和前面的名词短语erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and volcanic activity that had thrust ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds to the surface逻辑上不能并列，实际上后者三个名词是Put的行为主使。
- C. owing to和because of用法相似，错误亦同B中的because of; had thrust用过去完成时表示了thrust发生在主句之前，可thrust是个缓慢持续，至今仍在发生的过程，用过去完成时不合适; volcanic activity在逻辑上与erosion, prehistoric glacier movement不平行; and putting错误同B
- D. since从句没有谓语动词，putting应改为put; reach for错误同A; 并不是火山运动把金子放到触手可及的地方，而是被火山运动能够推到地表的河床。
- E. correct; since表示顺其自然的原因，用在此最合适; erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds三者并列没有问题，三者确实都是行使put这一动作的事物，虽然前两个是抽象性名词，后者是具体的实物名词，但功能相同（难点，很容易因为这一点而排除了E）; thrust在此为过去分词

### 补充说明:

小技巧: 对于选项比较长的句子，专业名词可以暂时忽略，就比如这里erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds三者的并列完全可以只用X,Y,AND Z来替代。

## 234. (GWD-24-36)

The Industrial Revolution, making it possible to mass-produce manufactured goods, was marked by their use of new machines, new energy sources, and new basic materials.

- A. making it possible to mass-produce manufactured goods, was marked by their use of
- B. making possible the mass production of manufactured goods, marked by the use of
- C. which made it possible that manufactured goods were mass-produced, was marked by their using
- D. which made possible the mass production of manufactured goods, was marked by the use of
- E. which made the mass production of manufactured goods possible and was marked by using

题目释义: The IR, which made possible sth., was marked by the use of X, Y, and Z.

### 考点:

句子结构 (grammatical construction) 平行结构 (parallelism)

1. make sth. adj结构中如果sth.过长，可以宾语导致: make adj. sth.。
2. and前后平行。



选项分析:

- A. their无所指, 若指代goods则逻辑意思错误; 虽然make it possible to do sth.搭配没有问题, 但to mass-produce不定式表示动作趋势, 而mass-produce goods是已经发生的事实, 所以用名词the mass production of manufactured goods更为恰当
- B. 全句缺少谓语动词, 应在marked前加was
- C. 用that引导名词性成分累赘; manufactured goods were mass-produced(产品都是量产)改变原句合理含义(量产产品); their无所指, 是的by their using动作发出者不明; by one's using累赘
- D. correct; 用make it possible to mass-produce或make possible the mass production都没有问题
- E. 整个句子只有一个主语, 没有谓语; make sth. adj.中如果sth.太长通常后置到adj.后; using的动作发出者成了Industrial Revolution, 不合逻辑

## 235. (GWD-9-Q1)

A mixture of poems and short fiction, Jean Toomer's Cane has been called one of the three best novels ever written by Black Americans—the others being Richard Wright, author of Native Son, and Ralph Ellison, author of Invisible Man

- A. Black Americans—the others being Richard Wright, author of Native Son, and Ralph Ellison, author of Invisible Man
- B. Black Americans—including Native Son by Richard Wright and Invisible Man by Ralph Ellison
- C. a Black American—including Richard Wright, author of Native Son, and Ralph Ellison, author of Invisible Man
- D. a Black American—the others being Richard Wright, author of Native Son, and Ralph Ellison, author of Invisible Man
- E. a Black American—the others being Richard Wright's Native Son and Ralph Ellison's Invisible Man

题目释义: ..., Book C... -- Book NS and Book Invisible Man...

考点:

平行结构 (parallelism) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

- 1. 主语是书, 平行对称应该也是书。
- 2. 破折号在这里的用处是补充说明主句的内容

选项分析:

- A. 破折号之前的主语是Cane这本书, 后面平行的也需要对应是书而不是人, 所以后面的平行错误; 语法上a black american或black americans都没有错, 但在此用单数更为清晰, 明确指出了一本书是一个人写, 而没有多个人写的歧义
- B. Richard Wright's Native Son和Jean Toomer's Cane不够对称, 不如E好; 语法上a black american或black americans都没有错, 但在此用单数更为清晰, 明确指出了一本书是一个人写, 而没有多个人写的歧义
- C. 破折号后面的平行错误同A
- D. 破折号后面的平行错误同A
- E. Correct; the others being用法正确, Jean Toomer's Cane, Richard Wright's Native Son, Ralph Ellison's Invisible Man平行的最漂亮完美: 不仅仅都是书, 而且都用了所有格。

补充说明:

1. being+n.不一定错。本题破折号后可以还原为句子: The others are RW's NS and RE's IM.
2. 关于用Black Americans还是用a Black American: 日常写作中用Black Americans和a Black American都可以, 逻辑和语法都没有问题, GMAT家似乎倾向于使用后者, 更加清晰指出一本书是一个人写。

## 236. (GWD-1-8 OG 12-66)

The 32 species that make up the dolphin family are closely related to whales and in fact include the animal known as the killer whale, which can grow to be 30 feet long and is famous for its aggressive hunting pods.

- A. include the animal known as the killer whale, which can grow to be 30 feet long and is
- B. include the animal known as the killer whale, growing as big as 30 feet long and
- C. include the animal known as the killer whale, growing up to 30 feet long and being
- D. includes the animal known as the killer whale, which can grow as big as 30 feet long and is
- E. includes the animal known as the killer whale, which can grow to be 30 feet long and it is

题目释义: The 32 species are related to W and in fact include the animal known as the killer whale, which can grow to be 30 feet long and is famous for...

考点:

逻辑意思(logical predication) 平行结构(parallelism) 习惯用语(idiom) 主谓一致(agreement)

1. 如果前面主句是主谓宾结构(非主系表结构), 现在分词在句尾做状语。
2. grow as big as 40 feet和grow to be 30 feet long意思相同。

选项分析:

- A. Correct; which指代the killer whale, grow to和is famous for平行。
- B. growing做伴随状语修饰了谓语动词include及其主语the 32 species, 错误; as big as和long重复, 用一个就好(size和length是同一概念)。
- C. growing错误同B; being+adj.错误。
- D. includes应用复数形式, 因为主语是the 32 species, 且与其平行的谓语动词用了are; grow as错误同B。
- E. includes错误同D; which从句中犯了run-on sentence错误, 它应该删去。

补充说明:

OG12-66 解释:

Rhetorical construction; Agreement

The subject of the sentence is *the 32 species that make up the dolphin family*, and the sentence makes two claims about them: They are closely related, and they include the killer whale. The relative pronoun *which* restates the object of the second verb, reintroducing *the animal known as the killer whale* as the subject of a relative clause followed by two parallel verbs: *can grow* and *is famous*.

A Correct. In this concise sentence, verbs agree in number with their subjects and the relative pronoun *which* indicates clearly that *the animal known as the killer whale* is the subject of the verbs in the dependent clause.

B Changing the verb to the participial *growing* introduces ambiguity, because it could refer back to the subject of the sentence (*32 species*).

- C The participial *growing* might refer to *the 32 species*; the introduction of *being* is unnecessarily wordy and adds nothing in terms of meaning.
- D *as big as* is an idiomatically incorrect expression of the comparison; the plural verb form *include* is needed to match the plural subject *the 32 species*.
- E *It* simply restates the subject of the previous phrase, introducing more words but no additional meaning; the singular verb form *includes* should be the plural form *include*.
- The correct answer is A.

## 237. (GWD-8-Q16) (GWD-13-15)

Concerns about public health led to the construction between 1876 and 1904 of three separate sewer systems to serve metropolitan Boston.

- A. Concerns about public health led to the construction between 1876 and 1904 of three separate sewer systems to serve
- B. Concerns about public health have led to the construction of three separate sewer systems between 1876 and 1904 to serve
- C. Concerns about public health have led between 1876 and 1904 to the construction of three separate sewer systems for serving
- D. There were concerns about public health leading to the construction between 1876 and 1904 of three separate sewer systems serving
- E. There were concerns leading between 1876 and 1904 to the construction of three separate sewer systems for serving

题目释义: Concerns...led to construction between 1876 and 1904 of three separate sewer systems to serve Boston.

### 考点:

句子结构 (grammatical construction) 习惯用语 (idiom)

- 表示动作的目的最好用to do, 如construct sth. to do sth.。  
\*: for doing是指某事物的具体用途, 而to do 则有目的的意思, 但用途和目的本来就有交叉的地方, 所以没有绝对规则, for doing有持久性的趋势, 而to do往往是一次性行为
- 注意时间状语修饰位置的改变也会引起句意的改变。

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; between 1876 and 1904修饰construction(三个系统的建造前后跨越28年)
- B. lead发生在过去, 不应该用现在时态(现在完成时), have lead表示了concern至今依然持续; Between 1876 and 1904有修饰systems的歧义, 意思变成了systems只有在1876和1904年之间存在
- C. have led时态错误, have lead表示了concern至今依然持续; Between 1876 and 1904放在lead后面修饰lead只在1876和1904年期间导致了construction, 而1904年以后又导致了其他事情, 改变句意; 表示动作的目的用to do而不用for doing, for doing表
- D. there are表示的是自然存在, 不能用于concerns之前; Leading时态错
- E. there are错误同D; between 1876 and 1904错误同C; for doing错误同C

补充说明:

Windmaple:

1. 时间状语通常位于句首或句尾，即便无法位于句首或句尾，也应该尽量靠向两边，不过注意一点：放句尾要小心，因为很可能前面就是个名词，然后就变定语了。
2. prep.+ n.的位置非常容易引起歧义，因为它既可以做定语也可以做状语，不管在句中还是句尾，只要是在名词后面都要特别小心。
3. 另外还见过 S1 V1 that S2 V2 at the same time 引起歧义的：如果 at the same time 逻辑上要修饰 V1，而距离上却离 V2 更近，所以产生了修饰 V2 的歧义（或者有时被形容为既可以修饰 V1，也可以修饰 V2）。

## 238. (GWD-4-4)

A new hair-growth drug is being sold for three times the price, per milligram, as the drug's maker charges for another product with the same active ingredient.

- A. as
- B. than
- C. that
- D. of what
- E. at which

题目释义：A new drug is being sold for three times the price\_\_\_\_the drug's maker charges...

考点:

句子结构（grammatical construction） 逻辑意思（logical predication） 习惯用语（idiom）

1. times做比较时的用法
  - 1) X times+as+adj./adv.+as
  - 2) X times+the+n.
  - 3) X times more than
3. charge a price for sth: *That seaside hotel charges exorbitant prices during the summer holidays.*

选项分析:

- A. times+the+n.+as是错误用法，应该是times+as+adj./adv.+as，as不能只有单只出现
- B. times+the+n.+than是错误用法；than必须要与比较级搭配
- C. correct; that指代price引导限定性定语从句，这里“，per milligram,”是个插入语，要用that来连接限定性定从；虽然that在定从中做宾语，但是为了更为清晰地表达后面部分的定从地位that还是应该补出，切不可因为that没有省略就判C错
- D. the drug's maker所要charges的东西就是price，所以what就是price，那么price of what就成了price of price，逻辑错误
- E. price是charge的直接对象（charge a price），所以不需要再加介词，直接that即可；charge at a price是错的，sell sth. at a price倒是可以的(另外price出现在at后面常表示代价)

补充说明:

一、倍数表达法

- 1、twice 的用法:

twice as many...as; twice as much...as;

twice + n.(可以是代词, 比如 that); twice + what 从句;

\*: 一个大家常误会的句子:

The farm has more than twice as many cows as it has pigs.: 农场有多于猪两倍多的牛的数量 (农场牛的数量比猪的两倍还要多)。(很多人会误读为猪比牛多。)

解读方法: 可以类比一下 A has B twice as many as C 这个比较句型也可以写为 A has twice as many B as C. 所以句子的核心是 A has B, 即: The farm has cows.

详细解读: twice as ...as 中前一个 as 是副词, more than twice as 修饰 many; 而 as it has pigs 中的 as 自然是个连词, 所以后面跟的是一个 adverbial clause (状语从句/副词从句), 而 as...as 句型比较特殊, 后面的 as 要与前面 as 所修饰的内容相呼应, 所以 as it has pigs 应该与前面 as 所修饰的对象 many 相呼应, 即 as it has pigs 也是修饰了 many。不管怎么说 as it has pigs 都不是核心成分。这样翻译过来就是农场有牛, 相当于两倍多的猪。故, 牛多猪少。

## 2、用动词表达倍数:

double/triple/quadruple/quintuple/sextuple ---- 》这些动词可以做形容词 (double 还能做 adv, predeterminer)

sth. double sth.; sth. is doubled; sth. double(adj.);

几个永远错误的形式:

(1)produce double; a doubling of; produce a doubling

(2)as much as twice the apples(much 与 apples 矛盾)(要改为 twice as many apples as; sth. double sth.)

\*: 这几个动词可以用主动也可以用被动, 但是不能和 as 搭配; (差不多记住这句话就可以)

## 3、...times(或数字) as + 形容词或副词+as;

## 4、sb. be + 百分数 + more likely (to do sth.) than to do sth.(前面的 to do 能省, 后面的不能省)

如: at least fifty percent less likely than those who are sedentary to die of a heart attack

## 5、表达倍数用 "... times + more + adj.+than, ... time as +adj.+as"都正确

## 6、三类表示倍数的形容词为: twofold, threefold, fourfold, tenfold 等。以 twofold 为例, 其意思为 two times as much or as many of something。该类词为形容词, 多用于构成形容词+名词的词组, 如: a threefold increase in revenue, 少用于比较两个事物之间的倍数关系。

## 二、章振邦语法中介绍的倍数表达法:

i. x times(twice) + the + n. (twice 还能做 determiner)

ii. x times adj. (比较形式) than

iii. x times as adj. as 注意里面的 adj.要和前面的名词匹配

A do x times as adj. ... x as B do

iv. x times + what 分句 (名词性从句相当于名词)

v. x-fold

vi. double, triple, quadruple, quintuple, sextuple

## 239. (GWD-12-Q3)

Were it not for the fusion-powered heat and radiation that rush from its core, instead its own weight would cause a star to collapse.

- A. instead its own weight would cause a star to collapse
- B. instead a star would have collapsed under its own weight
- C. a star would have to be collapsing under its own weight

- D. a star would collapse under its own weight  
E. its own weight would have caused a star's collapse

题目释义: Were it not for heat and radiation, a star would collapse under its own weight.

### 考点:

句子结构 (grammatical construction)

#### 1. 虚拟语气:

虚拟条件句的四种形式:

But for N, S + should/would/could/might + V / (have Vpp.) 若不是N, S应该...

= If it were not / (had not been) for N

= Were it not for N / (Had it not been for N)

= Without N (介词只有without可表虚拟语气)

#### 2. 虚拟语气的时态:

时间	从句谓语形式	主句谓语形式
将来	动词过去式(be 用 were) should + 动词原形 were to + 动词原形	would / should / might / could + 动词原形
现在	动词过去式(be 用 were)	would / should / might / could + 动词原形
过去	had + 动词过去分词	would / should / might / could have + 动词过去分词

#### 3. (From Manhattan) if a possessive pronoun PRECEDES a possessive noun, then the assumption is that it DOESN'T stand for that noun.

simple example: *his mother talked with joe's father.*

in this sentence, the implication is that *someone else's* mother - i.e., NOT joe's mother - talked to joe's father. if it were joe's mother, then the sentence would be written, much more naturally, as *joe's mother talked with his father.*

### 选项分析:

- A. 前面it指代后面主句的主语, 成了指代its own weight, 错误; 这样的虚拟语气句子, 主句必须一开头就是主语, 而不能是连词、副词, 因此instead错误; its指代不清
- B. Instead错误同A; 本句子描述的是当下的一个假设情形下的一个假设结果, 要用现在时态, 用would have collapsed表示了“与过去相反(也就是表示过去没崩溃)”不对。
- C. Would have to be collapsing是很混乱的时态; would have to是不很肯定的语气, 其表达的是have to do的内容只是一个假设, 并不是真的“必须”, 而have to表达的意思是, 要做的事情非常重要, “必须”去做
- D. correct
- E. it指代了its own weight, 错误; its指代不清; would have caused错误同B。

## 240. (GWD-12-Q30)

According to public health officials, in 1998 Massachusetts became the first state in which more babies were born to women over the age of thirty than under it.

- A. than



- B. than born
- C. than they were
- D. than there had been
- E. than had been born

题目释义: ..., M became the first state in which more babies were born to women over the age of thirty than under it.

### 考点:

比较结构 (comparison)

1. 完整被动主谓宾结构的比较。
2. be born into/to/of sth. (=be born in a particular situation, type of family etc.)  
e.g.: *One-third of all children are born into single-parent families.*

### 选项分析:

- A. correct; than后面省略了babies born to women; 因为under与over的平行, it明确指代the age of thirty
- B. under it修饰了born, 逻辑意思荒谬: 孩子们生下来时小于30岁。
- C. 根据比较的平行 they 指代 babies, 但仅补出 they were 使得 were 是助动词还是系动词不清楚, 系动词的话, under it 修饰了 they, 逻辑错误, 助动词的话, they were 累赘。(they 仅指向 babies 而不是指向 30 岁以上母亲剩下的 babies, 类似的例子如: In Japan elderly people are treated with far greater respect than they are in most Western countries. they 不是指代 Japan 的老年人, 而是就老年人)
- D. had时态错误, 比较双方是同时发生的, 应该都用一般过去时; there无并列对象。
- E. had时态错误同D。

### 补充说明:

比较之庖丁解牛—by cwang

对主谓宾全的句型

主语比较: A do sth than B do. (AB为对等名词, 加do是为了显示这是一个可以发出动作的名词, 因而确定是主语, 进而确定是主语对比)

介宾比较: A do sth of C1 by D1 than of C2 by D2. (C1C2, D1D2对等名词)

宾语比较: A do C1 than C2. (C1C2为对等名词)

状语比较: A do sth than usual/everbefore/people expected(直接加状语)

ETS就这几下子, 原则就是清楚地指示什么跟什么比。

按照这个原理, 对下一种句型只有主谓, 没有宾语的句子, 因为没有宾语, 只可能有主语比较, 因而不需要重复do来确认这是一个可发出动作的主语, 所以其比较形式如下:

I eat faster than you. 注意与下句区别

I eat apple faster than you do

如果写成 I eat apple faster than you 按ETS的理解, 从语法上就变成我吃苹果比吃你快, 成了宾语比较。逻辑上显然不通。

AS族的比较大同小异, as 可单独引导比较, 也可以复合成as many as, as hard as 等形式, 但ETS宗旨不变, 如

Sand road costs twice as many to build as to maintain(类似于介宾比较)

Sand road costs twice as many to build as stone road do(主语比较,)

Sand road costs the government twice as many to build as the residents.(宾语比较)

ETS考过AS比较的习惯用法(不受上述限制, 如下)

AS poor as they are, they can not afford a car.

They have 800million students, as many as have enrolled in our school.

(注意以上都是用逗号隔开的句子, AS在这里的作用更类似连词, 连接一个主句和一个从句)

注意AS有时不表比较的如as you work hard, you will pass the exam.表原因了。

There be 句型等同于一般的主谓宾俱全的句型

OG89

There is one PC for every 32 pupils in American four time as many as there were four years ago(主语比较)

There is one PC for every 32 pupils in American four time as many as DVD player(宾语比较)

There is one PC for every 32 pupils in American four time as many as for school teachers.(介宾比较)

There is one PC for every 32 pupils in American four time as many as in china(介宾比较)

以上的纲领代入EST的OG几乎都成立, 在我这次实战中也成立, 但GWD中有一题是例外的, 也就是说并没有放之四海而皆准的真理, 清楚, 简洁, 合理才是ETS的最高宗旨。

## 241. (GWD-9-Q39, OG12-131)

Over 75 percent of the energy produced in France derives from nuclear power, while in Germany it is just over 33 percent.

- A. while in Germany it is just over 33 percent
- B. compared to Germany, which uses just over 33 percent
- C. whereas nuclear power accounts for just over 33 percent of the energy produced in Germany
- D. whereas just over 33 percent of the energy comes from nuclear power in Germany
- E. compared with the energy from nuclear power in Germany, where it is just over 33 percent

题目释义: Over 75 percent of the energy produced in France derives from nuclear power, whereas nuclear power accounts for just over 33 percent of the energy produced in Germany

### 考点:

逻辑意思(logical predication) 平行结构(parallelism)

1. whereas/while这种连词连接的比较成分不要求含义上绝对的平行, 具体见prep 1-211。

2. 1) they, their, it都是完整指代, 即指代包含了被指对象的所有修饰成分

\*\*注意仅仅是修饰词, 如:

In Japan elderly people are treated with far greater respect than they are in most Western countries.如果前面的elderly people没有其他修饰, 后面时可以用they来指代的。

2) one和that, those是核心词指代。

3) that, one, it 的区别见补充说明。

3. 1) compared with直接跟在逗号后面可以修饰逗号前面名词短语的核心词:

Example:

*In the United States, while the number of foreign-born residents and their children is higher than ever, the percentage of the population they represent is not; in 1910 this group made up 35 percent of the population, compared with 20 percent in 2000.*

2) Compared with也可以修饰前面整个分句, compared with后面的名词与主语比较:

Example:

- ◆ Today, more than 43 percent of Californians under the age of eighteen are Hispanic, compared with about 35 percent a decade ago.
- ◆ In the United States, Fifty-two percent of high school graduates go on to college, compared with thirty-five percent in Canada and fifteen percent in Great Britain, Japan, and West Germany.
- ◆ One baby in four is now born to a mother aged thirty or older, compared with just one in six in 1975.

3) as compared to/with 中 as 指代前面整句的核心含义:

*A recent review of pay scales indicates that, on average, CEO's now earn 419 times the pay of blue-collar workers, as compared to 42 times their pay, the ratio in 1980.*

### 选项分析:

- A. it 完整指代 75 percent of the energy produced in France, 意思错误; 在比较成分前后都是句子的情况下, 前面分句是主谓宾结构表达动作, 后面分句是主系表结构表达状态, 功能上不平行, 错误
- B. compared to 比较不平行: 75% 和 Germany 比较; 33 percent 所指代的事物不明确
- C. Correct; 前后都是主谓宾结构; 介词短语充当地点状语前后对称, 位置正确; 比较了法国和德国各自的来自于核能的能量
- D. 由于 in Germany 位置变成了修饰 nuclear power, 就变成了“在法国, 超过 33% 的能量来自于德国生产的核能”; 同时失去了比较的意味, 这个选项里用的 whereas 是没意义的。
- E. 句式 wordy; it 指代不清

OG12-131 解释:

Rhetorical construction; Logical predication

This sentence compares percentages and uses the prepositional phrases *in France* and *in Germany* to distinguish the percentage of energy in each country coming from nuclear power. This information is most efficiently and clearly presented in two clauses joined by the conjunction *whereas*, which signifies a difference between the situations in the two countries. Each clause must identify what the percentage refers to—that is, the portion of the respective country's energy that comes from nuclear power.

- A *While* is somewhat ambiguous, since it might indicate simultaneity rather than contrast; the referent of *it* is ambiguous, raising questions about just what two things are being compared.
- B This sentence compares 75 percent to Germany; it is not clear what 33 percent refers to.
- C Correct. The two clauses joined by *whereas* indicate clearly that the comparison is between the different percentages of energy coming from nuclear power.
- D The use of the definite article *the* makes it seem as though the energy being referred to in this part of the sentence is that of France.
- E This construction is wordy and unclear; the referent of *it* is ambiguous.

The correct answer is C.

### 补充说明:

that, one, it 的区别--aeoluseros:

I. it / one / that 三者均可用作代词, 指代前面提到的名词。一般说来, it 指代同名同物; one 与 that 则指代同名异物。

I have lost my umbrella; I'm looking for it. (该句中 it 就是指前面的 my umbrella)

I have lost my umbrella; I think I must buy one. (one 在该句中表泛指, 因为 my umbrella 已经丢了)

The umbrella you bought is cheaper than that I bought. (替代词 that 在该句中特指 “the umbrella I bought”, 以区别 “the umbrella you bought”)

II. one 与 that 虽可用来指代同名异物, 但 one 为泛指, 相当于 a / an + 名词; that 为特指, 相当于 the + 名词。所以 one 所指代的名词的修饰语一般为 a / an / some / any; that 所指代的名词的修饰语往往是 the / this / that。

A chair made of steel is stronger than one made of wood. (该句中 one 可以换成 a chair)

The water in the cup is hotter than that in the pot. (该句中 that 可以换成 the water)

III. one 只能代替可数名词单数, 代替可数名词复数时用 ones; that 既可以代替不可数名词也可以代替可数名词单数, 代替可数名词复数时用 those。

I like this pen more than that one. (one 代替可数名词单数 pen)

There were a few young people and some older ones in the house. (ones 代替可数名词复数 people)

Mary's handwriting is far better than that of Peter. (that 代替不可数名词 handwriting)

These pictures are more beautiful than those. (those 代替可数名词复数 pictures)

IV. one 既可代替事物, 也可代替人, that 只能代替事物而不能代替人。有时可以用 the one 或 the ones 代替 that 或 those。

The one / That on the table is mine. (该句中 The one 代替事物, 并且也可以用 That)

He is the teacher, the one who is loved by the students. (该句中 the one 代替人, 不能用 that)

He advised the farmers to choose the best seed-heads, the ones / those that had the best color. (该句中 the ones 代替事物, 并且也可以用 those)

V. one 一般有前置修饰语, 有时也可有后置修饰语或不用修饰语。而 that 不能有前置修饰语, 但可有后置修饰语。

Cook was a strict but good captain, one who took good care of his sailors.

The water in the well is cleaner than that in the river.

VI. it 可以替代句中的不定式或从句等, 充当形式主语或形式宾语。one 与 that 均无此用法。

It is known to everybody that the moon travels around the earth once every month.

I found it hard to get on with her.

VII. it 与 that 均可以替代上文全句的内容或部分内容, 而 one / ones 则不可以 (本条为日常语法中常用, 而 GMAT 中 it 与 that 无法指代上文全句, )。

He has saved my life; I'll never forget it. (it 代替第一分句)

Tom is painting his house. I am told he does it every four years. (it 代替前面分句的部分内容 painting his house)

Let's say we meet here at three o'clock. That ought to give you

## 242. (GWD-1-Q38)

Retail sales rose 8/10 of 1 percent in August, intensifying expectations that personal spending in the July-September quarter more than doubled that of the 1.4 percent growth rate in personal spending for the previous quarter.

- A. that personal spending in the July-September quarter more than doubled that of
- B. that personal spending in the July-September quarter would more than double
- C. of personal spending in the July-September quarter, that it more than doubled
- D. of personal spending in the July-September quarter more than doubling that of
- E. of personal spending in the July-September quarter, that it would more than double that of

题目释义: ..., intensifying expectation that PS in J-S quarter would more than double the 1.4 percent growth rate in PS for the previous quarter.

### 考点:

动词形式 (Verb form) ; 逻辑含义 (Logical predication)

1. expectations表达将来预测的含义, 用同位语从句更能体现时态的精准, 而且如果用了of从属结构显得冗长累赘, 句意表达不清。
2. more than double the 1.4 percent growth rate, 其中double是动词, more than是副词。
3. 对于more than doubled或is more than doubled的区分技巧: 把more than脱去不看, doubled是一般过去时, 而is doubled是被动语态

### 选项分析:

- A. that跟在expectations后面表示具体内容; expectations的内容没有实现, 不能用过去时; that没有指代。
- B. correct; Would在这里表示expectation的内容没有实现。
- C. 整个句式awkward, that为同位语从句引导词与of平行共同修饰expectations, 其实没有必要先说一遍topic再接着详述, 像B一样直接详述即可; doubled时态错误
- D. Of短语无法明确表明expectations的核心内容, 应该用同位语从句
- E. 句式awkward错误同C

### OG12-16 的解释:

Verb form; Logical predication

The sentence explains the expectations that resulted from a past retail sales trend. Since expectations look to the future but are not yet realized, the relative clause explaining these expectations should be conditional, employing the auxiliary verb *would*.

- A The simple past-tense verb form does not express the forward-looking sense of *expectations*.
- B Correct. By using the verb *would double*, this concise sentence indicates that the expectation has not yet been realized.
- C This construction is awkward, announcing the topic (*personal spending*) and then elaborating in a relative clause that restates this topic as *it*.
- D Although this option is not technically wrong, it is less clear and graceful than B.
- E Like option C, this sentence is awkward and unnecessarily wordy, announcing the topic and then using an additional clause to elaborate on it.

### 补充说明:

限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句--from海词

一, 限制性定语从句:

限制性定语从句对先行词起限制、修饰的作用, 关系代词有that, which, whom, who, whose以及关系副词when, where等, 没有明显的逗号把从句与主语分开, 表达的意思为被修饰词的一个定语。

例句:

Do you know the professor who is speaking at the meeting?

Where is the book which I bought this morning?

二, 非限制性定语从句:

作用相当于一种插入语或者对先行词的一种解释, 和先行词之间只有比较松散的关系, 文字中常常用逗号



将其与主句分开，用法其实与限制性定语从句极为相似，只是不能用that做修饰词。

例句：

This letter is from his parents, who are working in Tibet.

English is an important subject, which every students should study well.

The building, in front of which sat a boy, was a school.

## 243. (GWD-10-Q8)

Sulfur dioxide, a major contributor to acid rain, is an especially serious pollutant because it diminishes the respiratory system's ability to deal with all other pollutants.

- A. an especially serious pollutant because it diminishes the respiratory system's ability to deal
- B. an especially serious pollutant because of diminishing the respiratory system's capability of dealing
- C. an especially serious pollutant because it diminishes the capability of the respiratory system in dealing
- D. a specially serious pollutant because it diminishes the capability of the respiratory system to deal
- E. a specially serious pollutant because of diminishing the respiratory system's ability to deal

题目释义：Sulfur dioxide, ... , is...pollutant because it diminishes...ability to deal with...

### 考点：

习惯用语 (idiom) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

- 1. capability to do; GMAT认为capability of X-ing/in X-ing是wordy/awkward的。
- 2. ability: sb's ability to do sth或ability of sb/sth to do sth
- 3. capability to do不如ability to do简洁，但不可就此判错。

### 选项分析：

- A. Correct; ability to deal使用简洁; respiratory system's ability可以
- B. because of后结构复杂，awkward (because of后面如果跟动名词则一般是累赘的); capability of dealing不够简洁
- C. in dealing有做状语修饰整个从句的歧义，含义变为Sulfur dioxide在dealing with的时候减少了respiratory system的能力，而不是原义想要表达的，减少了respiratory system的deal with...的能力; capability如果后面要加in doing,最好紧跟capability，避免歧义
- D. especially强调严重性，specially强调特殊性，根据原义，选especially; of the respiratory system的插入，导致to deal可以修饰动词diminish，歧义
- E. especially强调严重性，specially强调特殊性，根据原义，选especially; because of错误同B。

### 补充说明：

- 1. specially 和 especially 区别 (记住这种小点，有益于快速解题)

Especially is most often used to emphasize something, or to say that something is more worth mentioning or more important than the other things you are talking about: It can be especially difficult for drivers to see cyclists at night. | The town is especially crowded in the summer (=much more than in winter). I hate interruptions, especially when I'm trying to work (=I do not mind as much at other times).



Specially is usually used when you do something that is different from what you usually do for a particular purpose. It is often used with the passive form of a verb: a specially made/designed/adapted etc car | I bought it specially for you

即:

especially 强调严重性, specially 强调特殊性!

especially 是表示程度

specially 表示特殊

2. capability和ability区别: ability to do和capability to do区别, 在强调某人/物天生具有某种能力用ability好, capability可能强调的是能不能做某事(跟天生没什么关系), 如government's capability或transport system's capability等。

1) If we don't take great care, SARS could become established in the poorest nations - places like Burundi, Nigera or Malawi - which have neither the high-tech capability of Toronto nor the totalitarian muscle of China to contain it

2) capability of sth. to be done表一种属性, 非一种主动的能力。

3) capability (of sth.) to do/of doing.

3. sth's ability可用在无生命主体:

Additional evidence was provided by negative findings: drugs called adrenergic antagonists, which block peripheral adrenaline receptors, disrupted adrenaline's ability to regulate memory but did not affect memory enhancements produced by glucose that was not stimulated by adrenaline.

## 244. (GWD-10-Q39)

In Japan, a government advisory committee called for the breakup of Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company, the largest telephone company in the world, so it would be two local phone companies and one long-distance provider.

- A. In Japan, a government advisory committee called for the breakup of Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company, the largest telephone company in the world, so it would be
- B. The breakup of the world's largest telephone company, Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company, was called for by a government advisory committee in Japan, so it would be
- C. A government advisory committee in Japan called for the breakup of Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company, the world's largest telephone company, into
- D. The breakup of Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company, the world's largest telephone company, was called for by a government advisory committee in Japan, so it would be
- E. Called for by a government advisory committee, the breakup of Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company in Japan, the world's largest telephone company, was to be into

题目释义: A government advisory committee called for sth into...

### 考点:

逻辑意思(logical predication) 句子结构(grammatical construction)

1. 主从句的主语对位指代, 即当从句的主语是代词时, 往往指代主句的主语—但也不绝对。
2. Call for: 叫(某人)来; 要求, 需要
3. 同位语修饰名词词组A of BG是不一定是修饰其中的核心词, 可能就近修饰。

选项分析:

- A. so it would be里的it指代歧义，本身应指代the largest telephone company，但是这里指代了主语a government advisory committee，错误
- B. it指代了breakup错误； the world's largest telephone company是description，Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company才是主体，应该用前者作为插入语修饰；没有特殊原因，没有必要用被动语态，反而不简洁。
- C. correct； “,the world's largest telephone company,” 做插入语。
- D. it的指代错误同B；没有特殊原因，没有必要用被动语态，反而不简洁。
- E. “,the world's largest telephone company,” 同位语被in Japan隔开没有紧接其修饰的对象，错误；was to be into表达awkward。

## 245. (GWD-18-Q11)

In no other historical sighting did Halley's comet cause such a worldwide sensation as did its return in 1910–1911.

- A. did its return in 1910–1911
- B. had its 1910–1911 return
- C. in its return of 1910–1911
- D. its return of 1910–1911 did
- E. its return in 1910–1911

题目释义：In no other sighting did HC cause such a sensation as in its return of 1910-1911

考点:

比较结构 (comparison)

- 1. an event of + 年份，正确表达。
- 2. 状语的比较。从no other即看出比较的是状语。

选项分析:

- A. 比较双方不对等：HC和its return
- B. 比较双方不对等：HC和its return；助动词had错误，要用一般过去时
- C. Correct；原句可还原为Halley 's comet did cause(caused) such a worldwide sensation in no other historical sighting as in its return of 1910-1911.相当于状语的对比：in no other historical sighting和in its return of 1910-1911的对比，比较结构中的内容是：“such a worldwide sensation in no other historical sighting as in its return of 1910-1911”，后面部分省略的是a world wide sensation；its return of 1910-1911它在1910-1911的回归，介词用of很常见，当然用in也可以
- D. 比较双方不对等：HC和its return
- E. 比较对象不对等：介词短语In no other historical sighting和名词短语its return in 1910–1911对比

补充说明:

- 1. 本题倒装+比较

Halley's comet did not cause such a worldwide sensation in other historical sighting as (a world wide sensation) in its return of 1910 – 1911

## 2. OG12-138解释:

Parallelism; Verb form; Logical predication

The single subject of this sentence is *Halley's Comet*, and its single verb phrase is *did cause*. The comparison presented by the sentence is between adverbial phrases describing times when the comet was seen. Grammatically, the items being compared are parallel prepositional phrases beginning with the preposition *in*: *in no other sighting* and *in its return in 1910–1911*. This is the clearest, most economical way of presenting the information. The options that introduce a second verb (*did* or *had*) violate the parallelism and introduce a comparison between the comet itself (subject of the verb *did cause*) and the comet's return (subject of the verb *did* or *had*).

A This sentence implies a comparison between the comet and its return.

B This sentence implies a comparison between the comet and its return; *had* is the wrong auxiliary verb form because it must be followed by *caused* instead of *cause*.

C Correct. The parallel prepositional phrases in this sentence correctly compare times when the comet was sighted.

D This sentence implies a comparison between the comet and its return.

E This sentence violates parallelism, implying a comparison between a prepositional phrase and a noun phrase.

The correct answer is C.

## 246. (GWD-9-Q27)

Scientists have identified an asteroid, 2000 BF19, that is about half a mile wide and, if it strikes Earth, it can do tremendous damage to part of the planet but probably not cause planetwide destruction.

A. and, if it strikes Earth, it can do tremendous damage to part of the planet but

B. and, if it would strike Earth, part of the planet could experience a tremendous amount of damage but it would

C. and that, if it were to strike Earth, could do tremendous damage to part of the planet but would

D. and that, if Earth is struck by it, can do part of the planet tremendous damage, but it would

E. and that, if it strikes Earth, it could experience a tremendous amount of damage but

题目释义: Scientists have identified an asteroid that is... and that, if it were to do sth., could do...but would not cause...

考点:

平行结构 (parallelism) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

## 1. 虚拟语气的几种形式再重复:

If + Present, future 'if X happens, Y will happen'

If + past, would/could + verb

'if X happened, Y would happen'

'if X were to happen, Y would happen'

If + past perfect, would/could + have + verb

## 2. 指代问题。

选项分析:

- A. strikes用了现在时，没有体现出假设的语气，同样can也不对，it并没有发生，所以只能could，But后面同样需要有情态动词，could/would。
- B. if和but后面的it都指代part of the planet，两个都指代错误；if条件句里的虚拟语气谓语形式错误，表示可能与将来事件相反，应该用“动词过去式(be用were)，should + 动词原形(should在此无实际含义)或者were to + 动词原形”。
- C. correct；定语从句的平行。
- D. do part of the planet tremendous damage表达awkward,易有歧义，是理解成do part of (the planet tremendous damage)；it多余，应和前面can平行。It应指代asteroid，但结构上却和前面一致，指代了earth，错。
- E. 没有体现出假设的语气，strikes用了现在时；but后没有情态动词，表达不出假设的语气；两个主从对位的it从逻辑上说指代了不同的东西，错误；有了前面that关系代词做主语，it could中的it多余，定语从句已经有主语that。

## 247. (GWD-3-Q39)

Minivans carry as many as seven passengers and, compared with most sport utility vehicles, cost less, get better gas mileage, allow passengers to get in and out more easily, and have a smoother ride.

- A. Minivans carry as many as seven passengers and, compared with most sport utility vehicles, cost less,
- B. Minivans, which carry as many as seven passengers, compared with most sport utility vehicles, they cost less,
- C. Minivans carry as many as seven passengers, in comparison with most sport utility vehicles, and have a lower cost, they
- D. Minivans, carrying as many as seven passengers, compared with most sport utility vehicles, cost less,
- E. Minivans, which carry as many as seven passengers, compared with most sport utility vehicles the cost is lower, and they

题目释义：Minivans carry...and, [compared with..., cost..., get..., allow..., and have....]  
...V1 and, 插入状语，V2...

考点:

平行结构 (parallelism) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

- 按照逻辑意思可以发现，动作carry和后面几个动作并不平行。这个句子的逻辑关系是，“Carry”这个动作没有参加“compared”，而是自成一个层次，而另外四个动词是“compared”的项目，它们另外组成了一连串的动词平行结构。故而A中的第一个“and”是必要的。
- compared with用法见prep1-241

选项分析:

- A. Correct; carry和后面的四个动作是大平行，cost, get, allow and have是小平行；and后面省略了主语。
- B. Minivan和they双重主语，错误；compared with修饰对象成了前面的定语从句。
- C. Run-on sentence，两套主谓宾结构；打破了原来逻辑含义合理的各动词平行结构。
- D. 曾经的争议选项；compared with结构有修饰前面的carrying as many as seven passengers的歧义，dangling modifier。

- E. 前半句分句有两个主语Minivans和the cost; Minivans, which carry as many as seven passengers成了悬垂结构; 打破了原先逻辑含义合理的各动词平行结构。

## 248. (GWD-9-Q32)

The United States minted about 857 million silver-colored "Susan B. Anthony" dollars between 1979 and 1981, but the coin proved unpopular because it looked and felt too much like a quarter.

- A. The United States minted about 857 million silver-colored "Susan B. Anthony" dollars between 1979 and 1981, but the coin
- B. About 857 million silver-colored "Susan B. Anthony" dollars were minted as coins in the United States between 1979 and 1981 but
- C. About 857 million silver-colored "Susan B. Anthony" dollars that were minted between 1979 and 1981 in the United States
- D. About 857 million silver-colored "Susan B. Anthony" dollars that the United States minted between 1979 and 1981
- E. Between 1979 and 1981 the United States minted about 857 million silver-colored "Susan B. Anthony" dollars, which

题目释义: The US minted about # dollars between 1979 and 1981, but the coin proved unpopular because it ...

### 考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

1. 未划线部分的代词是关注重点之一。

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; 这里的between 1979 and 1981做时间状语修饰minted。
- B. 未划线部分的it无指代, 从该it看出but后面要加上一个单数名词做主语与状语从句的it对位; were minted 被动语态不如主动语态简洁。
- C. 未划线部分的it无指代; were minted被动语态不如主动语态简洁。
- D. 未划线部分的it无指代; dollars后面的that多余, 关系代词在定从中做宾语可以省略。
- E. which指代dollars, 使得it也指代dollars, 单复数不一致错误。

## 249. (GWD-10-Q36) (GWD-11-19)

In Hungary, as in much of Eastern Europe, an overwhelming proportion of women work, many of which are in middle management and light industry.

- A. as in much of Eastern Europe, an overwhelming proportion of women work, many of which are in
- B. as with much of Eastern Europe, an overwhelming proportion of women works, many in
- C. as in much of Eastern Europe, an overwhelming proportion of women work, many of them in
- D. like much of Eastern Europe, an overwhelming proportion of women works, and many are
- E. like much of Eastern Europe, an overwhelming proportion of women work, many are in

题目释义：In H, as in much of EE, an overwhelming proportion of women work, many of them in middle management and light industry.

考点：

比较结构（comparison） 句子结构（grammatical construction）

1. as比较结构参考prep1-212
2. 使用like比较结构要确定两点：
  - 1) like后面接的是名词，不能接介词短语或者句子等等。
  - 2) like后面接的名词是在与紧随句子/分句的主语做比较。
3. "an overwhelming proportion of ..."是一个数量表达，逻辑上本身虽然是单数，但是语法上却视为复数，因为它所代表的women是复数的，还有很多类似的表达比如percentages, proportions, fractions等。

选项分析：

- A. Which和that都只能指代物，不能指代人。
- B. as with比较不对称，错误；works单复数错误，要用work。
- C. correct；them指代women，同位语后置；这里的as的比较对象平行。
- D. an overwhelming proportion of women和much of Eastern Europe不能比较；works单复数形式错误；。
- E. an overwhelming proportion of women和much of Eastern Europe不能比较；逗号不能连接两个句子，中间需要有连词，run-on sentence。

## 250. (GWD30-Q29)

Researchers agreed that the study of new treatments for heart attack patients was extremely important but more research was needed to determine that balloon angioplasty preceded with ultrasound was or was not any better for heart attack patients than the balloon procedure by itself.

- A. more research was needed to determine that balloon angioplasty preceded with ultrasound was or was not any better for heart attack patients than
- B. more research was needed for determining whether or not balloon angioplasty preceded by ultrasound is any better for heart attack patients than is
- C. that more research was needed to determine whether balloon angioplasty preceded by ultrasound is any better for heart attack patients than
- D. that more research was needed to determine that balloon angioplasty preceded with ultrasound was any better for heart attack patients than
- E. that more research was needed for determining that balloon angioplasty preceded by ultrasound is or is not any better for heart attack patients than is

题目释义：Researchers agreed that ... was ... but that ... more research was needed to determine whether A is better for C than B.

考点：

平行结构（parallelism） 逻辑意思（logical predication） 习惯用语（idiom）

1. agree that...but that...，宾语从句的平行that不能省，使句子更加清晰。



2. need做实意动词的用法是：  
need (sb.) to do sth;  
need sth for sth;  
sth needs n./doing/to be done(接名词性成分);
3. whether or not的使用：  
在引导宾从的时候只能用whether，而不能加or not，否则累赘；  
在引导状从的时候必须加上or not，即whether or not。
4. precede的惯用搭配是：A preceded by B（意思为B先进，然后A进）。

### 选项分析：

- A. but后没有that，错误；“that...was or was not” wordy不如直接用whether；preceded with错误。
- B. but后应补出that平行；whether or not累赘，直接用whether即可；仅仅是主语的比较，be动词is应该省略，省略is不会产生heart attack patients与the balloon procedure比较的歧义，如果两者要比较则必须后者也要补出介词for；need for doing不如need to do明确动作趋向。
- C. correct；“同意A确实很不错了，但是也同意还是需要做B的”，逻辑没有问题；is用现在时没有问题，determine的内容如果现在还未最终决定下来时，is用现在时成立
- D. determine that...“表示”确定/判定“已有结果，要用determine whether来表示结果未确定；preceded with错误；determine的内容发生在主句agree之后，所以应该用agree向后推移的时态：一般现在时is，而不能用一般过去时was。
- E. need用法错误。That...is or is not是wordy。Than后面的is可以省略。

### 补充说明：

1. 一般的介词只能接疑问词引导的宾语从句，不能接that引导的宾语从句。但是but that=except that；in that=because(还是有不同) 这三个介词+that从句属于例外，约定俗成的用法。-----from 白勇语法
2. whether表示列举时候的用法：whether A, B, or C.

## 251. (GWD-1-Q29)

Faulty voting equipment, confusing ballots, voter error, and problems at polling places have been cited by a new study of the 2000 United States presidential election, which estimated that they did not count 4 million to 6 million of the 100 million votes cast.

- A. Faulty voting equipment, confusing ballots, voter error, and problems at polling places have been cited by a new study of the 2000 United States presidential election, which estimated that they did not count 4 million to 6 million of the 100 million votes cast.
- B. Citing faulty voting equipment, confusing ballots, voter error, and problems at polling places, a new study of the 2000 United States presidential election has estimated that 4 million to 6 million of the 100 million votes cast were not counted.
- C. Citing faulty voting equipment, confusing ballots, voter error, and problems at polling places, 4 million to 6 million of the 100 million votes cast were not counted in the 2000 United States presidential election, a new study estimates.
- D. A new study has cited faulty voting equipment, confusing ballots, voter error, and problems at polling places in estimating that 4 million to 6 million of the 100 million votes that were cast had not been counted in the 2000 United States presidential election.

- E. A new study of the 2000 United States presidential election, citing faulty voting equipment, confusing ballots, voter error, and problems at polling places, has estimated 4 million to 6 million votes had not been counted of the 100 million votes cast.

题目释义: Citing A, B, C, and D, a study of sth. has estimated that...

### 考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

1. --ing分词作句首, 逻辑主语等于主语。
2. 所谓的“原句”, “合理重心”, 都是根据逻辑意思判断的。特别对于长句子, 能够在读题时迅速判断合理重心, 是加快做题速度、提高正确率的第一利刃。
3. estimate的固定用法:  
estimate (that) (不需加原V)  
estimate + N + to be N(adj) (prep 2-51)  
estimate + N + at + 价格等数量词 (估价) (除此概念以外优先用estimated to be表达)  
如: 40 to 44 million years是时间概念, 要用estimated to be 40 to 44 million years old.

### 选项分析:

- A. 句子合理重心应该是结论为主句, 达成结论的动作过程为辅, 所以主从颠倒; 定语从句中的they无所指。
- B. Correct; Citing在句首, a new study是逻辑主语也是主语; 句子重心合理。
- C. citing逻辑主语错误, 同时致使本应该是核心成分的a new study estimates成了插入语; estimates用现在完成时或者一般过去时问题都不大。
- D. 句子重心错误; votes that were cast累赘, 因为时态一致, 可以省略that were; had been过去完成时错误, 没有时间对比说明count这个动作发生在过去的过去(即便count是个瞬间动词, 但是在否定句中瞬间动词也可以和表示一段时间的状语、连词连用, 而是用完成时态)。
- E. had not been时态错误; 主谓相隔太远不好; 复杂的句式estimate后面补出that更好。

## 252. (GWD7-Q1)

Although producer prices rose at an unexpectedly steep rate in September, analysts said that the increase resulted mostly from temporary factors and not necessarily foreshadowing that there would be a resurgence of inflation.

- A. factors and not necessarily foreshadowing that there would be
- B. factors and not necessarily that it foreshadowed
- C. factors and did not necessarily foreshadow
- D. factors, while not necessarily a foreshadowing of
- E. factors, while it did not necessarily foreshadow that there would be

题目释义: Although...rose..., analyst said that the increase resulted mostly from temporary factors and did not necessarily foreshadow sth.

### 考点:

平行 (parallelism) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

1. 平行中后面部分省略的东西必须前面有重复的，使省略点能够补出。
2. 状语从句省略的形式：
  - 1) 正确形式：表示时间/条件/转折/让步的连词(when/while/if/unless/although/even though/even if) + 形容词短语/-ing短语/-ed短语  
\*: (逻辑主语等于句子主语) (所以when a child/ when children是错的； if + n.也是错的)
  - 2) 错误形式：表示时间/条件/转折的连词 + 介词短语/名词短语 (although just inside the orbit of Jupiter是错的)(OG10-69)
  - 3) 特殊情况:once可以加介词短语/名词短语; whatever可以加名词短语

### 选项分析:

- A. and前后resulted和forshadowing不平行；foreshadow that there would be不如直接forshadow + noun 简洁。
- B. 平行错误同A；平行的后半部分没有谓语，necessarily没有修饰对象。
- C. Correct.
- D. 前后句没有转折对比或者让步的含义，不该用while连接；while引导的状语从句省略错误；a foreshadowing of累赘。
- E. there would be错误同A；while的错误同D。

## 253. (GWD 4-Q13)

A leading figure in the Scottish enlightenment, Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism what Marx's Das Kapital is to socialism.

- A. Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism what
- B. Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism like
- C. Adam Smith's two major books are to democratic capitalism just as
- D. Adam Smith wrote two major books that are to democratic capitalism similar to
- E. Adam Smith wrote two major books that are to democratic capitalism what

题目释义：A figure, Adam wrote two books that are to DC what Marx's DK is to socialism.

### 考点:

句子结构 (grammatical construction) 习惯用语 (idiom) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

1. a leading figure同位语修饰对象应该是人。
2. A is to B what C is to D, 其中what近似just as,意为“恰像, 犹如, 好比”用作连词,引导比较状语从句。

### 选项分析:

- A. 同位语修饰对象错误，修饰成了书。
- B. 同位语修饰对象错误；like后面不能加主谓结构。
- C. 同位语修饰对象错误。
- D. similar to是介词短语后面只接名词，不能接句子。
- E. correct；定语从句中的结构即A is to B what C is to D。

补充说明:

Due to, similar to, differing from等有形容词性质的介词, GMAT中一般不能出现在句首。

## 254. (GWD-29-Q36)

Section 301 of the 1988 Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act enables the United States Trade Representative to single out a country as an unfair trader, begin trade negotiations with that country, and, if the negotiations do not conclude by the United States government's being satisfied, to impose sanctions.

- A. by the United States government's being satisfied, to impose
- B. by the United States government's satisfaction, impose
- C. with the United States government's being satisfied, imposing
- D. to the United States government's satisfaction, impose
- E. to the United States government's satisfaction, imposing

题目释义: ... enables the USTR to single out..., begin...and, if..., impose...

考点:

平行结构 (parallelism) 习惯用语 (idiom)

- 1. do (sth.) to one's satisfaction固定搭配, 做某事以使人达到满意的程度。
  - 2. conclude的固定搭配:
    - (1) conclude by doing sth./ conclude with sth.: 以……结束, 借此后面接的是结束的方式、行为
      - *She concluded by saying she was proud to be from Salford.*
      - *Each chapter concludes with a short summary.*
    - (2) conclude to : 达成……而结束
- \*:conclude可以做及物动词也可以做不及物动词

选项分析:

- A. by one's being satisfied累赘, 固定习语搭配错误; Impose前不需要to, 平行的是begin和impose。
- B. by one's satisfaction错误。
- C. with one's being satisfied错误; Imposing与begin不平行
- D. correct; 本题的conclude是不及物动词, 后面跟的不是某个具体的方式, 而是某个**结果、效果**, 不应该用conclude by/with, 所以A,B,C就直接排除了。
- E. imposing平行错误。

## 255. (GWD-12-Q19)

Heavy commitment by an executive to a course of action, especially if it has worked well in the past, makes it likely to miss signs of incipient trouble or misinterpret them when they do appear.

- A. Heavy commitment by an executive to a course of action, especially if it has worked well in the past, makes it likely to miss signs of incipient trouble or misinterpret them when they do appear.
- B. An executive who is heavily committed to a course of action, especially one that worked well in the past, makes missing signs of incipient trouble or misinterpreting ones likely when they do appear.

- C. An executive who is heavily committed to a course of action is likely to miss or misinterpret signs of incipient trouble when they do appear, especially if it has worked well in the past.
- D. Executives' being heavily committed to a course of action, especially if it has worked well in the past, makes them likely to miss signs of incipient trouble or misinterpreting them when they do appear.
- E. Being heavily committed to a course of action, especially one that has worked well in the past, is likely to make an executive miss signs of incipient trouble or misinterpret them when they do appear.

题目释义: Being heavily committed to a course of action, especially one that..., is likely to make...when they...

过于专注某个做法, 特别是某个过去一直挺有效的做法, 很可能会使主管发现不了初期的故障信号或者当信号出现时错误地理解他们。

### 考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 句子结构 (grammatical construction)

1. one是核心词指代, 且为泛指。
2. 句式结构“行为一”导致“行为二”也是一种大平行。
3. a course of action 行动/运行/执行过程

### 选项分析:

- A. commitment不如committed好, 因为后面miss signs or misinterpret是动作, 前面也是动作更加对称(大平行); miss和misinterpret的行为者不清楚, 至少要改为"makes it likely that the executive will miss..."才行; 至于后一个it指代后面的不定式没有问题, it充当形式宾语, 而实际宾语就是不定式to miss and too misinterpret。
- B. 句子表达的含义是“经理使得missing signs和misinterpreting ones more likely”, 是谁missing signs和misinterpreting不清楚; 第一个one就近指代a course of action没问题(相当于同位语, 后接同位语从句); 第二个ones指代的是signs, 而不是signs of incipient trouble(one是核心词指代, 且为泛指); when they do appear的修饰对象错误, 应该直接修饰misinterpreting, 现在却成了整个句子的时间状语修饰了makes, 且they无所指。
- C. when they do appear修饰了平行的动词miss or misinterpret不合逻辑, 明明miss了还do appear矛盾; especially if it has worked well in the past远离它修饰的course of action, 使得it离所指的a course of action太远不好。
- D. 而且Executives' being heavily committed to a course of action累赘; to miss和misinterpreting不平行; 第一个them很明显是指代executives不会指代signs没有问题, 因为一个作为misinterpret的主语(executives/第一个them), 一个作为misinterpret的宾语(signs/第二个them); 第三个they逻辑上就近与前一个them所指一致, 所以没什么问题。
- E. Correct; Being强调是一个动作, gerund phrase做主语; 由于a course of action是泛指, 后面应该用One指代而不是it更为合适; has worked well in the past, in the past完成时和过去时都可以用, 因为Past可以是过去的一瞬间。

### 补充说明:

1. 关于秒杀: 其实本题可以秒杀, 越是长句子越容易秒杀----所谓秒杀就是从某一个判题点出发瞬间排除其他所有的选项, 长句子往往可以通过理解了句子的各部分含义后, 重组出自认为句子重心、含义, 最合理的句子, 通过4-1 split得出唯一的正确选项; 如本题, 只要看出最合理的意思是“非常遵从过去的行为”使得“经理犯错”(行为一导致行为二), 就可以迅速建立答案倾向为E, 时间不够马上选

## 256. (T-4-Q1 TS-7-41)

Scientists have dated sharp-edged flakes of stone found in the fine-grained sediments of a dry riverbed in the Afar region of Ethiopia to between 2.52 and 2.60 million years ago, pushing back by more than 150,000 years the earliest date when it is known that humans made stone tools.

- A. when it is known that humans made
- B. at which it is known that humans had made
- C. at which humans are known to have made
- D. that humans are known to be making
- E. of humans who were known to make

题目释义: Scientists have dated A found in B to # years ago, pushing back by # years the earliest date at which humans are known to have made.

考点:

1. be known to have done sth的问题: 当be known 和 do sth的發生的时间一致时, 用be known to do sth; 而do sth发生在be known之前时, 则要用be known to have done sth.
  1. 大全748: ...few people are known to have recovered from the disease once the clinical symptoms have appeared.
  2. 大全849: ...few people have been known to taste it for the first time without requesting more.
  3. og49: .....satellites now known to orbit the distant planet.\*: 事实上在看这两个结构时, 可以把be known to这个类似助动词的成分去掉; 由于跟在be known to后面的动词要用原型, 所以去掉be known to以后就可以单纯地比较have done和do, have done所表示的發生时间比do所表示的發生时间要早, 如果事件发生在过去就用have done, 发生在现在就用do。同时如果be known to do/have done sth后面接状语那么修饰的是do/have done, 而不是known.
2. date to/at区分
  - 1) date....to 可追溯sth到...几年, 强调發生的时间点, 后面是ago
  - 2) date....at 年代判定、鉴别/年份有...年之久, 强调發生到现在经过的时间有多长, 后面是old\*: 具体见后面补充说明。

选项分析:

- A. 关系代词用when和at which都是可以的; 此选项表达的意思是A fact is known at the earliest date, 逻辑含义错误。
- B. at which it is known表达的意思是A fact is known at the earliest date, 逻辑含义错误; 主语从句的时态用过去完成时不够合理。
- C. Correct; the earliest date at which humans are known to have made stone tools.=humans are known to have made stone tools at that date (the earliest date) – AlienX.
- D. 定语从句关系代词错误; are known to be doing sth.用法unidiomatic, 要表示正在进行也只要are known to do即可。
- E. date of + noun用法错误, 其后面那个名词都是在某个时间出现的事件, 如: date of birth、date of departure、date of marriage, 而date of humans不是什么事件, 所以不能说 date of; 应该用are known to have made, 因为known是发生在现在, make发生在known之前。



## 补充说明:

### 1. A 中用关系代词 when 的正误:

From Ron(Manhattan):

I'm pretty sure that either "when" or "at which" would be acceptable. (clearly, the latter is acceptable -- it appears in the correct answer, after all -- but i wouldn't object to the former.)

If you want to get really subtle, i think (not 100% sure) that "the date when" is used for actual, precise calendar dates, whereas "the date at which" is used for the usually more vague dates of historical events, such as the one in this problem. But i'm sure the test is not going to depend on this sort of nuanced difference.

### 2. 注意 date to 后面是 ago, 而 date at 后面是 old。

date....to 可追溯 sth 到...几年, 强调发生的时间点	
P1-129	The <b>teeth and jawbones</b> found in Tanzania by Dr. Mary Leakey and <b>dating to 3.75 million years ago</b> are the oldest reliably dated human fossils.
G21-34	Scientists <b>have dated</b> sharp-edged flakes of stone found in the fine-grained sediments of adry riverbed in the Afar region of Ethiopia <b>to between 2.52 and 2.60 million years ago</b> , pushing back by more than 150,000 years the earliest date at which humans are known to have made stone tools.
date....at 年代判定、鉴别/ 年份有...年之久, 强调发生到现在经过的时间有多长	
G31-28	<b>Rock samples</b> taken from the remains of an asteroid about twice the size of the 6-nuke-wide asteroid that eradicated the dinosaurs <b>have been dated at</b> 3.47 billion years old and thus are evidence of the earliest known asteroid impact on Earth.
G13-28	<b>Fossils of the arm of a sloth</b> , found in Puerto Rico in 1991, <b>have been dated at</b> 34 million years old, making the sloth the earliest known mammal on the Greater Antilles islands.

### 3. 另外 date 在 OG 之可见用法如下:

date back: have its origin

date from: to reckon from some point in time

紫 3	Native American burial sites <b>dating back 5,000 years</b> indicate that the residents of Maine at that time were part of a widespread culture of Algonquian-speaking people . 一个 5000 年前的北美遗址指出在那时期的缅因州居民是广大的 Algonquian-speaking people 文化的一部份
紫 90	The concept of the grand jury <b>dates from the twelfth century</b> , when Henry II of England <b>ordered</b> panels of common citizens <b>to</b> prepare lists of suspected criminals in their communities.
	Many of the earliest known images of Hindu deities in India <b>date from</b> the time of the Kushan empire and were fashioned either from the spotted sandstone of Mathura or from Gandharan grey schist.

另外附上prep中涉及到此知识点的两句:

Prep 1-232. (TTGWD4-Q1)

The Acoma and Hopi are probably the two oldest surviving Pueblo communities, both dating back at least a thousand years.

Prep 2-215 (GWD31-Q28)

Rock samples taken from the remains of an asteroid about twice the size of the 6-nuke-wide asteroid that eradicated the dinosaurs have been dated at 3.47 billion years old and thus are evidence of the earliest known asteroid impact on Earth.

## 257. (GWD6-Q30)

Though subject to the same wild-animal control efforts that killed off almost all the wolves in North America over the past century, the coyote's amazing ability of adapting to the presence of humans has enabled it to expand its range into Alaska and Central America.

- A. coyote's amazing ability of adapting to the presence of humans has enabled it to expand its
- B. coyote, because of its amazing ability of adapting to the presence of humans, have been able to expand their
- C. coyote, because of its amazing ability to adapt to the presence of humans, has been able to expand its
- D. amazing ability of the coyote to adapt to the presence of humans have enabled it to expand the
- E. amazing ability of the coyote to adapt to the presence of humans has enabled it to expand the

题目释义：Though subject to..., the coyote, because of sth., has been able to expand its range into...

考点：

句子结构（grammatical construction） 逻辑意思（logical predication） 主谓一致（agreement）

- 1. 固定搭配：ability to do sth.有能力做某事；ability of sth./sb. 某某某的能力。
- 2. Be subject to sth: If someone or something is subject to something, especially something bad, it is possible or likely that they will be affected by it. 其中subject是形容词。

选项分析：

- A. 逻辑主语错误，能subject to... 的应该是一个人或物，而不是一种能力；it和its逻辑上是指the coyote，但语法上却指代了the ability；ability of doing搭配错误。
- B. have和their与主语和指代对象coyote为单数不一致；ability of adapting--unidiomatic。
- C. correct。
- D. subject to的逻辑主语错误；have用了复数主谓不一致；the range用了定冠词，可是前面并没有提到过该range，因此定冠词使用错误
- E. 逻辑主语错误；the range错误同D

## 258. (GWD-9-Q2)

In an attempt to produce premium oysters, a firm in Scotland has developed a prototype of a submersible oyster farm, sitting below the surface of the ocean, and it provides ideal conditions for the mollusks' growth.

- A. farm, sitting below the surface of the ocean, and it provides
- B. farm, sitting below the surface of the ocean for providing
- C. farm that sits below the surface of the ocean and providing
- D. farm that sits below the surface of the ocean and provides
- E. farm that is sitting below the surface of the ocean and it provides

题目释义：In an attempt to do sth., a firm has developed a prototype of a farm that sits...and provides...

考点：

逻辑意思 (logical predication) 平行结构 (parallelism)

1. in an attempt to 需要考虑逻辑主语。
2. 定语从句谓语的平行，不需要补出that，相当于共享了句子成分，如在本句中共享了主语；不似宾语从句两个名词性从句的平行需要补出从句引导词，如that/whether等。

选项分析：

- A. it provides与前面整个分句并列，所以it也就指代了a firm，逻辑意思错误，应该指代submersible oyster farm；sitting引导的短语做状语修饰前面的分句，而不再是做限定性定语修饰farm，逻辑错误。
- B. sitting引导的短语错误同A；表动作的目的用不定时比用for doing好，所以用for providing不佳。
- C. and前后不平行。
- D. correct；sits和provides平行。
- E. 定语从句可以前后共享主语，不需要再补出it；用了现在进行时表示了一种潜在含义：以后这个farm可能会移动，逻辑意思荒诞。

---

*This page is intentionally left blank!*

---

## Practice Test #2 Sentence Correction (152-235)

### 152. (OG10-245) (OG11-95)

Unlike Schoenberg's twelve-tone system that dominated the music of the postwar period, Bartók founded no school and left behind only a handful of disciples.

- A. Schoenberg's twelve-tone system that dominated
- B. Schoenberg and his twelve-tone system which dominated
- C. Schoenberg, whose twelve-tone system dominated
- D. the twelve-tone system of Schoenberg that has dominated
- E. Schoenberg and the twelve-tone system, dominating

题目释义：Unlike Schoenberg, whose..., Bartók....

#### 考点：

比较 (comparison)

- 1. 比较对象要对等。
- 2. 夹心修饰。
- 3. 时态--现在完成时。

#### 选项分析：

- A. 比较对象是Bartók和Schoenberg's twelve-tone system，不对等。
- B. 比较对象是Bartók和Schoenberg and his twelve-tone system比较，不对等；关系代词which只能引导非限定性定语从句，且which指代了"Schoenberg and his twelve-tone system"错误。
- C. correct。比较对象是Bartók和Schoenberg's。
- D. 比较对象是Bartók和the twelve-tone system，不对等；现在完成时表示了system现今仍然在dominate music，逻辑错误。
- E. 比较错误同B，不对等；dominating是"squinting modifier"修饰对象不明，既可以向前修饰Schoenberg and the twelve-tone system，也可以向后修饰Bartók。

#### 补充说明：

1、CD上讨论帖：[http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-64467-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-64467-1-1.html)

2、OG11-95的解释：

Comparison + Modification

The original sentence makes the logical error of comparing Bartok to the 12-tone system. The lack of clarity results in the implication that the system might have founded a school or left behind disciples. The sentence must clearly indicate that it is the individuals, Bartok and Schoenberg, who are being compared. It must also make it plain that it was the system that dominated the music of the postwar period.

- A. Illogically compares Bartok to the 12-tone system, rather than to Schoenberg
- B. Incorrect use of and illogically compares Bartok to the system; incorrect pronoun use

- C. Correct. This sentence makes the logical comparison between the individuals, and the relative clause clarifies that it is the system that dominated the music of the postwar period.
- D. Illogically compares Bartok to the system, rather than to Schoenberg, perfect verb form has dominated distorts the meaning by indicating that the system continues to dominate music today
- E. Incorrect use of and illogically compares Bartok to the system as well as Schoenberg; introduces confusion about what dominating modifies

The correct answer is C.

### 3、OG10中解释(菜鸟手册第245题)

C, the best answer, is the only choice that makes a logical comparison: Unlike Schoenberg, ... Bartok. In A, B, and D, Bartok, a person, is compared either to Schoenberg's twelve-tone system or to Schoenberg and his twelve-tone system as a unit. Such comparisons are neither logically sound nor semantically parallel.

Consequently, A and D illogically suggest that Schoenberg's twelve-tone system founded a school and left behind many disciples.

Choice B suggests that Schoenberg and his twelve-tone system together accomplished these feats.

In E, the comparison is illogical and the modification is ambiguous (dominating). Schoenberg and his system, as a unit, are not only compared to Bartok, an individual, but also credited with having formed a school. The verb phrase dominating ... is called a "squinting modifier" because it looks in both directions: given the structure of the sentence, it could be meant to modify either Schoenberg and the twelve-tone system or Bartok.

### 4. 关于misplaced modifier, dangling modifier, squinting modifier的区别:

Traceback: <http://grammar.ccc.commnet.edu/grammar/modifiers.htm>

- (1) MISPLACED MODIFIER: Some modifiers, especially simple modifiers — only, just, nearly, barely — have a bad habit of slipping into the wrong place in a sentence. (In the sentence below, what does it mean to "barely kick" something?)

Confusion: He barely kicked that ball twenty yards.

Repair Work: He kicked that ball barely twenty yards.

- (2) DANGLING MODIFIER: When we begin a sentence with a modifying word, phrase, or clause, we must make sure the next thing that comes along can, in fact, be modified by that modifier. When a modifier improperly modifies something, it is called a "dangling modifier." This often happens with beginning participial phrases, making "dangling participles" an all too common phenomenon. In the sentence below, we can't have a car changing its own oil.

Confusion: Changing the oil every 3,000 miles, the car seemed to run better.

Repair Work: Changing the oil every 3,000 miles, Fred found he could get much better gas mileage.

\*: An infinitive phrase can also "dangle." The infinitive phrase below should probably modify the person(s) who set up the exercise program.

Confusion: To keep the young recruits interested in getting in shape, an exercise program was set up for the summer months.

Repair Work: To keep the young recruits interested in getting in shape, the coaching staff set up an exercise program for the summer months.

- (3) SQUINTING MODIFIER: A third problem in modifier placement is described as a "squinting modifier."

This is an unfortunate result of an adverb's ability to pop up almost anywhere in a sentence; structurally, the adverb may function fine, but its meaning can be obscure or ambiguous. For



instance, in the sentence below, do the students seek advice frequently or can they frequently improve their grades by seeking advice? You can't tell from that sentence because the adverb often is "squinting" (you can't tell which way it's looking). Let's try placing the adverb elsewhere.

Confusion: Students who seek their instructors' advice often can improve their grades.

Repair Work: Student who often seek their instructors' advice can improve their grades.

Repair Work: Students who seek their instructors' advice can often improve their grades.

## 153.

For centuries, people on sea voyages washed their clothes by placing the dirty laundry in a strong cloth bag, then toss it overboard, and let the ship drag the bag for hours.

- A. then toss it overboard, and let
- B. then toss them overboard, and they let
- C. tossing it overboard, and letting
- D. tossing them overboard, and let
- E. tossing it overboard, and let

题目释义: People washed clothes by placing..., then tossing..., and letting....

### 考点:

代词指代 (reference) 平行结构 (parallelism)

1. 代词指代。
2. and平行结构。

### 选项分析:

- A. toss, let和前面的placing不平行; then多余, 不应该在第二个并列成分中出现。
- B. toss, they let都是wash的动作, 应该与前面的placing平行都用现在分词; them属于by后面的意群, 不能指代到by前面的their clothes头上去, 所以无所指, 应该用it来指代the dirty laundry in a strong cloth bag。
- C. correct; By+现在分词表示方式, and前后平行。
- D. them错误同B, 且and前后不平行。
- E. and前后不平行。

## 154.

There is nowhere in early American literature where the influence of Jane Austen is so apparent as the novels of James Fenimore Cooper.

- A. There is nowhere in early American literature where the influence of Jane Austen is so apparent as
- B. In early American literature, nowhere is Jane Austin's influence so apparent than in
- C. It is nowhere more apparent in early American literature that Jane Austen was an influence as in
- D. Nowhere in early American literature is the influence of Jane Austen more apparent than in
- E. Nowhere in early American literature is it more apparent that Jane Austen had an influence than

题目释义: Nowhere in ... is sth. more apparent than in ...

Jane Austen在美国文学的影响没有比在James Fenimore Cooper的小说中更明显的地方了

### 考点:

比较 (comparison)

1. 比较结构标志词: nowhere...than... ; any other places ... than...
2. 完全倒装(见补充说明)。
3. James Fenimore Cooper (September 15, 1789 – September 14, 1851) was a prolific and popular American writer of the early 19th century. He is best remembered as a novelist who wrote numerous sea-stories and the historical novels known as the *Leatherstocking Tales*, featuring frontiersman Natty Bumppo. Among his most famous works is the Romantic novel *The Last of the Mohicans*, often regarded as his masterpiece.

### 选项分析:

- A. Nowhere是副词, there be句型没有主语; 比较对象不平行, 应该是where...so...as...in the novels, 其中关系副词where代表in early American literature没有问题
- B. in early American literature是修饰nowhere的, 这里变成了修饰整句使得逻辑错误; so...than搭配错误
- C. more...as搭配错误; in early American literature再次修饰了整句使得逻辑错误; 把the influence of Jane Austen改为从句句式复杂(awkward)
- D. correct; 原句可还原为: The influence of Jane Austen is more apparent nowhere in early American literature than in the novels of James Fenimore Cooper. (nowhere...than...)本句是地点状语的完全倒装
- E. 比较对象不对等, than后面少了个in; 句式复杂, 没必要把the influence of Jane Austen改为从句。

### 类似题链接:

大全540. Nowhere in Prakta is the influence of modern European architecture more apparent than their government buildings.

- (A) more apparent than their  
(B) so apparent as their  
(C) more apparent than in its  
(D) so apparent than in their  
(E) as apparent as it is in its

Key: C

### 补充说明:

高级【倒装结构】大总结, 迎合GMAT考点要求- by charlesxiepeng

#### 一. 完全倒装

1. 表语在句首要倒装

·介词短语/分词短语/形容词短语+系动词+主语 (主语与前面的动词主谓一致)

- 1) 介词短语在句首

*Among the people was a man named Brown.* 在这些人中有一个叫布朗的人。

*On the top of the hill stands an old temple.* 这山顶上有一座庙。

*From the valley came a frightening sound with some cries.*

*North of the city lies/is a new airport.*

## 2) 分词作表语

- 过去分词（有时构成被动结构的过去分词）提前到句首，引起倒装
- 构成进行时态的现在分词也可以提到前面来---张道真(正常语序看是进行时态)

*Helping them raise their artistic level are various professorial organizations.*

*Visiting the Great Wall were 200 American college students.*

*Coinciding with the development of jazz in New Orleans in the 1920's was one of the greatest periods in blues music.* (toefl 原句) 【coinciding with...显然不是动名词而是现在分词倒装】

- 现在分词提前到句首引起倒装要和动名词作主语区别开来
- 下面例句是动名词作主语: Teaching English is my job. / Visiting the Great wall is worthwhile.

## 3) 形容词短语放句首

*Present at the meeting is our English teacher.* (Present 出席的, 在场的)

*Gone are the days when we had a good time at the mountain village.* (Gone 离去的)

## 2. 为了保持句子平行或上下文的连接更紧密, 也可以采用倒装.

*They arrived at a farmhouse, in front of which sat a small boy.*

- 主语有过多修饰语亦可采用完全倒装

*Noteworthy is the fact that he has talent for music.*

## 二. 部分倒装

## 1. 一些表示频率的副词(如 many a time, often 等)位于句首时, 句子部分倒装.

*Often did we go for walks together.*

*Many a time have I told him about it.*

## 2. 用于“no sooner...than..., hardly...when...和 not until 等结构中”

*No sooner had he arrived than someone called him.*他一到就有人给他打电话

## 3. 用于省略 if 的虚拟条件状语从句(把 were, had, should 放在主语前构成倒装)

*Were I you ( = If I were you ), I would not accept his present.*

*Had you ( = If you had ) studied hard, you might have passed the exam this time.*

## 4. 用于“形容词/名词/动词+as (though)”引导的让步状语从句, 例如:

·形容词: *Pretty as she is ( =As pretty as she is=though she is pretty ) , she is not clever at all.*

·动词: *Try as he could, he might fail again.*

·名词: *Child as he was, he had to sell newspapers in the streets.*

## 5. 否定副词 (never, not..., seldom, hardly, neither, nor, scarcely, rarely, no longer, barely, little)

*Barely did he have time to catch the bus.*

*Never have I been to Beijing.*

## 6. So / Such 引导的倒装句

*So kind is she that she deserves all my respect.*(全倒装)

*So loudly did he speak that everyone could hear him.*

7. Only 在句首强调状语 *Only when the meeting is over can we know the decision.*

## 155.

With surface temperatures estimated at minus 230 degrees Fahrenheit, Jupiter's moon Europa has long been considered far too cold to support life, and with 60 square miles of water thought to be frozen from top to bottom.

A. Europa has long been considered far too cold to support life, and with

- B. Europa has long been considered far too cold to support life, its  
C. Europa has long been considered as far too cold to support life and has  
D. Europa, long considered as far too cold to support life, and its  
E. Europa, long considered to be far too cold to support life, and to have

题目释义: ..., Eruopa has long been considered far too cold to do sth, its 60 square miles of water thought to be ...

### 考点:

平行结构 (parallelism) 题目释义 (grammatical construction)

1. and前后平行。
2. consider A B: 把A认为是B, 中间不加as和to be, 其中B为名词或形容词。
3. 独立主格 (见补充说明)。

### 选项分析:

- A. and前后不对称, 前面是完整句子, 后面是一个介词短语。  
B. correct; its 60 square miles of water thought to be...做been considered的伴随状语做补充说明逻辑最合理。  
C. consider ... as累赘; 把has 60 square miles和consider并列, 逻辑上不是最合适的。  
D. and前后都是sentence fragment, 而不是完整句子; consider...as累赘。  
E. consider to be累赘; and前后都不是完整句子, 错误。

### 补充说明:

独立主格:

B选项的后半句its 60 square miles of...是一个独立主格结构。具体可以参考以下内容:  
<http://grammar.ccc.commnet.edu/grammar/phrases.htm#absolute>

### ABSOLUTE PHRASE

Usually (but not always, as we shall see), an absolute phrase (also called a nominative absolute) is a group of words consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle as well as any related modifiers. Absolute phrases do not directly connect to or modify any specific word in the rest of the sentence; instead, they modify the entire sentence, adding information. They are always treated as parenthetical elements and are set off from the rest of the sentence with a comma or a pair of commas (sometimes by a dash or pair of dashes). Notice that absolute phrases contain a subject (which is often modified by a participle), but not a true finite verb.

- Their reputation as winners secured by victory, the New York Liberty charged into the semifinals. (charge into 猛攻入)
- The season nearly finished, Rebecca Lobo and Sophie Witherspoon emerged as true leaders.
- The two superstars signed autographs into the night, their faces beaming happily.

When the participle of an absolute phrase is a form of *to be*, such as *being* or *having been*, the participle is often left out but understood.

- The season [being] over, they were mobbed by fans in Times Square.
- [Having been] Stars all their adult lives, they seemed used to the attention.

Another kind of absolute phrase is found after a modified noun; it adds a focusing detail or point of focus to the idea of the main clause. This kind of absolute phrase can take the form of a prepositional phrase, an adjective phrase, or a noun phrase.

- The old firefighter stood over the smoking ruins, his senses alert to any sign of another flare-up.
- His subordinates, their faces sweat-streaked and smudged with ash, leaned heavily against the firetruck.
- They knew all too well how all their hard work could be undone — in an instant.

It is not unusual for the information supplied in the absolute phrase to be the most important element in the sentence. In fact, in descriptive prose, the telling details will often be wrapped into a sentence in the form of an absolute phrase:

- Coach Nykesha strolled onto the court, her arms akimbo and a large silver whistle clenched between her teeth.
- The new recruits stood in one corner of the gym, their uniforms stiff and ill fitting, their faces betraying their anxiety.

A noun phrase can also exist as an absolute phrase: (GMAT 中暂未出现此现象)

- Your best friends, where are they now, when you need them?
- And then there was my best friend Sally — the dear girl — who has certainly fallen on hard times.

It might be useful to review the material on Misplaced Modifiers because it is important not to confuse an absolute phrase with a misplaced modifier.

## 156.

Deborah Aguiar-Velez, founder of Sistemas Corporation, has written a computer textbook in Spanish for people who speak Spanish and so then do not have to rely on translations from English.

- A. for people who speak Spanish and so then
- B. for people who speak Spanish, and then they
- C. for people speaking Spanish who
- D. so that people who speak Spanish
- E. so that people can speak Spanish and then

题目释义: DA-V has written a textbook in Spanish so that...

考点:

逻辑意思 (logical predication)

选项分析:

- A. DA-V为那些“说西班牙语的, 并且因此之后不用依赖从英语(向西班牙语)翻译的人”用西班牙语写了一本电脑教科书, 逻辑意思不合理。
- B. DA-V为那些“说西班牙语的人”用西班牙语写了一本电脑教科书, 并且之后他们不再依赖从英语(向西班牙语)的翻译, 前后两个分句是并列的不符合句意, 而且前面的分句显得是一句废话---说西班牙语的人

写了一本西班牙语的计算机教材（不是为说西班牙语的人写的，难道还是为说中文的人写的吗）。

- C. Who引导的定从和speaking并列修饰people，使得逻辑矛盾。
- D. Correct; people who speak Spanish和people speaking Spanish并没有很大区别；最合理的含义在此：以至于人们能够说西班牙语并且之后不用依赖从英语（向西班牙语）的翻译。
- E. So that + 情态动词表示目的，目的不是为了让人们会讲西班牙语，所以逻辑错误。

### 补充说明：

本题是逻辑含义做题的典型代表，这5个句子在纯粹的语法上都是讲的通的，但是翻译成中文后，或者从句子的逻辑意思的角度看，只有D选项的意思才符合逻辑。

## 157.

The striking differences between the semantic organization of Native American languages and that of European languages, in both grammar and vocabulary, have led scholars to think about the degree to which differences in language may be correlated with nonlinguistic differences.

- A. that of European languages, in both grammar and vocabulary, have
- B. that of European languages, including grammar and vocabulary, has
- C. those of European languages, which include grammar and vocabulary, have
- D. those of European languages, in grammar as well as vocabulary, has
- E. those of European languages, both in grammar and vocabulary, has

题目释义：The striking differences ..., in both grammar and vocabulary, have led scholars to think about...

### 考点：

语法结构（grammatical construction） 逻辑意思（logical predication） 主谓一致（agreement）

1. 句子的主语是the striking differences，谓语用复数。
2. 比较对象是the semantic organization，是个单数比较对象，指代应该用that。

### 选项分析：

- A. Correct; "differences (between A and B) in + 某个方面"固定搭配。
- B. has错误，应该是复数；differences including grammar and vocabulary不合理。
- C. those指代单数名词semantic organization错；Which离其修饰对象differences太远，而有修饰European languages的歧义。
- D. those错；has错；As well as有一个主次之分，用在这里不合适。
- E. those错；has错；both...and平行，and后应该加in。

## 158. (OG12-121)

Sales of wines declined in the late 1980s, but they began to grow again after the 1991 report that linked moderate consumption of alcohol, and particularly of red wine, with a reduced risk of heart disease

- A. they began to grow again after the 1991 report that linked moderate consumption of alcohol, and



- particularly of red wine, with a reduced risk of heart disease
- B. after the 1991 report that linked a reduced risk of heart disease with a moderate alcohol consumption, particularly red wine, they began growing again
- C. in a 1991 report, moderate alcohol consumption, and particularly of red wine, which was linked with a reduced risk of heart disease, caused them to begin to grow again
- D. with a reduced risk of heart disease linked in a 1991 report with moderate alcohol consumption, in particular red wine, they began growing again
- E. a reduced risk of heart disease linked to moderate alcohol consumption in a 1991 report, and in particular red wine, started them growing again

题目释义: Sales declined in the late 1980s, but they began to grow again after the 1991 report that linked A, ...,with B.

### 考点:

代词指代 (reference) 平行结构 (parallelism) 逻辑意思 (Logical predication)

1. link...with/to...固定搭配
2. 代词若离其所指代对象太远, 则会造成指代不清的情况。

### 选项分析:

- A. correct; They是完全指代, 指代sales of wines; and particularly of red wine中去掉and也是对的(and可放在插入语前, 不影响逻辑—lcy19812000); begin to do或begin doing都正确; in particular在本题不如particularly有效, 因为介词太多句式会复杂。
- B. red wine与alcohol consumption概念不同, 不能同位修饰, 应该在red wine后面也补上consumption; they离其所指代的sales太远, 使得句子理解起来不清晰, awkward; link A with B, A和B谁在前并不要紧。
- C. in a 1991 report修饰but后整句, 使句意荒谬: 在报告里, 酒的销量开始上升; which指代的是red wine, 错误(which通常就近指代); particularly of red wine与moderate alcohol consumption不平行, 后者应改为moderate consumption of alcohol; cause的主语是consumption, 逻辑意思很荒谬, 正确的主语应该是report。
- D. red wine不能同位修饰alcohol consumption, 要在red wine前面加上of; they began growing中的they离其指代对象sales过远。
- E. in a 1991 report有修饰moderate alcohol consumption的歧义, 好像consumption是发生在report里, 还是A的表达最为明确; in particular red wine无法修饰alcohol consumption, 概念不同; start的主语是risk错误; start them中的them指代不清。

### 补充说明:

1. OG12-121解释:

Logical predication; Rhetorical construction

This sentence explains why a trend of declining wine sales reversed after the publication of a 1991 report suggesting that moderate consumption of red wine correlated with reduced risk of heart disease. The phrase *particularly of red wine* modifies *consumption of alcohol*, and the sentence must make clear that it is *moderate consumption*, not *red wine* that the report links to *reduced risk*.

- A. Correct. In the second clause, *they* refers correctly to *sales of wines*; the relative clause beginning with *that* clearly indicates that the report *linked moderate consumption ... with a reduced risk*.
- B. *Particularly red wine* cannot describe consumption—the preposition *of* is needed; the placement of *they* so far from the position of the antecedent *Sales* makes the sentence awkward and difficult to decode.

- C. The clause beginning with *which* refers to *red wine* in this construction, erroneously suggesting that wine rather than *moderate consumption* of alcohol correlates with reduced risk of heart disease; *particularly of red wine* is not parallel to *moderate alcohol consumption*; it needs to follow *moderate consumption of alcohol* to make sense.
- D. Without the preposition *of*, the sentence indicates that red wine is a kind of consumption—which makes no sense.
- E. The incorrect placement of the modifier *in a 1991 report* suggests that wine is being consumed (albeit in moderation) in the report itself.

The correct answer is A.

2. 本题的秒杀方法：只有A选项but前后才是平行对称的，S.V.O+介词短语做时间状语，but S.V.O.+介词短语做时间状语。如此平行的结构，应该在第一时间对A建立好感。其次再用平行结构确认选项的排除。

### 类似题链接

GWD24-Q23: Discussion of greenhouse effects has usually focused on whether the Earth would warm and by how much, but climatologists have indicated all along that the most obvious effects, and those that would have the largest impact on people, would be extremes of temperature, precipitation, and storminess.

- A. the most obvious effects, and those that would have the largest impact on people, would be extremes of temperature, precipitation, and storminess
- B. the effects that are the most obvious ones, extremes of temperature, precipitation, and storminess, would be those impacting the most on people
- C. those effects to have the largest impact on people, extremes of temperature, precipitation, and storminess, are what are the most obvious effects
- D. extremes of temperature, precipitation, and storminess, the most obvious effects, that they would have the largest impact on people
- E. extremes of temperature, precipitation, and storminess, which are the most obvious effects, are those to impact the most on people

此类题与本题的相似之处在于：*those that*前面多了一个and，类似于*particularly of red wine*前面多了一个and。→这个and都是起到强调语气的作用。

全句含义：对温室效应的讨论总是集中在地球变暖了多少，但是气象学家指出，那些最明显的影响，（和那些影响人们最大的影响）是极端气候、降雨和暴风雪。

毛毛carina的类比：我认为A选项是这样一个结构，换句中文举例：最大那个苹果，同时也是最红的那个苹果，是我想吃的。主句是最大那个苹果是我想吃的，中间成分，那么刚刚好它也是最红的。所以需要有and，也就是说和用非限定性定语从句从语气上有区别。

key: the first choice.

## 159.

The first detailed study of magpie attacks in Australia indicates that by the time they had reached adulthood, 98 percent of men and 75 percent of women born in the country have been attacked by the birds.

- A. by the time they had reached adulthood, 98 percent of men and 75 percent of women born in the country have been attacked by the birds

- B. by the time they reach adulthood, 98 percent of men and 75 percent of women, who were born in the country, had been attacked by the birds
- C. by the time they reached adulthood, 98 percent of men and 75 percent of women born in the country had been attacked by the birds
- D. 98 percent of men and 75 percent of women that were born in the country were attacked by the birds by the time they reach adulthood
- E. 98 percent of men and 75 percent of women who were born in the country, by the time they reached adulthood had been attacked by the birds

**题目释义:** The first study of magpie attacks indicates that by the time they reached adulthood, 98% of men and 75% of women had been attacked by the birds.

### 考点:

语法结构 (grammatical construction) 逻辑意思 (logical predication)

1. 主句用一般现在时并不意味着宾语从句也要用现在时, 相反地, 主句用一般过去时也不意味着宾语从句也要用一般过去时; 宾从的时态往往会独立于主句时态。

### 选项分析:

- A. 时态错误, 前面是had reached adulthood, 后面是have been attacked by, 而事实上前者发生在后者的后面, 时态混乱, 而且人类在reach adulthood之后不会再有成长阶段, 所以不应该用had reached adulthood, 而应该用一般过去时; 再者由于be attack发生在reach adulthood前面, 所以有明显的时间对比, 应该be attack用过去完成时had been attacked。
- B. reach的时态错误, 同时使得had been attacked没有时间对比来说明be attack是发生在过去的过去; Who引导的定语从句是非限制性修饰, 使得逻辑含义错误。
- C. correct; 在第一次顺读句子的时候they虽然有向前指代attacks的倾向, 但看到了reached adulthood, 即可排除这个倾向, 而判断they是向后指代men and women; 本句把by the time放在宾语从句的最前面是最合理的, 因为要强调一个截止的时间点。
- D. that were可以省略, 而且that仅用于指代非人类事物; were attacked和reach时态错误。
- E. who were可以省略; adulthood后面少了逗号, 错误, 独立的修饰成分必须用两个逗号隔开; 把by the time插在句子中间, 显得很awkward。

## 160.(OG12-23)

In a previous design, the weight of the discus used in track competition is concentrated in a metal center, but now it is lined with lead around the perimeter, thereby improving stability in flight and resulting in longer throws.

- A. In a previous design, the weight of the discus used in track competition is concentrated in a metal center, but now it is
- B. According to a previous design, the weight of the discus used in track competition was concentrated in a metal center, but now it is
- C. Once designed with its weight concentrated in a metal center, the discus used in track competition is now
- D. The discus used in track competition, once designed with its weight concentrated in a metal center,

but now

- E. The discus used in track competition was once designed having its weight concentrated in a metal center and now

题目释义: Once designed with..., the discus ... is ... now lined with..., thereby improving...  
原先的设计是将重心放在金属中心处, 而现在是将其放在边缘...

### 考点:

1. 指代一致
2. line: vt. to cover the inner surface of

### 选项分析:

- (A) it指代weight of the discus错误; 划线部分is concentrated应该使用过去时态。  
(B) it指代问题, 同A; According to改变了原文的逻辑意思, 原文不是想说根据, 只是陈述客观事实。  
(C) Correct; Designed引导的过去分词结构作定语修饰句子主语 the discus, 逻辑正确。  
(D) 全句缺少谓语动词。  
(E) design固定搭配, 没有design doing的结构; having concentrated 完成时使用没必要; 后半句没有谓语动词, and now 应该为and now is 时态改变, 因此不能直接并列, 前半句使用的是过去时态was。

生词: discus n.(铁饼) 不误认做discuss

Perimeter n. 周边, 边缘

### OG12-23 解释

Verb Form; Grammatical construction; Logical predication

The sentence requires two tenses—past tense to describe the previous design and present tense to describe the current design of the discus. In the sentence presented here, the grammatical subject is *weight*, not *discus*, so the pronoun *it* grammatically refers to *weight*, which makes no sense.

- A. The verb tense describing the *previous design* should be past, not present; the pronoun *it* refers to the subject of the first clause, *weight*, and it does not make sense to say that the weight of the discus is lined with lead.
- B. Although the tense of the verb in the first clause is appropriately past, the pronoun in the second clause is still referring to *weight* instead of *discus*.
- C. Correct. The introductory phrase describes the past design of the discus with a past participle (*designed*) that modifies the subject of the main clause (*the discus*); the main verb *is lined* is in present tense.
- D. This version of the sentence is a fragment because it has no main verb.
- E. The sentence is missing a main verb in the final phrase; *was once designed* must be followed by *is now lined*.

The correct answer is C.

### 补充说明:

#### 1.design的固定搭配::

design something to do something  
be designed for somebody/something  
be designed as something  
be designed with sth

## 2. According to 与 In accordance with 的区别:

首先: According to 是介词。两者的含义及句子示例, 如下:

### In accordance with

This expression emphasises the rule, principle, law etc, which is followed, and which states what should happen. This is shown in the following citations:

1. The Commission insists that these funds must be spent in accordance with all the Community's most sacred environmental principles, to say nothing of its legislation.
2. Last month, the bank's management submitted a detailed plan for making changes in accordance with the review's findings.
3. The court may in accordance with law grant a dissolution of the marriage provided that the court is satisfied that adequate and proper provision will be made for any dependant spouse and for any child.
4. Existing Sidewinders follow a preset path with the help of sets of rigid fins, at the front and back, that alter position in accordance with instructions from an on-board computer.
5. The UN's peace plan rests on Mr Rabbani's willingness to relinquish office next month in accordance with one of the many peace pacts he has concluded.
6. If such a question arises for the first time in a lawsuit, the judge will have to decide the meaning in accordance with the recognized rules of interpretation, and his decision will be a binding authority for all future cases in which the same question arises.

### According to

This expression emphasises the basis for doing something, or for believing something:

7. Air pollution is growing worse in Britain, according to the latest set of detailed statistics compiled by the Department of the Environment.
8. Our Galaxy contains at least 100 million black holes, according to calculations by a Dutch astrophysicist.
9. Most organochlorine pollution in the Baltic is declining, according to a joint study by scientists at Ehime University in Japan and the University of Gdansk in Poland.
10. According to Alkenbrecher, Binning's theory is that true creativity is a result of disordered thoughts.
11. Each of the 10,000 most common words in English is ranked according to its frequency in everyday use.
12. Japanese oil tankers constructed according to a modern design with high-tensile steel have been recalled for emergency repairs to cracks.  
Notice that there is some overlap between the two expressions: so 11 and 12 could equally as well have been written (因为11, 12也是一个rule):
13. Each of the 10,000 most common words in English is ranked in accordance with its frequency in everyday use.
14. Japanese oil tankers constructed in accordance with a modern design with high-tensile steel have been recalled for emergency repairs to cracks.

### 区别:

根据XX号文规定, 应该怎样怎样, 我们一开始都写: According to Circular \*\*\*

公司请了两个老外editor, 专门帮我们挑报告中不规范的英语用法。然后老外就向我们提出来说, 这个地方要用In accordance with, 不能用according to。他们的理由是, according to 后面要跟法规的具体内容, 而如果单说是根据什么什么法规, 就要用in accordance with。

### 总结:

看 according to 一般要连更为具体的内容, 通常放在句首, 或者句中作插入语, 根据目前的Gmat题, 不需要逻辑一致。

161.

Deserts are inhabited with several distinct animal species, with each their own method of adapting to long periods of moisture shortage.

- A. with several distinct animal species, with each their
- B. with distinctly several animal species, each with its
- C. by several distinct animal species, each with its
- D. by several distinct animal species, having each its
- E. by several distinct animal species, that each has their

题目释义: Deserts are inhabited by several distinct animal species, each with its own...  
沙漠里居住这几种不同的动物, 每一种都有其自身的方法长期适应湿气不足的环境。

### 考点:

主谓一致, 固定搭配 (idiom), 逻辑表达 (Logical Predication)

- 1. with与each可以引导独立主格结构, 独立主格结构的形式, 需要注意其所表达的逻辑意思。
- 2. 主语是deserts, 谓语inhabit的被动态, each 引导独立主格结构, 进一步说明每一类animal species均有的一中特性。With介词短语修饰each, 表示具有某种性质。
- 3. inhabit vt 居住于. 固定搭配: be inhabited by  
e.g: *The woods are inhabited by many wild animals.*
- 4. 独立主格

### 选项分析:

- (A) inhabited with搭配错误; each对应复数their错误; each型独立主格形式错误。
- (B) inhabited with搭配错误; distinctly副词修饰形容词several逻辑错误。
- (C) Correct.
- (D) having现在分词短语做状语修饰谓语动词与主语deserts错误。
- (E) each对应复数their错误; that无法引导非限定性定从引导词; 没有必要that each互成同位语, each型独立主格只需要直接跟在逗号后面即可。

### 补充说明:

1. method的用法:

(1) method of/for (doing) something 优于 the method to:

"a method of protecting would be more idiomatic than a method to protect" 这是OG10-39解释中的一句话。[http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-30091-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-30091-1-1.html)

例句:

Today's methods of birth control make it possible for a couple to choose whether or not to have a child.  
effective methods for the storage and retrieval of information

例题:

137. Coronary angiography, a sophisticated method for diagnosing coronary disease involving the introduction of a dye into the arteries of the heart, is now administered selectively, because it uses x-rays to observe cardiac function.

- (A) for diagnosing coronary disease involving the introduction of a dye into the arteries of the heart, is now administered selectively, because it uses



- (B) for diagnosing coronary disease involving the introduction of a dye into the arteries of heart, is now administered selectively, because of using
- (C) for diagnosing coronary disease, involves the introduction of dye into the arteries of the heart and is now administered selectively, because it uses
- (D) to diagnose coronary disease that involves the introduction of a dye into the arteries of the heart, is now administered selectively, because it uses
- (E) to diagnose coronary disease involving the introduction of a dye into the arteries of the heart, which is now administered selectively, uses

Key: C

(2) 但是method的内容则可以用动名词表示: the method/way is to do...

OG12-11. There are several ways to build solid walls using just mud or clay, but the most extensively used method has been the forming of bricks out of mud or clay, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, they are laid in the wall in mud mortar.

- (A) the forming of bricks out of mud or clay, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, they are laid
- (B) forming the mud or clay into bricks, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, to lay them
- (C) having bricks formed from mud or clay, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, they were laid
- (D) to form the mud or clay into bricks, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, to lay them
- (E) that bricks were formed from mud or clay, which, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, were laid

Key: D (以平行判题)

## 162.

Such orb-weaving spiders like the argiope build webs in an essentially wheel-like structure, with an outer rim and a number of spokes emanating from the hub.

- A. Such orb-weaving spiders like the argiope build webs in an essentially wheel-like structure
- B. Such orb-weaving spiders as the argiope builds webs with what is essentially a wheel-like structure
- C. The argiope spider, in the same way as other orb-weaving spiders, build webs in a structure that is essentially wheel-like
- D. Orb-weaving spiders such as the argiope build webs that are essentially wheel-like
- E. Like other orb-weaving spiders do, the argiope builds webs as essentially wheel-like

题目释义: Orb-weaving spiders such as the argiope build webs that.... ,with .....

球形织网的蜘蛛如argiope, 所织的网很像车轮: 有个外部的圆边, 还有从中心发散到外沿的很多个类似轮辐的线。主语是the argiope, 谓语动词是build, that引导定语从句修饰web, with引导独立主格结构, 补充句子含义。

### 考点:

固定搭配(idiom), 比较对等, 主谓一致

1) like不举例, 举例用such as

2) like 用于比较结构中时, 做介词用其后不能加句子, like sth do是错误结构

3) such A as B的结构，谓语单复数情况与A一致，因为B只是举例的内容。

例：OG11#55: Doctors generally agree that such factors as cigarette smoking, eating rich foods high in fats, and alcohol consumption not only do damage by themselves but also aggravate genetic predispositions toward certain diseases.

### 选项分析：

- (A) 举例用such as, such ... like搭配错误；with an outer rim短语修饰前面整句，逻辑主语是orb-weaving spiders错误。
- (B) 主谓不一致，such spiders as ... 谓语对应build (用such spiders as和spiders such as都可以)；以某种形状建造应该是build in certain structure；build with \*\*\* structure搭配错误；what is essentially a wheel-like structure表达累赘
- (C) 比较the argiope spider和其他orb-weaving spiders用in the same way as连接错误，应用like, in the same way as用于比较两个事件；build主谓不一致；webs in a structure that is wheel-like累赘，直接webs that are wheel-like即可
- (D) Correct；with型独立主格可以伴随情况，在此伴随修饰that are essentially wheel-like
- (E) 表比较时，like后只能加名词，不能加动词do；build...as + adj.搭配错误

### 补充说明：

1. in the same way as/that的使用方式：

大全312. Because new small businesses are growing and are seldom in equilibrium, formulas for cash flow and the ratio of debt to equity do not apply to them in the same way as to established big businesses.

GWD26-Q3: Deliberately imitating the technique of Louis Armstrong, jazz singer Billie Holiday used her voice in the same way that other musicians use their instruments, in that she ranged freely over the beat, flattening out the melodic contours of tunes, and, in effect, recomposed songs to suit her range, style, and artistic sensibilities.

GWD30-Q16: Researchers are using computer images to help surgeons plan difficult operations and to develop programs that will work for doctors and nurses in the same way that flight simulators do for pilots, letting medical personnel practice their techniques and test their reflexes before they ever see a patient.

Prep1-118. Scientists have found new evidence that people initially register emotions such as sadness or anger in much the same way as they experience heartburn-by monitoring what's going on within their bodies.

## 163.

Because there are provisions of the new maritime code that provide that even tiny islets can be the basis for claims to the fisheries and oil fields of large sea areas, they have already stimulated international disputes over uninhabited islands.

- A. Because there are provisions of the new maritime code that provide that even tiny islets can be the basis for claims to the fisheries and oil fields of large sea areas, they have already stimulated
- B. Because the new maritime code provides that even tiny islets can be the basis for claims to the fisheries and oil fields of large sea areas, it has already stimulated

- C. Even tiny islets can be the basis for claims to the fisheries and oil fields of large sea areas under provisions of the new maritime code, already stimulating
- D. Because even tiny islets can be the basis for claims to the fisheries and oil fields of large sea areas under provisions of the new maritime code, this has already stimulated
- E. Because even tiny islets can be the basis for claims to the fisheries and oil fields of large sea areas under provisions of the new maritime code, which is already stimulating

题目释义: Because....., it has already stimulated....

由于新的海事法规定,即使是微小的小岛,也可以要求在很大的海域拥有捕鱼和建立石油的权利,它已经刺激了无人居住的岛屿国际争端。

### 考点:

指代一致,逻辑意思、简洁(Concise)

- 指代要注意
  - 是否会出现多个可能的指代对象,造成语义模糊;
  - 指代明确的情况下,逻辑含义是否正确。
- this 指代除非特别明显,否则通常不可单独指代,需要加上具体名词(即 this 做为 adjective),如 this code 等,才是正确的指代形式。同理 those/these 在指代时,通常均需补充名词。
- that/those 用于比较结构中,避免重复,和单独指代要区别开来
- which 只能指代前面出现过的名词而不能指代整个句子,which 指代前面句子表达的意思常作为伴随副词的混淆选项出现。
- 逻辑上,句子总会有属于自己最合理的中心,因此而不能随意改变句子重心。
- provision n. 条款 (provide的名词形式,provide有“规定”的意思)

### 选项分析:

- (A) 选项wordy: there be在此处冗余; provision和provide语义重复; they指代不清,有指代islets的歧义
- (B) Correct; Because原因状语从句, it主从对位指代the new maritime code, 谓语动词: stimulate, 完成时态,符合逻辑。
- (C) 原本的主句被改成了修饰成分,句子重心改变; stimulating逻辑主语成了tiny islets错误; 由于前面是主系表结构,所以stimulating不做伴随结果状语,割裂前后因果关系; under provisions of the new maritime code错误修饰sea areas
- (D) this不可单独指代,应加上具体名词; under provisions of the new maritime code错误修饰sea areas
- (E) 缺少主谓结构,题目释义不完整: 原因状语从句, +which引导的非限定性定语从句。句子重心改变, stimulating成为修饰成分; 时态由完成时变为现在进行时, already是完成时态的标志词之一, 逻辑意思不正确; under provisions of the new maritime code错误修饰sea areas

### 补充说明:

OG12-113解释:

Logical predication; Grammatical construction

In this sentence, the *there are ... that ...* construction contributes nothing more than unnecessary words. The sentence needs to make clear whether *provisions* or *code* is the subject of the main verb *stimulated*.

- A. The *there are ... that ...* construction is unnecessarily wordy; in the predicate nominative instead of the subject position, *provisions* is not an obvious referent for the pronoun *they*.
- B. Correct. In this sentence, *the new maritime code* is clearly the antecedent of *it* in the main clause and

thus the subject of *has already stimulated*.

- C. *Under provisions of the new maritime code* is a misplaced modifier, seeming to describe *sea areas*; the sentence does not make clear what is *stimulating ... disputes*.
- D. The referent of *this* is unclear.
- E. The sentence is a fragment, opening with a dependent clause (*Because ... code*) and concluding with a relative clause, but lacking a main, independent clause.

The correct answer is B.

### 现在分词伴随状语的正反向考法 -- by dxwei2008

GMAT语法中常常考查前一个分句的整体对后面一个对象的作用结果，一般认可的正确答案是使用现在分词做伴随状语。另外还有一种应用情况是，两个动作同时发生。在平时的语法中，我们常常使用连词and来连接两个动作，可是在GMAT语法中常常使用伴随状语。老鱼在它的讲座里举的一个例子就是：

She is sitting on the tree and reading a book. (一般语法)

She is sitting on the tree, reading a book. (GMAT语法)

所以我们在以下两个情况下要使用伴随状语

1. 前一个分句的整体对后面某一个对象的作用
2. 两个同时发生的动作，补充主语的动作

#### 一、正向考法

正向考法就是要你识别出前一个分句是从整体上对后一个分句的宾语发生作用。例如：

He scored 100, making him the best student.

这里的making动作的逻辑主语就是前一个分句的整体。既不是前分句的主语也不是前分句的宾语，所以只可以使用伴随状语。

#### 二、反向考法

既然一个考点可以正向考，如果不反向也考一考就没有难度了。反向的考法是，当前一个分句本来没有对后一个分句的宾语造成任何作用，题目却不断地引诱你去这样做。例如：

He went into the classroom and sat on the chair. (逻辑上很合理，只有进了教室才可以坐在椅子上)

ETS的干扰选项：He went into the classroom, sitting on the chair. (逻辑上就很荒谬了，在进教室这个动作发生的时候，他一直坐在椅子上)

He scored 100 in the 1st test and scored 99 in the 2nd test. (逻辑上很合理)

ETS的干扰选项：He scored 100 in the 1st test, scoring 99 in the 2nd test. (逻辑上很荒谬，第一次考了100导致第二次考99)

#### 关于these的单独指代

prep2-34 讨论帖 [http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-336111-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-336111-1-1.html)

Besides adding complementary flavors to many foods, hot sauces stimulate the release of endorphins in the brain, just as exercise does, and these have a pain-relieving effect like morphine's.

- (A) hot sauces stimulate the release of endorphins in the brain, just as exercise does, and these have a pain-relieving effect like morphine's
- (B) hot sauces stimulate the release of endorphins in the brain, like exercise, and they have a pain-relieving effect that is like morphine
- (C) hot sauces and exercise both stimulate the release of endorphins in the brain, and they have a pain-relieving effect like morphine
- (D) the release of endorphins in the brain is stimulated both by hot sauces and exercise, and they have a pain-relieving effect like morphine's
- (E) the release of endorphins in the brain is stimulated by hot sauces, just as with exercise, and these have a

pain-relieving effect like that of morphine

Key: A.

小结:

- 1) 除非很明显, **this\these** 不能单独指代, 要补出后面的名词。
- 2) **they** 指代前面出现的对象, **these** 指代离它最近的对象, 指代都要满足逻辑符合, 主谓一致的要求。
- 3) 当 **they** 前出现两个以上主谓符合的对象时, 视其为指代不清。而 **these** 前出现两个以上主谓符合的对象时, 可以就近指代, 比 **they** 更佳。

## 164.

Mixed with an equal part of water, ethylene glycol, a compound commonly used as an automotive antifreeze, is effective at temperatures as low as -30 degrees Fahrenheit.

- A. temperatures as low
- B. temperatures so low
- C. as low temperatures
- D. as few
- E. as little

题目释义: Mixed with ..., ethylene glycol, a compound..., is effective at temperature as low as... 乙二醇, 作为混有同样体积的水的化合物, 通常作为汽车防冻剂使用, 在低达华氏30度的时候才有效。

### 考点:

1. 比较结构 as adj. a noun. as... :

as...as之间是可以加 adj+noun的, 不过好像只限于几种形式(张振邦):

as+adj.+不定冠词+单数可数+as I haven't seen as old a car as this for years.

as+adj.+零冠词+不可数名词+as 对应 prep2-9 (见类似题链接)

as+adj.+零冠词+复数可数名词+as I don't smoke as expensive cigarettes as those.

2. as adj. (a) noun. as = (a) noun. as adj. as, 其中第一个as是adv.

### 选项分析:

- (A) Correct; 主语是 ethylene glycol, mixed 过去分词前置修饰有被动的含义, Mixed 的逻辑主语即句子的主语 ethylene glycol. a compound 引导同位语从句, Be effective 为句子谓语。
- (B) so as只用于否定句中。
- (C) at后面缺少名词作宾语
- (D) at后面缺少名词作宾语; few不能形容温度
- (E) at后面缺少名词作宾语; little不能形容温度

### 类似题链接:

prep 2-9 The Environmental Protection Agency frequently puts mandatory controls on toxic substances that present as little risk as one in a million chances to cause cancer.

- (A) as little risk as one in a million chances to cause
- (B) as little risk as one chance in a million of causing
- (C) as little risk as one chance in a million that it will cause

- (D) a risk as little as one chance in a million for causing  
(E) a risk as little as one chance in a million for it to cause

Key: B

如果D和E改成a risk as little as one chance in a million of causing也就对了

## 165. (OG10-243)

Some scientists have been critical of the laboratory tests conducted by the Federal Drug Administration on the grounds that the amounts of suspected carcinogens fed to animals far exceeds those that humans could consume

- A. far exceeds those that humans could consume  
B. exceeds by far those humans can consume  
C. far exceeds those humans are able to consume  
D. exceed by far those able to be consumed by humans  
E. far exceed those that humans could consume

题目释义: Some scientists have been critical of.... on the grounds that.....

一些科学家已经对FDA所进行的实验室试验感到不满, 因为试验中动物所食用的可疑致癌物的量已经大大超过人类可能消耗的数量。

### 考点:

比较对等, 主谓一致

- 1) far exceed引导比较结构要求比较对象要对等。  
2) can和be able to不需要从意思上(能力还是可能性)加以区分, 只要注意时态看哪个更合适, 又没有明显错误就行; [http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT\\_SC/thread-121279-1-1.html](http://forum.chasedream.com/GMAT_SC/thread-121279-1-1.html)  
3) Be critical of ..不满。

### 选项分析:

- (A) amounts 与exceeds主谓不一致。  
(B) amounts 与exceeds主谓不一致; exceed by far不如far exceed简洁  
(C) amounts 与exceeds主谓不一致; those后面的关系代词that可以省, 但在此为了句意更加清晰而补出  
(D) exceed by far不如far exceed简洁; those able to be consumed好像在说食品能够主动地被人吃, 逻辑上很荒谬; be consumed by 被动语态, wordy  
(E) Correct; 主语是Some scientists, 谓语是have been critical of, on the grounds that引导原因状语从句; can和could不仅仅在时态上有差别, 在肯定程度上也有差别, could语气较弱, 两者间区别在本题不成考点; 因为those的存在, that的补出使得定语从句更为清晰, 即便that在定从中做宾语。

### 补充说明:

10-243 解释:

Choice E is best. The plural verb *exceed* agrees in number with its subject, *amounts*, and the phrase *those that humans could consume* conveys the intended meaning clearly and without unnecessary wordiness. In choices A, B, and C, the singular *exceeds* does not agree in number with its plural subject, *amounts*.



Choices B and C omit the conjunction *that* -- an omission that is grammatically acceptable, but in the case of this sentence diminishes clarity.

In D, the use of the passive voice in the phrase *those able to be consumed by humans* is unjustified, as it increases wordiness while stating the meaning less precisely: it is accurate to call *humans* "able," but not to call *those* [amounts] "able." (食品能主动地被人吃)

Ets 自己说, 主动比被动要好, 因为被动说起来罗嗦, 而且表达不够准确( be able to be done 永远错)

## 166.

The period when the great painted caves at Lascaux and Altamira were occupied by Upper Paleolithic peoples has been established by carbon dating, but what is much more difficult to determine are the use to which primitive peoples put the caves, the reason for their decoration, and the meaning of the magnificently depicted animals.

- A. has been established by carbon dating, but what is much more difficult to determine are
- B. have been established by carbon dating, but what is much more difficult to determine are
- C. have been established by carbon dating, but that which is much more difficult to determine is
- D. has been established by carbon dating, but what is much more difficult to determine is
- E. are established by carbon dating, but that which is much more difficult to determine is

题目释义: The period .... has been established....., but what is much more difficult to determine is .....

旧石器时代的人居住在位于Lascaux 与Altamira的巨大的壁画洞的时期已经通过碳测时法确认, 但更难确定的是原始人使用什么工具开凿石洞, 为什么他们要装饰以及这些华丽的被描绘出的动物所代表的含义。

主语: The period, 谓语动词: be establish, 完成时态符合逻辑, when引导时间状语从句修饰主语。but 引导并列句子, what引导主语从句, 谓语动词为be difficult的比较形式, use ,reason, meaning并列做该部分宾语。

### 考点:

主谓一致:

1. what引导的名词性从句中从句谓语动词的单复数情况:  
what后面“什么时候用单数,什么时候用复数”根据动词后面的名词的单复数来定。
2. what引导的名词性从句做主语时, 主句谓语动词的单复数情况:  
(1)What在从句中做主语, 主句谓语由what从句的谓语决定。  
1) What is difficult to understand is A.; What are difficult to understand are A and B.  
(2)what在从句中做宾语, 主句谓语由主句表语/宾语决定what they want are XX,XX&XX。  
2) What his father left him are a few English books.
3. carbon dating 碳(14)测定年代(名词)

### 选项分析:

- (A) but后分句谓语应该用单数形式is, what is difficult的is决定主句谓语用单数is the use to ....
- (B) The period和have主谓不一致; but后分句谓语应该用单数形式is
- (C) The period和have主谓不一致; that which=what, 用what更为简洁

(D) Correct; what is difficult的is决定主句谓语用单数is the use to ....

(E) The period和are主谓不一致; 随意改变句子时态, 完成时变现在时; that which 相当于一个从句中两个主语, 题目释义错误

### 补充说明:

1. 以who, why, how, whether或that引导主语从句, 谓语动词用单数

例: Why she did this is not known.

2. 前面应被后面替换小结:

which that, that which, the thing that= what

not any = no

not ever = never

which is that=that

the only thing that=all (the only thing that has to be done → all one has to do)

at the time after=after

while being=as (as 表过程, 随着...)

A is what is the B 中 what is 可以省略, A is the B

wanting to do=to do

what the effects=the effects

otherpeople/things=others

that of his own=his own (前者双重所有格)

something of whom=whose sth.

but instead=but (windmaple: but 后面接名词是不能有 instead 的, 因为 but 是介词; 但是如果 but 后面接动词就变成了连词, 中间加副词 instead 没问题。例老 prep SC1 73: Evolutionary psychology holds that the human mind is not a "blank slate" but instead comprises specialized mental mechanisms that were developed to solve specific problems human ancestors faced millions of years ago.)

with the exception of = except

up until=until (until 已经包括了 up 的含义。

until: conj.(=up to the time when)到...时为止;

prep. (介词) Up to the time of; Before (a specified time):用在否定句)

with none of = without

but still=but

wanting to do=to do

different from that which=different than (不同于 different from(用 different from 正确))

His way of living is different than ours.他的生活方式跟我们的不同。

German cars are different than ours.德国造的汽车和我们的不一样。

You look different than before.你看上去跟从前不同了。

date at which = when

in the event that = if

### 类似题链接:

大全 851. The work of mathematician Roger Penrose in the early 1970s, on the geometry of what are called aperiodic tiles, turned out to describe the architecture of a previously unknown class of crystals.

(A) what are called aperiodic tiles, turned out to describe

- (B) what is called aperiodic tiles, describes
- (C) aperiodic tiles, describing
- (D) so-called aperiodic tiles, describe
- (E) aperiodic tiles, it turned out to describe

key: A. what从句“什么时候用单数,什么时候用复数”根据动词后面的名词的单复数来定。

## 167.

On August 13, 1868, the warship U. S. S. Wateree, anchored in the harbor of Arica, off the coast of what is now northern Chile, rode on the crest of a tsunami (seismic sea wave) and coming to rest in the Atacama Desert, it was some three miles up the coast and almost two miles inland from its initial anchorage.

- A. rode on the crest of a tsunami (seismic sea wave) and coming to rest in the Atacama Desert, it was
- B. rode on the crest of a tsunami (seismic sea wave), while it came to rest in the Atacama Desert,
- C. rode on the crest of a tsunami (seismic sea wave) and came to rest in the Atacama Desert,
- D. riding on the crest of a tsunami (seismic sea wave), to come to rest in the Atacama Desert
- E. riding on the crest of a tsunami (seismic sea wave), it had come to rest in the Atacama Desert, which is

题目释义: On August..., the warship ... rode on and came to..., some three miles up the....。

主语是the warship, 谓语是rode on and came to, some three miles up the coast and almost two miles inland from its initial anchorage是desert的同位语. anchored是过去分词,修饰the warship.

1868年8月13日, 战舰U. S. S. Wateree在Arica港口抛锚, 该港口在智利北部的沿岸, 战舰遭遇海啸引发的浪潮, 被冲至Atacama Desert。

### 考点:

平行对称, 逻辑表达, 题目释义

1. 一个完整的句子之中只能有一套主谓, 当句子中有较长插入语时, 要注意是否出现了两个主语, 或没有连词连接的多个谓语动词的情况。
2. and引导的并列, 通常要求词性、时态、单复数、逻辑等都要平行。

### 选项分析:

- (A) coming与rode, anchored不平行; It was 多余造成两套主谓, run-on sentence
- (B) while改变了原句逻辑意思, 原意为“碰到海啸, 并被刮到沙漠”, 现改变为“当它在沙漠里休息的时候碰到了海啸”
- (C) Correct, 形式对称, 逻辑正确
- (D) riding, coming与anchored不平行, 应统一用一般过去时; desert后面缺少逗号, 使后面some three miles up the coast变成限定性修饰, 改变原句合理逻辑含义
- (E) 两套主谓, run-on sentence; riding与anchored不平行; had come没必要使用过去完成时态, 破坏了其逻辑含义; which is可省略

## 168.

The first shots of the American Revolution, fired at Lexington and Concord, Massachusetts, were, according to legend, heard around the world, but news of these shots, which were sent by swift messenger, took four days in reaching New York City as well as another additional eleven days to reach Charleston, South Carolina.

- A. shots, which were sent by swift messenger, took four days in reaching New York City as well as another additional eleven days
- B. shots that was sent by swift messenger took four days in order to reach New York City, and also another eleven days
- C. shots that were sent by swift messenger took four days to reach New York City and another eleven days
- D. shots took four days by swift messenger in order to reach New York City and another eleven days in addition
- E. shots took four days by swift messenger to reach New York City and another eleven days

**题目释义：**The first shots ... were ... heard around the world, but news of these shots took four days by messenger to reach NYC and another eleven days to reach...

主语是The first shots, 谓语hear, but做连词引导转折句, 句子主语news, 谓语take, 宾语four days/eleven days + 不定式状语。

### 考点：

指代一致, 逻辑表达, 平行对称

- 1) as well as 与and 的意思不完全一致, 作为习语用作介词时, as well as的涵义是“还有”、“不但...而且...”。值得注意的是, 在A as well as B的结构里, 语意的重点在 A, 不在 B。因此, 要注意句子想要表达的逻辑关系。
- 2) 句子结构, but连词, 如果连接句子, 则需要主谓结构齐全, 因为连词连接的句子不一定主语相同, 省略时可能不符合逻辑。

### 选项分析：

- (A) Which were根据were说明which指代的是these shots, 而逻辑上应该指代news, 所以定语从句的谓语动词不是were应为was; 没有take some days in doing sth的结构, 且in reaching与后面的to形式不对称, 应改为take some days to do sth.; as well as不用于同一层次并列。
- (B) 用了限定性定语从句修饰news, 意思就是“信使所遣送的射击”, 错误, 应该用非限定性修饰; in order to在此应直接用to; also与another重复。
- (C) 用了限定性定语从句修饰news错误同B; 同时由于news是不可数名词, that were应改为that was。
- (D) in order to 不简洁, 可以直接用to; another和in addition语义重复。
- (E) Correct; by swift messenger最为简洁。

### 补充说明：

#### 关于限定性定语从句与非限定性定语从句 – by genimix

定语的限制与非限制并非是 XDF 和很多前人总结的那样是“局部”和“整体”的区别, 这实际上是一种曲解

特别是不能绝对化的说: 某个结构(介词短语)就一定是限定性, 另一结构(现在分词)就一定是非限定性。

限定性与非限定性实质是: 有该修饰时, 修饰对象的外延是否有变化, 如果变小了就是限定性, 如果没变就是非限定性。

形式上简单的看, 有没有逗号是明显标志。有逗号就是非限定性, 没有逗号就是限定性。

实际上现在分词作定语如果没有逗号也是限定性,只是因为 GMAT 中现在分词本身具有“客观状态”和“正在进行”意味,没有多种时态问题(这也正是现在分词完成式不做定语的原因),才使得其具有表达“重复多次性”意味的功能;而定语从句能够表达多种时态,因而倾向于表达“具体一次性”意味。

因此把限定性与非限定性说成是“局部”与“整体”的关系,不能说完全不对,但至少也是曲解了限定性与非限定性的本意

## 169. (GWD-3-Q11)

Retailers reported moderate gains in their November sales, as much because of their sales of a year earlier being so bad as that shoppers were getting a head start on buying their holiday gifts.

- A. of their sales of a year earlier being so bad as that
- B. of their sales a year earlier having been as bad as because
- C. of their sales a year earlier being as bad as because
- D. their sales a year earlier had been so bad as because
- E. their sales of a year earlier were as bad as that

题目释义: Retailers reported ..., as much because ... as because .....

零售商报告其在11月销售温和上扬,一方面因为他们去年同期销售很糟糕,另一方面因为购物者都开始购买的节日礼物。

主语Retailer,谓语report, as much because ... as because并列引导原因状语。过去完成时在这里使用是可以的,是在reported的过去,完成的事实。

### 考点:

平行对称

- 1. as much because ...as because ..., as ...as 要求平行并列。
- 2. so bad可以单独使用做形容词,而as bad则后面必须再加比较成分,并不完整as bad as结构。
- 3. Shopper = customer 顾客,购物者
- 4. Head start = 抢先,提前

### 选项分析:

- (A) as much...as...结构不平行; because of后面结构复杂,核心词只有their sales,应该改为because引导从句来清晰阐明原因。
- (B) as much... as...结构不平行; as much... as bad as...搭配错误-- so bad是可以自己单独使用的,但是as bad的话后面必须再跟一个as; because of错误同A。
- (C) as much... as...结构不平行; as much... as bad as...错误同B; because of错误同A。
- (D) Correct; 过去完成时以后面的were getting对照,说明a year earilier的sales发生在过去的过去; so bad不与后面的as搭配,而是前面的as much与as搭配
- (E) 结构不平行, as much as和so bad,此处搭配混乱; 第一个原因状语从句用过去完成时更贴切,因为第一个because是发生在去年,在第二个because之前,时态亦需要提前。

## 170. (GWD21-Q12)

Birds known as honeyguides exhibit a unique pattern of behavior: the bird leads another animal, such as a honey-badger or a human, to a bees' nest with their chattering when they fly ahead; after the larger animal takes honey, the bird eats the wax and bee larvae.

- A. with their chattering when they fly
- B. with chattering and its flying
- C. by chattering as it flies
- D. by chattering and its flying
- E. by chattering as they are flying

题目释义: the bird leads sth , , to a bees' nest by chattering as it flies

主语是the bird, 谓语动词lead sth to some place, by+分词结构为方式状语, as引导时间状语从句。

### 考点:

指代一致, 逻辑表达

#### 1. with和by的区别:

- (1) 做某事时通过什么方法或手段用by: do something by (doing) something.
- (2) 表示使用有形工具时, 通常用with来表示: write with a pen, see with naked eyes, strike with a hammer
- (3) 作"用"讲时, by和with的区别在于: with表示行为动作的工具, 后面的名词一般要有冠词; by表示动作的手段, 后面的名词一律不用冠词。

#### 2. as和when引导的时间状语含义不同:

- (1) as表示"当.....时""一面.....一面", "随着"。具体用法如下:

- 1) 表示"当.....时"、"和.....同时"。常指从句的动作未结束, 主句中的动作就已发生。从句中多用表示动作的动词, 而不用be动词或表示感觉、理解、知道这类动词。

e.g. *As he stood there, he saw two men enter the bar.*

*She dropped the glass as she stood up.*

- 2) 用于平行的动作中, 表示"一面.....一面....."。常指一个主语同时进行两个动作。

e.g. *The students took notes as they listened.*

- 3) 用于平行发展的结构中, 表示"随着....."。常指一个行为是另一个行为的结果, 或一种状态随另一种状态变化。句中的动词多表示状态的发展变化。

e.g. *As the wind rose the noise increased.*

*As it grew darker it became colder.*

*As he grew older he became more confident.*

- (2) when表示"当.....的时候"。从句中既可用延续性动词, 又可用非延续性动词, 这些动词既可以表示动作, 又可表示状态。从句中的动作既可和主句的动作同时发生, 又可在主句的动作之前或之后发生。

When I came into the room, I found him lying there asleep. <表示动作, 主从动作同时发生>

Mary was having dinner when I saw her. <表示动作, 主从动作同时发生>

When you meet a word you don't know, consult the dictionary. <表示动作, 从句动作在前>

She was beautiful when she was a girl. <表示状态>

\*: 所以, when引导的仅仅是最单纯的时间状语, 在要表示伴随含义的时候, 用as比用when更为合适。



选项分析:

- (A) they以及their和前面未划线的the bird指代不一致，应为单数it；通过某某方法要用by，而不是with；when引导的时间状语从句没有伴随的含义，应该用as更好。
- (B) 通过某某方式要用by，而不是with；chattering and its flying不平行；时间状语改为平行结构少了伴随、同时发生的含义。
- (C) Correct，这里as是“一面飞一面喋喋”，上面谈到的as引导时间状语时的第2中用法。
- (D) chattering and its flying不平行；时间状语改为平行结构少了伴随、同时发生的含义。
- (E) the bird应为单数，指代词要用it。

## 171. (GWD-10-Q2) (GWD-11-10)

Marconi's conception of the radio was as a substitute for the telephone, a tool for private conversation; instead, it is precisely the opposite, a tool for communicating with a large, public audience.

- A. Marconi's conception of the radio was as a substitute for the telephone, a tool for private conversation; instead, it is
- B. Marconi conceived of the radio as a substitute for the telephone, a tool for private conversation, but which is
- C. Marconi conceived of the radio as a tool for private conversation that could substitute for the telephone; instead, it has become
- D. Marconi conceived of the radio to be a tool for private conversation, a substitute for the telephone, which has become
- E. Marconi conceived of the radio to be a substitute for the telephone, a tool for private conversation, other than what it is,

题目释义：Marconi conceived of the radio as a tool ....; instead, it has become ....

两个分句组成一个长句，前句主语Marconi，谓语conceive of sth as sth.，as a tool作为宾语补足语，由定语从句进一步修饰；后句主语是it指代的radio，谓语为become的完成时态，宾语a tool。

考点:

代词指代，固定搭配，逻辑表达

- Opposite做名词时：a person or thing that is as different as possible from someone or something else  
opposite of
  - What's the opposite of 'optimistic'?
  - She's quite shy, the exact opposite of Becky.
  - The two men were complete opposites - Simon tall and fair, Clive short and dark.
  - If anything, the opposite was true.
  - Is it sensible to think of masculine/feminine as polar opposites (=exactly or completely opposite) ?
- conceive的固定搭配
  - (cannot) conceive of (doing) something
  - conceive that (不用虚拟语气)
  - conceive of something/somebody as something
  - conceive what/why/how etc
  - conceive sth. (such as idea)

3. *other than* = *With the exception of*; *except (for)*; *besides*:

### 选项分析:

- (A) Marconi's conception of the radio用法awkward, 不如直接用动词形式conceive of简洁; conception与substitute概念对等, 不需要as, as多余; A tool应该修饰radio, 但位置上却修饰telephone; It指代conception,逻辑意义荒谬
- (B) A tool应该修饰radio, 但位置上却修饰telephone; But后的which无指代对象; but前后不平行
- (C) Correct; conceived of...as...用法正确; That跳跃修饰a tool(定语从句的引导词指代是可以根据逻辑跳跃不复杂的介宾短语)由于介词词组要紧跟其修饰对象, 避免产生歧义, 就把that从句放后面, 如果把for private conversation换个地方, 修饰对象改变后会产生逻辑错误; it指代radio→the ratio has become the opposite发展成了对立面
- (D) conceived of...to be...用法错误; which荒谬的修饰了telephone
- (E) conceived of...to be...用法错误; A tool应该修饰radio, 但位置上却造成修饰telephone的歧义; other than后面的句子, 使得句意完全改变; other than=except, 是“除了...以外”的意思, other than应改为rather than, 意为“而不是...”; what it is中, it指代radio没有问题, 用了一般现在时表示“现在radio成了什么”, 逻辑上没错, 但是使得句式复杂→the opposite说明其是做名词, 是what的同位语, 而后面再跟一个同位语a tool来修饰the opposite, 实在太过复杂awkark。

## 172. (GWD7-Q40)

Since February, the Federal Reserve has raised its short-term interest rate target five times, and because of the economy's continued strength, analysts have been predicting for weeks that the target will be raised again in November.

- A. because of the economy's continued strength, analysts have been predicting for weeks that the target will
- B. with the economy's strength continuing, analysts predicted for weeks that the target
- C. because the economy continues strong, analysts predicted for weeks that the target would
- D. due to the economy's continued strength, analysts have been predicting for weeks that the target
- E. due to the fact of the economy's continued strength, analysts predicted for weeks that the target will

题目释义: Since February, the Federal Reserve has raised....five times, and because of ..., analysts have been predicting for weeks that the target will be.....  
主语Federal Reserve, 谓语raise的完成时态, and引导两个并列的分句

### 考点:

1. 本题主要考察的时态和虚拟语气。时态上, for weeks, for有持续的含义, 所以用现在完成时正确; 同时, since February. the Fed连续5次加息, 那么在这持续加息的日子中分析家也就持续predicting, 所以完成进行时正确。
2. 区分will, would。这里的意思表示, 很肯定的断定\*\*发生, 没有虚拟, 没有与现在相反的语境, 所以, 用will最好。Predict是要搭配will的, 不同于expect to do。除了用在过去时态中, would用在虚拟里(与现实相反), 不用在肯定语境中。

选项分析:

- (A) Correct; have been predicting表达的意思是(几周以来)至今仍在预测, 而且与后面的will相呼应→表明预测的是以后的事; because of strength结构是正确的, 因为because of后面成功地接了核心意思strength, 如果改为because of economy that continues strength就错了。
- (B) predicted一般过去时错误, 句首Since February, 后面的for weeks是完成时态的标志, 不能说analysts predicted for weeks; predict 从句用将来时, 不用虚拟语气; with the economy's strength continuing中continuing用了现在时态错误, 应该改为that continues; 改为with伴随状语, 少了因果语气。
- (C) predicted一般过去时错误, 句首Since February, 后面的for weeks是完成时态的标志, 不能说analysts predicted for weeks (predicted是个短时间完成的动作), 同时, predict不可能发生在continue前面, 不能用一般过去时, 这是先果后因。
- (D) due to不放在句首作状语, due to在书面语中一般作表语或后置定语, 相当于caused by; predict从句用将来时, 不用虚拟语气, 不能直接用be。
- (E) predicted一般过去时错误, 句首Since February, 后面的for weeks是完成时态的标志, 不能说analysts predicted for weeks; due to the fact of冗余; due to不放在句首做状语, 因为due to只具有形容词性(adjective), 而不具有介词性(preposition), due to在书面语中一般作表语或后置定语。

补充说明:

- 以下动词宾语从句需要用虚拟语气: 都要省略should。
  - 表示建议: advocate/advise/move/recommend that ... do ...  
sb. suggest/propose that ... do ...(如果是物作主语就不需要虚拟, 动词是“暗示”的意思)
  - 表示命令: order/decreet/mandate/command/demand/direct that ... do ...
  - 表示要求: request/require/insist that ... do ...
- 介词词组: on account of, because of, despite (in despite of), as a result of, due to之后只跟简单的名词词组。

## 173. (GWD-10-Q18)

Analyzing campaign expenditures, the media has had as a focus the high costs and low ethics of campaign finance, but they have generally overlooked the cost of actually administering elections, which includes facilities, transport, printing, staffing, and technology.

- A. Analyzing campaign expenditures, the media has had as a focus  
 B. Analyses of campaign expenditures by the media has been focused on  
 C. In analyzing campaign expenditures, the media have focused on  
 D. Media analyses of campaign expenditures have had as a focus  
 E. In their analysis of campaign expenditures, the media has been focusing on

题目释义: In analyzing..., the media have focused on ..., but they have overlooked....

句子主语, the media 是复数形式, 谓语动词focus的完成时态, 接but引导的转折句, 主语they, 指代the media, 谓语overlook的完成时态。But的前后形式一致, 平行对称。

考点:

主谓一致, 简洁有效

- Media在GMAT中不做集合名词, 而是medium的复数, 故谓语动词需用复数。

2. 现在分词在句首，其逻辑主语应该和后面的主句主语一致。
3. 注意大平行。

### 选项分析:

- (A) analyzing表示同时发生，与主句的has had表示现时已经完结不一致；media是复数形式，原型是medium，has主谓不一致错误；has had sth. as a focus(sth.在此因为过长而后置)表达wordy,可以直接使用focus的动词形式
- (B) analyses谓语动词应该是复数形式，has使用错误；they指代analyses，而analyses是否可以focus和overlook，仍需等待GMAT进一步阐明家规(详见题后类似题链接)
- (C) Correct；从形合的角度来看，focus和overlook都是主动名词前后对应，而have则是表明特性，所以用focus更为合适
- (D) has had sth. as a focus(sth.在此因为过长而后置)表达wordy，可以直接使用focus的动词形式；they指代analyses，而analyses是否可以focus和overlook，仍需等待GMAT进一步阐明家规(详见题后类似题链接)
- (E) media是复数形式，原型是medium，has使用错误，主谓不一致；has been focusing on，没有必要使用完成进行时，它不是一段时间内持续进行的事儿，题目中没有相关的时态标志词，且根据but前后时态对称也应该用现在完成时

### 补充说明

1. The media = all the organizations, such as television, radio, and newspapers, that provide news and information for the public, or the people who do this work
2. windmaple: Speaking of plurals, [index] 's is definitely an outlier  
做目录的时候是indexes，做下标的时候是indices。

### 类似题链接:

- 大全447. It may be that by focusing primarily on a patient's mental condition and on vague and often very speculative psychodynamic factors, predications about the patient's future behavior decrease in accuracy.
- (A) predications about the patient's future behavior decrease in accuracy
- (B) mental health professionals lessen the accuracy of their predications about the patient's future behavior
- (C) the accuracy of predications about the patient's future behavior lessens
- (D) a decrease in accuracy is seen in predications about the patient's future behavior can be predicted less accurately
- (E) the patient's future behavior can be predicted less accurately

Key: B focus的逻辑主语

仅有B中Professionals作为people才能够行使focus的动作。A中predication无法focus，故排除。

关于此prep2-173题的B，D选项中they指代analyses是否正确：

日常英语中analysis, report可以行使focus, overlook，但是如果GMAT中可以的话，D选项语法上也就没有correctiveness错误了，而且包括本题后的“类似题链接”中A选项的排除理由即predications无法行使focus错误。但predications与analyses终究不同，一个是预测（google中基本没有搜索结果），一个是分析（google里，report, analysis与focus/focuses的搭配有上百万的结果），所以或许173题的D选项确实就那么一个ineffectiv point。综上，analyses是否可以focus和overlook，仍需等待GMAT进一步阐明家规。

## 174. (GWD-30-Q30)

An exceptionally literate people, more Icelanders publish books per capita than do the people of any other nation.

- A. more Icelanders publish books per capita than do the people of
- B. more Icelandic books are published by Icelanders per capita than by the people of
- C. Icelanders publish more books per capita than do the people of
- D. Iceland's per capita publication of books is higher than that by
- E. the per capita publication of Icelandic books is higher than that in

题目释义： Icelanders publish more books than do the people of....

主语是Icelanders，谓语publish，后接more than的比较结构，补出助动词，避免引起相对于publish book，published了更多any other nation的错误。An exceptionally literate people作为同位语，决定了紧跟其的主语需要和people含义对应，逻辑对等。

考点：

逻辑表达，同位语

- 1) 同位语前后的对象必须概念对等。
- 2) 比较，less/more adj ... than...，比较对象要对等，补出助动词以避免产生歧义，介系词不可省略，常见的错误用法有：缺少助动词；补出的助动词与前面不一致。
- 3) per capita可做adj.，也可以做adv.。

选项分析：

- (A) 逻辑意思错误，应该是per capita（每个人头）出版的书多，而不是更多的人出版书；同时应该用more books...per capita，用了more icelander...per capita显然不对
- (B) 变成by Icelanders per capita than by the people of的比较，逻辑意思变为更多Icelandic的书是由其他国家的人出版的，改变原义
- (C) Correct；不论同位语，还是比较结构都很合理
- (D) people与publication不能构成同位语关系；that指代per capita publication，比较对象上没有问题；by结构与前面的结构不平行。
- (E) people与publication不能构成同位语关系；“书的人均出版量”概念上很荒谬；that指代per capita publication，than后面则是per capita publication in any other nation “他国的人均出版量”，概念上与“某国的人均出版量”并不成对比，“他国的人均出版量”或许包括其他国家的人在该国的出版物（类似GDP与GNP区别）

类似题链接：

- 1. 关于that指代per capita publication而不仅仅指代publication，一道相似的题目：

大全177：

Bihar is India's poorest state, with an annual per capita income of \$111, lower than in the most impoverished countries of the world.

- (A) lower than in
- (B) lower than that of
- (C) and lower than that of
- (D) which is lower than in



(E) which is lower than it is in

解析：从比较对象，和简洁性考虑只有B正确，其中that指代的是annual per capita income。That是中心词指代，说明annual per capita都是属于中心词不可缺少的部分。

### 补充说明：

替代词 one, ones, that, those 在比较结构中的用法辨析—摘自专八翻译教程

在比较结构中，为了避免重复，常用替代词替代名词词组或它的中心词（noun phrase head）。可以这样用的替代词常用的且较难掌握的有 one, ones, that 和 those。

#### I. 替代词 one 和 ones 的用法：

1. one 只能替代单数名词，one 的复数形式 ones 只能替代复数名词。例如：  
*My child doesn't like this book. Show her a more interesting one.*
2. 替代词 one 或 ones 必须带有一个限定或修饰词，它们和所替代的名词中心词所指不一定是同一对象，这是替代词 one 或 ones 在用法上的一个重要特征。例如：  
*I don't like this book. I'd like a more interesting one.*
3. 当替代词 one 或 ones 带有后置修饰语时，它们前面总有定冠词。例如：  
*Our new cassette is more expensive than the one we had before.*
4. 当替代词 one 或 ones 在形容词比较级、最高级以及某些限定词如 this, that, which 和序数词等之后，可以省略。例如：  
*This book is much better than that (one) .*
5. 替代词 one 或 ones 通常不用在物主代词和名词所有格之后。如不可说 my one (s), your one (s) Peter's one (s) 等等。one 或 ones 也不能用在 own 之后。  
但是，如果有了形容词，one (s) 可以和物主代词及名词所有格连用。如：  
*My cheap camera seems to be just as good as John's expensive one.*
6. one 作替代词时，在 of 前面不能用 the one 来表示所属关系和类似概念。如不可说：  
*\*He put down his gun and picked up the one of Henry.*  
该用一个所有格来表示 He picked up Henry's.
7. 当两个形容词表示对照的意思时，不能使用替代词 one。仅在其中一个形容词后加上名词即可。  
如：  
*Don't praise the younger child in the presence of the elder.*
8. 替代词 one 如果不带任何前置修饰语，即它的前面既没有限定词，又没有形容词时，便不是替代名词词组的中心词，而是替代整个名词词组。这时，one=a+单数名词。例如：  
*A cake made of wheat costs less than one made of rice. (one =a cake)*  
one 的这种用法是泛指同类事物中的任何一个，相当于一个不定冠词，因此它没有复数形式。要泛指复数事物，只能用 some。例如：  
*Here are a few apples. Would you like some (=some of them) ?*

#### 1. II. 替代词that和those的用法：

1. that和those通常用作指使代词，也可用作替代词。它们总是伴随着限定性的后置修饰语，分别等于the one 和 the ones。例如：  
*The houses of the rich are generally larger than those of the poor.*
2. that也可替代不可数名词，但是 the one则不能。例如：  
*The resistance of a thicker wire is less than that of a thin one.*  
以上两例中的that都不能换成the one。
3. that作替代词，只能指物，不能指人。those作替代词，既可指物，也可指人。例如：
4. *The blonde girl I saw was older than the one you were dancing with.*



该句中的the one不能换成that。

- 5.that用作替代词和它所替代的名词词组的中心词的“数”可以不一致。替代单数名词时，只替代“the + 单数名词”，不可替代“a + 单数名词”。例如：

*The song by Schubert is more tuneful than that by Britain.* (that=the song. song为可数名词。)

请注意，这里说的that只替代“the + 单数名词”，不可替代“a + 单数名词”，系指that在句子中实际的作用，并非要求它在句子中所代表的前面出现的词组必须是“the + 单数名词”。例如：

*In those days they lived a life worse than that of a beast of burden.*

在该句中，前面出现的词组为a life，但that替代的却是the life。

that作为替代词，它不能用于零关系分句（即没有关系代词的定语从句）之前。例如：

*The problem confronting us today is not dissimilar from that which the nation confronted in the 1930s.*

## 175. (GWD-9-Q3)

Because of wireless service costs plummeting in the last year, and as mobile phones are increasingly common, many people now using their mobile phones to make calls across a wide region at night and on weekends, when numerous wireless companies provide unlimited airtime for a relatively small monthly fee.

- A. Because of wireless service costs plummeting in the last year, and as mobile phones are increasingly common, many people
- B. As the cost of wireless service plummeted in the last year and as mobile phones became increasingly common, many people
- C. In the last year, with the cost of wireless service plummeting, and mobile phones have become increasingly common, there are many people
- D. With the cost of wireless service plummeting in the last year and mobile phones becoming increasingly common, many people are
- E. While the cost of wireless service has plummeted in the last year and mobile phones are increasingly common, many people are

题目释义：With ....., many people are now using.....,when

With引导独立主格结构作原因状语，主语many people,谓语use的进行时态,when引导时间状语修饰谓语动词。

### 考点：

题目释义

- 1) 在主从复杂句子中要注意主句和从句的主谓结构是否齐全，常见的错误选项是缺少主句谓语。

### 选项分析：

- (A) and前后的分句结构都不完整；because of和as不平行对称；because of后面核心词只有costs，无法表达出完整含义，awkward。
- (B) 缺少主谓成分，句子结构不完整；in the last year通常与现在完成时搭配；未划线部分的provide用的是现在一般现在时，则as mobile phones became increasingly common中，became应该用一般现在时；两个as引导的原因状语从句并列
- (C) and前后成分不平行；and后面句子run-on的错误；此处there be句型不及主谓结构更有效，wordy；in the

- last year提前, 从仅修饰the cost of wireless service plummeted变为修饰整句话, 造成逻辑错误
- (D) Correct; with可以表示原因, 与as含义相似(见补充说明); 注意become和increasingly并不重复, increasingly只是表达了more and more的含义, become与more常搭配使用
- (E) while引导的从句要与主句发生在同一时间, 可是wireless service has plummeted与主句不是同一时间发生的, 用while错误, 而且用as表示原因或伴随更为合适

### 补充说明:

1. with是有"因为"的意思: (the following explanations are from Longman dictionary)  
释义: because of a situation that exists:  
*With John away there's more room in the house.*  
短语: with something doing something  
*I can't do my homework with all this noise going on.*
2. 注意in last与in the last的区别:  
e.g. : Did you see the game on TV last night? 昨天晚上  
e.g. : Interest in golf has grown rapidly in the last ten years. 最近十年  
再如大全242. Despite the recent election of a woman to the office of prime minister, the status of women in Pakistan is little changed from how it was in the last century.  
(A) is little changed from how it was  
(B) is a little change from how it was  
(C) has changed little  
(D) has changed little from how it has been  
(E) is little changed from the way it was  
Key: C. last 此处意思为"最近的"而不是"上一个", 否则就不必用the.

## 176. (GWD17-Q12)

Mauritius was a British colony for almost 200 years, excepting for the domains of administration and teaching, the English language was never really spoken on the island.

- A. excepting for
- B. except in
- C. but except in
- D. but excepting for
- E. with the exception of

题目释义: Mauritius was a British colony..., but except in the domains..., the English language.....

Mauritius 主语, a British colony 宾语, but连接转折分句, except + in the domains 介词短语, 修饰the English language was never really spoken on the island整个句子。

### 考点:

句子结构

- 1) 关于 excepting:

OG11 verbal review #13: *Excepting* usually appears in negative constructions;

excepting 多用于否定意义的句子: The use of *excepting* is considered by many people to be acceptable only after not, only, always, or without.

*Everyone helped, not excepting John*

*We must all obey the law, not [without] excepting the king.*

Elsewhere except is preferred: *Every country agreed to the proposal except (not excepting) Spain;*  
*He was well again except for (not excepting) a slight pain in his chest.*

### 选项分析:

- (A) 缺少连词,一句话中出现两个独立的句子; for the domains错误。
- (B) 缺少连词,一句话中出现两个独立的句子。
- (C) 正确。这里的in并不是与except连用,而是in the domains of. 意思是,排除这一领域....
- (D) excepting常用于否定句中, excepting是动词ing的形式,那么逻辑主语是language, 逻辑错误。
- (E) 缺少连词,一句话中出现两个独立的句子; with引导的从句有修饰前半句或者后半句的起义

### 补充说明

#### 关于Except的各种用法

1. except for: 用于非同类事物, 它的宾语与前述对象完全是两回事。  
例如: The room was very cold and, except for Jack, entirely empty.  
这个房间很阴冷, 而且除了杰克, 完全是空荡荡的。  
本句中, 前述对象是"房间", 而除去的对象是"Jack", 两者毫无关系。
2. except:指同一类事物的总体中除去一部分, 强调的是除去。  
例如: He gets up early every day except Sunday.  
除星期天外, 他每天早起。  
有时except与except for可以换用, 例如: Except for(=except) John, the whole class passed the test. 全班同学除约翰外, 全都通过了考试。  
\*: 1.2.在GMAT中不适用, GMAT中并不讲究except与except for的区别, 故删去。
3. except that表达的语意与except近似, 只是后面要跟从句。  
例: He has always been in good health except that he has had a slight headache in the past few days. 除了在过去几天里有些头痛之外, 他身体一直很好。
4. but:常可与 except 互换, 强调"不在其中"。  
例: Everyone attended the meeting but Mary.大家都出席了这次会议, 但玛丽不在其列。
5. besides:强调"除此之外, 还包括"。  
例: She can speak French and Japanese besides English.除英语外, 她还会讲法语和日语。
6. apart from:其含义主要依据上下文而定, 有时可与except换用, 有时可代替besides。  
例: Apart from the coat, the hat doesn't suit me.除价钱太贵, 这帽子也不适合我戴。

### 相关题目:

13. Except for a concert performance that the composer himself staged in 1911, Scott Joplin's ragtime opera " Tree monisha " was not produced until 1972, sixty-one years after its completion.
- (A) Except for a concert performance that the composer himself staged
  - (B) Except for a concert performance with the composer himself staging it
  - (C) Besides a concert performance being staged by the composer himself
  - (D) Excepting a concert performance that the composer himself staged

(E) With the exception of a concert performance with the staging done by the composer himself

Idiom + Rhetorical construction

This sentence requires attention to idiom and to conciseness. Except for is correctly followed by a noun, concert performance; that the composer staged himself is a clause that dearly and concisely describes the performance.

- A. In this sentence. the correct idiom is used in a clear and concise expression.
- B. With...it is an ungrammatical construction; staging suggests ongoing action rather than action completed in 1911.
- C. Being staged suggests ongoing rather than completed action; the passive voice is wordy and awkward.
- D. Excepting usually appears in negative constructions; it is not the correct idiom in this sentence.
- E. This sentence is awkward and wordy.

The correct answer is A.

## 177. (T-4-Q12)

For the farmer who takes care to keep them cool, providing them with high-energy feed, and milking them regularly, Holstein cows are producing an average of 2,275 gallons of milk each per year.

- A. providing them with high-energy feed, and milking them regularly, Holstein cows are producing
- B. providing them with high-energy feed, and milked regularly, the Holstein cow produces
- C. provided with high-energy feed, and milking them regularly, Holstein cows are producing
- D. provided with high-energy feed, and milked regularly, the Holstein cow produces
- E. provided with high-energy feed, and milked regularly, Holstein cows will produce

题目释义: For the farmer who ... to keep them cool, provided and milked..., Holstein cows will produce.....

cool, provided, milked三者并列做keep的宾语的补足语, for the farmers中的for为介词表原因。

### 考点:

句子结构, 指代一致

- 1) 要明确句子的主语, 找分词的逻辑主语时, 优先考虑句子的主语。同时注意修饰语与被修饰对象所构成的修饰关系是否符合逻辑含义。
- 2) "will + 动词原型"除了表示将来时, 还可以表示常常发生的事情。

### 选项分析:

- (A) providing和milking的形式是在做伴随状语修饰keep, 逻辑上错误; 无理由使用are producing进行时态, native speakers of english will recognize "are producing" at once as awkward.
- (B) providing与另外两个成分不平行; 指代不一致, 前面用的them, 对应复数形式, 所以不应该是the holstein cow; 注意也不能说成the Holstein cows, 因为是泛指牛, 所以不应该加冠词。
- (C) milking与另外两个成分不平行; "are producing"awkward.
- (D) 指代不一致, 前面用的them, 对应复数形式, 所以不应该是the holstein cow.
- (E) Correct; 调整句子语序: Provided with high-energy feed, and miked regularly, Holstein cows will produce an average of 2,275 gallons of mild each per year for the farmer who takes care to keep them

cool。

## 178. (GWD-1-Q21)

That twenty-one ceramic dog figurines were discovered during the excavating of a 1,000-year-old Hohokam village in Tempe, Arizona, has nearly doubled the number of these artifacts known to exist.

- A. That twenty-one ceramic dog figurines were discovered during the excavating
- B. Twenty-one ceramic dog figurines discovered at the excavation
- C. Discovering twenty-one ceramic dog figurines at the excavating
- D. Ceramic dog figurines, twenty-one of which were discovered during excavating
- E. The discovery of twenty-one ceramic dog figurines during the excavation

题目释义: The discovery ....has doubled the number of...

### 考点:

逻辑表达

- 1) 名词的表达形式, 如果动词本身有名词表达式, 则不用+ing的形式表示名词; 同时, 动名词强调动作, 只能和动名词并列, 不能和强调结果的名词并列。
- 2) 注意逻辑表达是否合理。

### 选项分析:

- (A) excavating不好, 在表达一件已经完成的事情的时候, 除非这个动词没有-tion的形式, 一般都用-tion的形式, (如excavation), 而不用doing的形式(如excavating), doing强调动作; that引导名词性从句逻辑和语法上都没有什么问题, 只是不够简洁。
- (B) 主谓不一致, 如果figurines做主语, 在未划线部分的谓语动词has应为复数。
- (C) discovering→discovery; excavating→excavation
- (D) 用非限定性定语从句修饰, 改变原句含义; excavating→excavation
- (E) Correct; discovery可以作double的主语. 参见OG10-49题

### 相关题目:

49. The cameras of the Voyager II spacecraft detected six small, previously unseen moons circling Uranus, which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known as orbiting the distant planet.

- (A) which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known as orbiting
- (B) doubling to twelve the number of satellites now known to orbit
- (C) which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known in orbit around
- (D) doubling to twelve the number of satellites now known as orbiting
- (E) which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known that orbit

The pronoun which should be used to refer to a previously mentioned noun, not to the idea expressed in an entire clause. In A, C, and E, which seems to refer to a vague concept involving the detection of moons, but there is no specific noun, such as detection, to which it can refer. Also in E, the use of the phrasing the number... now known that orbit is ungrammatical and unclear. B and D use the correct participial form, doubling, to modify the preceding clause, but D, like A, uses known as orbiting rather than known to orbit, a phrase that is more idiomatic in context. B, therefore, is the best answer.

## 179. (GWD-9-Q15) (OG12-36)

Dressed as a man and using the name Robert Shurtleff, Deborah Sampson, the first woman to draw a soldier's pension, joined the Continental Army in 1782 at the age of 22, was injured three times, and was discharged in 1783 because she had become too ill to serve.

- A. 22, was injured three times, and was discharged in 1783 because she had become
- B. 22, was injured three times, while being discharged in 1783 because she had become
- C. 22 and was injured three times, and discharged in 1783, being
- D. 22, injured three times, and was discharged in 1783 because she was
- E. 22, having been injured three times and discharged in 1783, being

题目释义：Deborah Sampson...joined..., was injured ..., and was discharged....because she had become .....

考点：

平行结构；逻辑含义

- 1) 过去时用于描述过去发生的事件，过去完成时用于描述过去某一时点或时间之前发生并完成的事件。过去完成时的使用首先要有明确的时间点进行提示，第二要合理的体现出“已经完成”的含义。
- 2) 当并列的短语中都包含is/was/were时，只有当其表示相同意义，即都为be动词或助动词时，才可省略。

选项分析：

- (A) Correct；需要找一个joined..., was injured..., and was discharged....的平行结构，只有此选项符合要求；使用过去完成时表明了she become too ill to serve 是发生在was discharged in 1783之前；she become too ill to serve 就是仅修饰最后半个句子，所以作者在这里特意用逗号把后半句子和前面区分开为了避免歧义，because状从修饰的只是最后的动作，所以放在最后。
- (B) was discharged与was injured时间不是发生在同一时间，使用while时间状语错误，同时破坏句子平行结构；being使用多余，while being构成了被动语态的过去进行时态，这个动作应该是一个过去式动词。
- (C) 第一个and多余，应改为逗号；discharge应该使用被动语态；being现在分词作状语修饰discharged表伴随结果，逻辑不合理。
- (D) 动词并列，injured应该用被动，前要补出was才能与joined和was discharged并列；because she was中用了一般过去时也是可以的。
- (E) 用了having been injured...and discharged做前面主句的伴随状语，表明be injured and discharged发生在joined之前，逻辑错误；and前面没有逗号隔开使得in 1783的修饰对象改变，原文是在1783年退役，现在是被伤了3次及退役都发生在1783，同时being修饰的对象把be injured也包括了进去。

补充说明

OG12-36解释：

Parallelism; Logical predication

This sentence introduces Deborah Sampson with a description of Sampson when she first enlisted, and goes on to describe her career in the Continental Army. The information about her historical significance interrupts the chronological flow of the sentence and must therefore be set off with commas. The sequence of events that marks her career must be presented as a parallel series of items.

- A. Correct. The phrase that describes Deborah Sampson as the first woman to draw a soldier's pension intervenes between the subject and predicate of the main verb and thus is appropriately set off with



commas; the three verbs in the main clause are in parallel form.

- B. While being ... indicates that Sampson was injured at the same time she was discharged from the Army.
- C. Discharged should be in passive voice—was discharged—because Sampson did not do this herself.
- D. Injured needs to be in passive voice.
- E. having been injured ... indicates that all Sampson's injuries as well as her discharge occurred in 1783.

## 180. (GWD-11-39)

When working with overseas clients, an understanding of cultural norms is at least as important as grasping the pivotal business issues for the global manager.

- A. When working with overseas clients, an understanding of cultural norms is at least as important as grasping the pivotal business issues for the global manager.
- B. When they work with overseas clients, understanding cultural norms is at least of equal importance to the global manager as grasping the pivotal business issues.
- C. For global managers working with overseas clients, understanding cultural norms is at least as important as grasping the pivotal business issues.
- D. For global managers working with overseas clients, an understanding of cultural norms is at least as important to them as that they grasp the pivotal business issues.
- E. Global managers working with overseas clients find an understanding of cultural norms to be equally important as grasping the pivotal business issues.

题目释义: For managers ..., understanding ... is at least as... as grasping .....

### 考点:

主谓一致 平行对称 (Parallelism)

- 1. as...as引导的平行结构中, 每个平行成分要概念对等, 形式平行
- 2. 状语从句的省略:
  - a) 正确形式:  
表示时间/条件/转折/让步的连词(when/while/if/unless/although/even though/even if) + 形容词短语/-ing 短语/-ed 短语  
(逻辑主语等于句子主语) (所以 when a child/ when children 是错的; if + n.也是错的)
  - b) 错误形式:表示时间/条件/转折的连词 + 介词短语/名词短语 (although just inside the orbit of Jupiter 是错的)(OG10-69)
  - c) 特殊情况:once 可以加介词短语/名词短语; whatever 可以加名词短语
  - d) 状语从句省略的条件:  
第一点是毫无疑问的: 逻辑主语等于句子主语  
第二点也是必须的: 从句的谓语必需是be (没要求主句谓语也必须是be! , 换句话说可以看成是省略了一个be), 且从句主语和谓语要么同省, 要么同留。

### 选项分析:

- (A) when working的逻辑主语是主句主语an understanding, 错误; understanding做名词意为“理解”, 不同于做动名词时的“了解”, 用名词的含义不符合语境; at least as...as比较结构前后对象不对等,

前面是an understanding名词，后面是grasping现在分词。

- (B) when working的逻辑主语是主句主语an understanding，逻辑不匹配；they无明确指代对象，逻辑上指代manager，但是manager是单数；as...as比较结构中at least后面缺少as；
- (C) Correct；understanding和grasping完美对称，at least as ... as结构完整
- (D) to them冗余，与句首的for global managers重复；understanding做名词意为“理解”，不同于做动名词时的“了解”，用名词的含义不符合语境，且an understanding与后面的that从句形式上不平行，that从句也过于复杂
- (E) equally important as不符合习惯；as ... as结构不完整；find引导的句子过于繁琐；understanding做名词意为“理解”，不同于做动名词时的“了解”，用名词的含义不符合语境；at least as...as比较结构前后对象不对等，前面是an understanding名词，后面是grasping动名词。

## 181. (GWD-24-38)

In January 1994 an oil barge ran aground off the coast of San Juan, Puerto Rico, leaking its cargo of 750,000 gallons into the ocean, while causing the pollution of the city's beaches.

- A. leaking its cargo of 750,000 gallons into the ocean, while causing the pollution of
- B. with its cargo of 750,000 gallons leaking into the ocean, and it polluted
- C. and its cargo of 750,000 gallons leaked into the ocean, polluting
- D. while it leaked its cargo of 750,000 gallons into the ocean and caused the pollution of
- E. so that its cargo of 750,000 gallons leaked into the ocean, and they were polluting

题目释义:...an oil barge ran aground, and its cargo leaked....., polluting

### 考点：

题目释义，逻辑表达

#### 1. while的用法：

while引导的从句：

- 1) 意思是“当...时”，放句首或句中
- 2) 意思是“转折对比contrast”时，多放在句中，也可以放在句首。while表示对比概念的时候，两个事物要是同时发生（但是while本身并没有at the same time的意思，所以while at the same time是可以prep 1-96）。
- 3) 意思是“虽然、尽管”（让步）时，多放在句首。（=although）
- 4) 表示条件，意为“只要”，其意思和用法相当于as long as。while可位于句首，也可位于句中。

#### 2. 现在分词的用法，现在分词在句中可用作表语、定语、状语、补语，如

- 1) 作表语:The situation is quite encouraging.
- 2) 用作定语:Do you know the girl sitting under the tree? She is a charming girl.
- 3) 状语:The students went out of the classroom,talking and laughing.
- 4) 补语:Don't keep us waiting for a long time.I heard him singing in the classroom.

在Gmat中，常见分词做定语及状语的结构。一点要注意的现在分词和过去分词不可以做句子主语（如果放在句首则要考虑是否倒装），动名词和不定式可以，动名词做主语往往表示一个概念，不定式表示一个概念或者一个即将发生的动作。

#### 3. 现在分词在句尾用逗号与主句隔开时，可以做伴随结果状语和伴随动作状语；当其在做伴随结果状语时，并没有逻辑主语（具体见本题后面补充说明）。

选项分析:

- A. leaking作为ran aground off的结果状语不如并列合理 (ran aground了不一定leaking); while causing中暗指被省略的causing的主语是barge, 逻辑错误, 而且用while来连接causing和前面分句的关系不合理(不管是引导时状、还是转折、还是让步、还是条件); causing the pollution不如直接polluting做结果状语表达有效;
- B. and后面的it指代barge错误, barge不能造成污染, 而是撞击并泄露的事才造成污染, 所以and两边的逻辑并列关系不成立。
- C. Correct。
- D. it leaked its cargo of 750,000 gallons表达累赘; caused的动作发者是barge逻辑上不合理, 应该是泄漏这件事情导致; 用while来表达前后分句的逻辑关系错误; caused the pollution of不简洁。
- E. they只能指代前面唯一的复数gallons, 但gallons只是一个单位, 无法导致污染, 逻辑含义错误(亦可解释为they无所指); 且so that前不应有逗号, 而且its cargo of 750,000 gallons leaked into the ocean并不是an oil barge ran aground off the coast of San Juan的必然结果, 所以逻辑上用so that连接不合适。

补充说明:

## 分词短语逻辑主语的判断

- a) 分词短语在句首作状语:逻辑主语=主句主语
- b) ing 分词短语在句尾:
- 表伴随动作/状态/功能,与句子谓语动作同时发生,逻辑主语=句子主语
  - 表伴随结果,整个句子是原因,导致分词动作产生,无逻辑主语.可以在分词前加 thus/thereby/in effect/in fact 等,也可以不加 (现在分词做状语表结果, OG154 和 259。)
- c) ed 分词短语在句尾,一般优先就近作定语,修饰名词[OG127]
- d) ing 分词和 ed 分词在句中: 优先作定语修饰就近的名词[OG191]
- e) 介词或介词短语+ing 分词: in addition to/in/by/without/besides+doing..., 句子
- 在句首,逻辑主语=句子主语
  - 在句尾,逻辑主语可能是句子主语也可能不是

## 关于分词修饰语的理解 – by tigercai qun

- 1.当过去分词在句末时, 不管有无逗号, 都是就近修饰名词;
- 2.现在分词在句末时, 无逗号是就近修饰的名词的定语;
- 3.当现在分词在句尾且前有逗号时,修饰邻近句子的主语,做主语的伴随状语或做句子的伴随结果.因此不能用句尾现在分词修饰前面句尾的名词. 所以 OG127 说 C 选项:"the phrase having been assigned... is uncertain in reference, making the sentence unclear."-->就是说这个现在分词本来是应该修饰前面的 employee 的,却变成了修饰主语 governments 了. (另外在 GMAT 里,having been done 的用法错误,应直接用 done)

避免上述错误的方法:所修饰的名词在句尾用定语从句修饰--OG127 正确选项 B (而不用加逗号的现在分词修饰.其实分词是定语从句的省略形式,在句中无逗号分词(注意是无逗号的,有逗号的在句中有歧义)就比定语从句简洁)还有 OG120 也是同样道理:修饰句尾名词,正确选项 A 用定语从句.E 选项的句尾现在分词错误.

- 4.当现在/过去分词在句中且前没有逗号,修饰前面紧邻名词;
- 5.当现在/过去分词在句中且前后都有逗号,有歧义:1)修饰前面紧邻的名词,2)向后修饰后面句子的主语.

这种结构在 GMAT 肯定错,如果修饰某句主语,则避免将该分词置于以名词结尾的句后.避免方式:1)用定语从句/介词短语明确修饰对象.2)可将分词提到句首,所修饰主语及所在句子紧跟其后-->形成句首分词修饰句子主语.见 OG179

6.在前面有多个名词如名词 1+介词+名词 2结构,而要用分词修饰名词 1 时,为避免歧义要重复名词 1 即用同位语结构:名词 1+介词+名词 2,名词 1+分词.见 OG208。

## 182. (GWD-18-Q17)

Rivaling the pyramids of Egypt or even the ancient cities of the Maya as an achievement, the army of terra-cotta warriors created to protect Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, in his afterlife is more than 2,000 years old and took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to complete them.

- A. took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to complete them
- B. took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to complete it
- C. took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to complete
- D. 700,000 artisans took more than 36 years to complete
- E. to complete them took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years

题目释义: the army is .... and took .... years to complete

### 考点:

题目释义, 指代一致

1. 不定式的用法: 当不定式修饰其逻辑宾语时, 如Can you give me some work to do? 不定式的后面是不能带宾语的。(具体不定式用法见补充说明)

2. Run-on sentence。

### 选项分析:

- (A) 当不定式修饰其逻辑宾语时, 不定式的后面是不能带宾语的: 这个句子里to complete做状语修饰动词took和其逻辑主语是the army of terra-cotta warriors, 所以其后面不能再带宾语; them与所指对象the army of terra-cotta warriors单复数不一致。
- (B) it必须省略, 原因如A。
- (C) Correct。
- (D) 700,000 artisans重新引出新的句子, and前缺少逗号, 形式上是造成了run-on sentence; 同时因为主语不一致, complete后面应该加宾语it来指代the army of terra-cotta warriors。
- (E) to complete提前使句式awkward, 常用习惯表达是sth. took sb. some time to do; them与所指对象the army of terra-cotta warriors单复数不一致。

### 类似题链接

OG12-61:

Rivaling the pyramids of Egypt or even the ancient cities of the Maya as an achievement, the army of terra-cotta warriors created to protect Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, in his afterlife is more than 2,000 years old and took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to complete.

- (A) the army of terra-cotta warriors created to protect Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, in his afterlife is more than 2,000 years old and took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to complete
- (B) Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, was protected in his afterlife by an army of terracotta warriors that was created more than 2,000 years ago by 700,000 artisans who took more than 36 years to complete it

- (C) it took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to create an army of terra-cotta warriors more than 2,000 years ago that would protect Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, in his afterlife
- (D) more than 2,000 years ago, 700,000 artisans worked more than 36 years to create an army of terra-cotta warriors to protect Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, in his afterlife
- (E) more than 36 years were needed to complete the army of terra-cotta warriors that 700,000 artisans created 2,000 years ago to protect Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, in his afterlife

Logical predication; Rhetorical construction

The opening modifier, *Rivaling the pyramids ...* describes *the army of terra-cotta warriors*, which must immediately follow the modifier. The placement of the predicates that follow is important; they must clarify two things about the army of terra-cotta warriors: how old it is and how long it took to complete. The clearest and most effective way to express these two assertions is as parallel verb phrases, *is more than 2,000 years old* and *took ... more than 36 years to complete*.

A Correct. The opening phrase correctly modifies the subject, *the army of terra-cotta warriors*; the placement of modifiers and predicates in the main clause makes the meaning of the sentence clear.

B Opening phrase is a dangling modifier because it does not describe the subject *Qin Shi Huang*; in addition, the sentence is awkward and unclear.

C Opening phrase is a dangling modifier because it does not describe the subject *it*; the sequence of information presented is confusing and unclear.

D Opening phrase is a dangling modifier because it does not describe the subject *700,000 artisans*.

E Opening phrase is a dangling modifier because it does not describe the subject *more than 36 years*.

The correct answer is A.

### 补充说明:

#### 1. 不定式做状语的含义:

- (1) 不定式常常作**目的状语、原因状语、结果状语**等。
- (2) 不定式作状语时，要注意不定式的逻辑主语应与句子的主语保持一致。

#### 2. 不定式做定语的含义:

- (1) 不定式在句中作定语，置于被修饰的**名词或代词**之后。如:

- ① The next train to arrive is from Washington.
- ② Have you anything to be taken to your sister?
- ③ Do you have anything to say on the question?
- ④ Would you please give me some paper to write on?
- ⑤ My wish to visit France has come true at last.

- (2) 不定式短语作定语和被修饰词之间表示以下关系:

- 1) 表示**将来**的动作(例①)。
- 2) 与被修饰词之间**有动宾关系**，如是不及物动词，则需加介词(例④)。
- 3) 与被修饰词之间有动宾关系，同时与**句中其它词**之间又有逻辑上的主谓关系时，尽管有被动含义，却仍用**主动语态**(例③)；如只有动宾关系，而与**句中其它词**无逻辑上的主谓关系，则需用**被动语态**(例②)。

## 183. (GWD-6-Q22)

Charles Lindbergh, for his attempt at a solo transatlantic flight, was very reluctant to have any extra weight on his plane, he therefore refused to carry even a pound of mail, despite being offered \$1,000 to do



- so.
- A. Charles Lindbergh, for his attempt at a solo transatlantic flight, was very reluctant to have any extra weight on his plane, he therefore
  - B. When Charles Lindbergh was attempting his solo transatlantic flight, being very reluctant to have any extra weight on his plane, he
  - C. Since he was very reluctant to carry any extra weight on his plane when he was attempting his solo transatlantic flight, so Charles Lindbergh
  - D. Being very reluctant to carry any extra weight on his plane when he attempted his solo transatlantic flight was the reason that Charles Lindbergh
  - E. Very reluctant to have any extra weight on his plane when he attempted his solo transatlantic flight, Charles Lindbergh

题目释义: Very reluctant to have any extra weight ....., Charles Lindbergh refused to ....., despite.....

主语是Charles Lindbergh, 形容词引导的不定式前置, 修饰主语, 谓语为refuse to do sth, despite引导的状态从句, 修饰谓语, 表转折。

### 考点:

句子结构

#### 1. Attempt的用法:

做及物动词时:

attempt to do sth.

attempt sth.

做名词时:

an attempt at (doing) sth.

an attempt to do sth. 但是不及attempt to do sth.简洁有效

### 选项分析:

- (A) 缺少连词, 两套主谓结构, 注意therefore是副词, 不能做连词用; for引出目的状语逻辑不够合理, 时间状语即可。
- (B) being多余; being very reluctant to引导的成分夹心修饰。
- (C) since和so语意重复, 且两句话两个连词错误。;
- (D) 句式结构复杂, clumsy&awkward。
- (E) Correct。

### 补充说明:

放下对despite的偏见: despite后面既可以跟n.+长修饰语, 也可以跟现在分词。

本题. Very reluctant to have any extra weight on his plane when he attempted his solo transatlantic flight, Charles Lindbergh refused to carry even a pound of mail, despite being offered \$1,000 to do so.

prep1-183. Despite recent increases in sales and cash flow that have propelled automobile companies' common stocks to new highs, several industry analysts expect automakers, in order to conserve cash, to be more conservative than they have been in setting dividends.

OG11-92. Despite protests from some waste-disposal companies, state health officials have ordered that the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches be measured and the results published.



prep2- 209. (GWD-10-Q21) Despite the growing number of people who purchase plane tickets online, airline executives are convinced that, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers to automatic teller machines, many travelers will still use travel agents.

## 184. (GWD-10-Q41) (OG12-48)

In 1713, Alexander Pope began his translation of the Iliad, a work that, taking him seven years until completion, and that literary critic Samuel Johnson, Pope's contemporary, pronounced the greatest translation in any language.

- A. his translation of the Iliad, a work that, taking him seven years until completion, and that literary critic Samuel Johnson, Pope's contemporary, pronounced
- B. his translation of the Iliad, a work that took him seven years to complete and that literary critic Samuel Johnson, Pope's contemporary, pronounced
- C. his translation of the Iliad, a work that had taken seven years to complete and that literary critic Samuel Johnson, Pope's contemporary, pronounced it as
- D. translating the Iliad, a work that took seven years until completion and that literary critic Samuel Johnson, Pope's contemporary, pronounced it as
- E. translating the Iliad, a work that had taken seven years to complete and literary critic Samuel Johnson, Pope's contemporary, pronounced it

题目释义： Alexander Pope began his translation ..., a work that .... and that....  
a work引导同位语从句，修饰the Iliad, that...and that...并列修饰work，第二个that引导的从句中，that(指代a work)做pronounced的宾语，the greatest translation...是宾补。

### 考点：

平行对称，逻辑表达

- 1. 逻辑表达，修饰同一对象的成分必须用连词连接使其平行，否则会产生修饰歧义。
- 2. 平行对称，出现连词and要注意句子的平行对象是否合理并且符合原句意思。
- 3. pronounce固定搭配: pronounce sb/sth sth/adj:  
e.g. ■ *The victim was pronounced dead on arrival.*  
■ *I now pronounce you man and wife.*
- 4. 不定式的用法，参照前面182题。

### 选项分析：

- (A) taking him seven years until completion做了插入语，使得a work that后面的that从句没有主干内容；take sb. some time until completion中，completion的动作发出者不明。
- (B) Correct; sth. that sb. pronounce sth.中pronounce的宾语that已经前置，同时也说明了定语从句先行词在定从中做宾语，在考虑平行、无歧义的情况下，有时需要补出关系代词。
- (C) 使用过去完成时态错误，过去完成时表达了had taken发生在began以前：“书在开始翻以前就被翻译好了”，很荒谬；take seven years to complete中take后面省略宾语him使得谁在complete不清楚，好像是指所有人；pronounce it as ...it多余，且固定搭配错误，pronounce sb/sth sth中没有as。
- (D) a work变成了同位修饰the Iliad，而不是the translation，错误；take后面省略宾语him使得谁在complete不清楚；until completion将take与complete的关系割裂，造成completion的动作发出者不明，同时使得

前面take seven years没有意义；pronounce it as ...it多余，且固定搭配错误，pronounce sb/sth sth中没有as。

- (E) a work变成了同位修饰the Iliad，而不是the translation，错误；使用过去完成时态错误，过去完成时表达了had taken发生在began以前：“书在开始翻以前就被翻译好了”，很荒谬；and后面并没有采用与前面that平行的方式，而是重新起了一个分句，使得句式awkward, weird&unclear。

### 补充说明：

OG12-48的解释：

Logical predication; Grammatical construction

Pope's translation of the *Iliad*, not the *Iliad* itself, took seven years to complete. The main point of the sentence is that Pope began this translation in 1713, and every other comment about it must be subordinated to that opening claim, in parallel relative clauses.

- A. *work that* ... requires a verb; without it, the sentence is a fragment.
- B. Correct. Pope's *translation* is described as *a work*, which is then described concisely in two dependent clauses.
- C. The pronoun *it* after *pronounced* is redundant, an ungrammatical reference to *a work*, which has already been referenced by the relative pronoun *that*. ungrammatical reference to *a work*, which has already been referenced by the relative pronoun *that*.
- D. The appositive phrase *a work* ... incorrectly refers to the *Iliad*, not Pope's translation.
- E. The appositive phrase *a work* ... incorrectly refers to the *Iliad*; the coordinating conjunction introduces inappropriate emphasis on Johnson's description, and the expression is awkward and unclear.

## 185. (GWD-8-Q41)

When drive-ins were at the height of their popularity in the late 1950s, some 4,000 existed in the United States, but today there are less than one-quarter that many.

- A. there are less than one-quarter that many
- B. there are fewer than one-quarter as many
- C. there are fewer than one-quarter of that amount
- D. the number is less than one-quarter the amount
- E. it is less than one-quarter of that amount

题目释义：when drive-ins were..., 4,000 existed in the United States, but today there are fewer than one-quarter as many.

### 考点：

比较结构，逻辑表达，句子结构

- 1. 4000这个数字不可能existed in the United States，且数字可以做代词，故4000指代了4000 drive-ins，后面要用复数形式的谓语动词。
- 2. amount的用法：GMAT里面AMOUNT的用法解释是：amount is for undifferentiated masses such as sand or water，即amount用于修饰不可分割的物体，即修饰不可数名词，因为4000 drive-ins是4000个不同的个体所以that amount不可以修饰4000。另外amount与less搭配
- 3. 比较。词组：less/fewer than X percent of Y，less或fewer的选用取决于Y是否可数，本题的比较对象是

drive-ins。既然全句比较的是可数名词，相应地，需要用are、fewer和many/number等与可数名词复数形式相一致的表述。

#### 4. as many的用法(摘自Longman):

as many=a number that is equal to another number →表示同样的数字

*They say the people of Los Angeles speak 12 languages and teach just as many in the schools.*

in as many days/weeks/games etc.

*A great trip! We visited five countries in as many days (=in five days).*

\*: "twice as many", "one-quarter as many", etc.都是非常常见的用法，记住这样的表达。

#### 选项分析:

- (A) one quarter加后面的部分应该是一个可数项，而less修饰不可数名词，且用less的话，前面要用there is，故用less错误；that many的表达unidiomatic。
- (B) Correcet; 补全省略即there are fewer than one-quarter as many (as there were at the height of their popularity in the late 1950s); fewer修饰可数名词正确；one-quarter在此做副词修饰as many，后面不用再加of，类似于twice as many/much as。
- (C) amount修饰不可数名词，不能用来修饰4,000 (drive-ins) 这个可数的量。
- (D) the number指代不清；the amount指代不清，只能修饰不可数名词；the number is less没有问题，less和smaller都可以修饰数字。
- (E) it没有指代对象；that amount指代4,000 drive-ins错，amount只能用于修饰不可数名词。

#### 补充说明:

1. 关于A选项中的that many还有一种解释：如果是that many，则不能直接跟在副词one-quarter后面，应该在that many前加上of，使得one-quarter作为代词身份出现：one-quarter of of that many。
2. D选项不看未划线部分，不考虑指代来说是没有问题的，the number is less than one-quarter the amount. one-quarter做为形容词/限定词来修饰the amount，中间并没有缺少of.但是amount的指向错了:4000 drive-ins是可数的。
3. 关于less, fewer, amount and number: (<http://www.english-for-students.com/Less-1.html>)

This is a vast subject. I will try to limit the *number* of words I expend on it so as not to use up too great an *amount* of space. The confusion between the two categories of words relating to amount and number is so pervasive that those of us who still distinguish between them constitute an endangered species; but if you want to avoid our ire, learn the difference. *Amount* words relate to quantities of things that are measured in bulk; *number* to things that can be counted.

In the second sentence above, it would have been improper to write "the amount of words" because words are discrete entities which can be counted, or numbered.

Here is a handy chart to distinguish the two categories of words:

amount	number
quantity	number
little	few
less	fewer
much	many

You can eat *fewer* cookies, but you drink *less* milk. If you eat too *many* cookies, people would probably think you've had too *much* dessert. If the thing being measured is being considered in countable units, then use *number* words. Even a substance which is considered in bulk can also be

measured by number of units. For instance, you shouldn't drink too *much* wine, but you should also avoid drinking too *many* glasses of wine. Note that here you are *counting glasses*. They can be numbered.

The most common mistake of this kind is to refer to an "amount" of people instead of a "*number*" of people.

Just to confuse things, "more" can be used either way: you can eat more cookies *and* drink more milk.

Exceptions to the less/fewer pattern are references to units of time and money, which are usually treated as amounts: less than an hour, less than five dollars. Only when you are referring to specific coins or bills would you use fewer: "I have fewer than five state quarters to go to make my collection complete."

## 186. (GWD-6-Q41)

The greatest road system built in the Americas prior to the arrival of Christopher Columbus was the Incan highway, which, over 2,500 miles long and extending from northern Ecuador through Peru to southern Chile.

- A. Columbus was the Incan highway, which, over 2,500 miles long and extending
- B. Columbus was the Incan highway, over 2,500 miles in length, and extended
- C. Columbus, the Incan highway, which was over 2,500 miles in length and extended
- D. Columbus, the Incan highway, being over 2,500 miles in length, was extended
- E. Columbus, the Incan highway was over 2,500 miles long, extending

题目释义: The greatest road system..., the Incan highway was over..., extending from...to...

### 考点:

句子结构, 逻辑表达

1. 句子结构, 有分句的较复杂句子, 要注意分句的主谓结构是否完整, 分句之间是否有正确的连词连接, 整个句子是否有主句, 常见的错误是只有从句无主句, 或者把形容词结构变成主句内容。
2. extend后面接adverb/preposition/distance时, 是不及物动词, 无被动语态, 如:

+ across/over/through etc

■ *The River Nile extends as far south as Lake Victoria.*

extend 100 km/30 yards etc (from sth)

■ *The shelf extends 20 cms from the bookcase.*

### 选项分析:

- (A) which引导的定语从句缺少谓语动词
- (B) extended变得与前面分句谓语was并列, 而逻辑上Incan highway多少长, 多少米并列修饰highway最合理; extend的主语变成the greatest road system, 显然"the greatest ... Columbus"都只是描述成分, 核心词应该是Incan highway, 所以the greatest road system作为extend的主语不合适
- (C) 整个句子缺少谓语动词; extended被动错句意变成了highway被延伸了, 实际上延伸是highway主动发出的动作; in length也是做定语不如long简洁, 虽然XXX miles in length的表达形式是正确的
- (D) being使用wordy; in length不如long简洁; extended被动形式错, 句意变成了highway被延长了,

应该是“一路延伸到某个长度”这个感觉

- (E) Correct; Extending做状语修饰主句; in length与long日常英语中表达长度时基本没有区别(GMAT中待定)

## 187. (GWD-1-Q32)

To develop more accurate population forecasts, demographers have to know a great deal more than now about the social and economic determinants of fertility.

- A. have to know a great deal more than now about the social and economic
- B. have to know a great deal more than they do now about the social and economical
- C. would have to know a great deal more than they do now about the social and economical
- D. would have to know a great deal more than they do now about the social and economic
- E. would have to know a great deal more than now about the social and economic

题目释义: To develop..., demographers would have to...more than now they do about...

### 考点:

比较结构

#### 1. 关于economic和economical

economic 是“经济上的”, economical是“节约的”。

1) economic [only before noun] PE relating to trade, industry, and the management of money

*Economic growth is slow.*

*the government's economic policy*

*Economic reform is needed.*

*In the current economic climate (=conditions), we must keep costs down*

2) economical =cheap or not wasteful.

### 选项分析:

- (A) a great deal与now比较(than后面只有一个成分now, 所以a great deal只有与其进行对比), 概念不对等→now作为状语没有与其平行的副词, 所以than后面需要有成分能够与a great deal平行, 一个好的解决方法是than后面补出主谓, 使than前后形成句子的平行, 补出谓语的原因是使比较对象没有歧义。
- (B) economic的意思是: relating to trade, industry, and the management of money, 而economical为便宜或节省的意思, 根据逻辑含义应该用economic。
- (C) economical使用错误。
- (D) Correct; 本句使用would have to还是have to都可以(详见补充说明)。
- (E) a great deal与now比较, 概念不对等。

### 补充说明:

1. would have to know是不很肯定的语气, 其表达的是have to do的内容只是一个假设, 并不是真的“必须”, 而have to表达的意思是, 要做的事情非常重要, “必须”去做。在本题中两种含义都合理, 因此没有必要做这样的区分。

类似题链接:

大全 10. A large rise in the number of housing starts in the coming year should boost new construction dollars by several billion dollars, making the construction industry's economic health much more robust than five years ago.

- (A) making the construction industry's economic health much more robust than five years ago
- (B) and make the construction industry's economic health much more robust than five years ago
- (C) making the construction industry's economic health much more robust than it was five years ago
- (D) to make the construction industry's economic health much more robust than five years ago
- (E) in making the construction industry's economic health much more robust than it as five years ago

Key: C

类似例句:

The animosity between those who regulate and those who are regulated has never been more pronounced than in recent debates over environmentalism and pollution control.

这个例句中 never 与 in recent debates 相对应。

## 188. (GWD-7-Q33)

The health benefits of tea have been the subject of much research; in addition to its possibilities for preventing and inhibiting some forms of cancer, the brewed leaves of Camellia sinensis may also play a role in reducing the risk of heart disease and stroke.

- A. in addition to its possibilities for preventing and inhibiting
- B. in addition to its possibilities to prevent or inhibit
- C. besides the possibility that it prevents and inhibits
- D. besides the possible preventing and inhibiting of
- E. besides possibly preventing or inhibiting

题目释义: besides possibly preventing or inhibiting ..., the leaves ..may also play a role in ...

考点:

逻辑表达, 指代一致, 固定搭配

1. preventing和inhibiting之间是用or还是and:

prevent: to stop something from happening, or stop someone from doing something

inhibit: to prevent something from growing or developing well

可以发现prevent和inhibit的关系就如destroy与damage的关系→程度不同。即prevent是阻止, 使不发生, 而inhibit是抑制, 即减少。所以不可能既完全阻止又减少, 更不可能先完全阻止后减少, 所以prevent and inhibit在逻辑意思上绝对错, 只能用prevent or inhibit。由此, 排除ACD, 再用its排除B即可。

2. Possibility的固定搭配:

possibility (that)

*There's always a possibility that he might go back to Seattle.*

possibility for/of (doing) something

*exciting possibilities for reducing costs*

*Archer began to explore the possibilities of opening a club in the city.*



错误搭配: possibility to do sth.

### 选项分析:

- (A) it指代错误, 不能指代复数名词brewed leaves, 有疑似指代subject的嫌疑;
- (B) possibility和to do的搭配错; it指代错误, 不能指代复数名词brewed leaves, 有疑似指代subject的嫌疑;
- (C) 同位语从句possibility that不如possibility of doing简洁; prevents and inhibits 不符合逻辑, 应改为or; it指代错误, 不能指代复数名词brewed leaves, 有疑似指代subject的嫌疑;
- (D) 用possible preventing不如possibly preventing; 和主句的in doing不能保持平行
- (E) Correct; preventing or inhibiting和主句的reducing保持平行(形合), 从这一点上可以马上排除其他选项, 而不用去考虑preventing和inhibiting之间是用or还是and

## 189. (GWD3-Q30) (旧Prep2-131)

Today's technology allows manufacturers to make small cars more fuel-efficient now than at any time in their production history.

- A. small cars more fuel-efficient now than at any time in their
- B. small cars that are more fuel-efficient than they were at any time in their
- C. small cars that are more fuel-efficient than those at any other time in
- D. more fuel-efficient small cars than those at any other time in their
- E. more fuel-efficient small cars now than at any time in

题目释义: Today's technology allows ... to...

### 考点:

比较结构, 逻辑表达

1. 注意more + adj. + n.的结构, 往往都有修饰歧义, 因为more可以做形容词也可以做副词, 不知more是修饰adj., 还是修饰n.

如more fuel-efficient small cars可能有下面两种意思:

- ✧ more [fuel-efficient small cars]: 词组的核心意思是更多的车, 而这些车是经济省油的
- ✧ [more fuel-efficient] small cars: 更经济省油的小车

### 选项分析:

- (A) 比较的是时间状语, 比较对象变成now和at any time, 现代科技能使小车“在现在比在过去”省油, 语义存在逻辑错误; today和Now重复; at any time没有将自身排除在外, 应为any other time; their指代不明, 逻辑上指代cars, 可语法上更倾向于指代manufacturers。
- (B) that are more fuel-efficient虽然表达比较繁复, 但使意思清楚, 没有歧义; they指代cars that are more fuel-efficient(包括small cars的修饰词), 表达了前后是同一批cars, 既出现在现在, 还要出现在任何生产史的阶段, 应该用those来指代前面的cars(those为核心词指代); at any time没有将自身排除在外, 应为any other time; their指代不明同A。
- (C) Correct; that are more fuel-efficient虽然表达比较繁复, 但使意思清楚, 没有歧义; those合理的指代了cars, 使比较对象对等; at any other time排除了比较的另一段—today, 合理; 该题目句子合理的意思应该是, 现在造出的车, 比汽车生产史上其它任何时候造出来的车要更省油; 比如说, 2005年造出来的车子比2004年造出来的车子省油。而不是某一既定的车子在现在比在过去省油, 打个比方说, 不

应该是某辆车A在2005年比在它在2004年省油。在构造这个句子时，我们一定要注意这一点，避免形成类似的歧义/逻辑错误。避免这种错误的方法在于，保证句子是名词或代词cars/those之间的比较，而不是表时间的副词或介宾语词组的比较。small cars that are more fuel-efficient than...这种定语从句结构是没有歧义的。

- (D) more fuel-efficient small cars造成adj修饰歧义：more既可修饰fuel-efficient，也可修饰cars；their问题同A。
- (E) more fuel-efficient small cars造成adj修饰歧义：more既可修饰fuel-efficient，也可修饰cars；比较对象变成now和at any time；at any time没有将自身排除在外，应为any other time。

## 190. (GWD-28-Q24)

Until the passage of the Piracy and Counterfeiting Amendments Act in 1982, a first-time charge of copyright infringement was merely a misdemeanor charge, federal prosecutors being unlikely in pursuing criminal copyright infringers, while offenders were subject to relatively small penalties.

- A. charge, federal prosecutors being unlikely in pursuing criminal copyright infringers, while offenders were
- B. charge, with federal prosecutors who were unlikely to pursue criminal copyright infringers, offenders being
- C. charge, federal prosecutors unlikely to pursue criminal copyright infringers, while offenders were
- D. charge; therefore, federal prosecutors were unlikely in pursuing criminal copyright infringers and offenders being
- E. charge; therefore, federal prosecutors were unlikely to pursue criminal copyright infringers, and offenders were

题目释义： a first-time charge was merely a misdemeanor charge; therefore, federal prosecutors were unlikely to pursue...., and offenders were subject to ....

“盗版仅仅是不良行为；所以检察官不怎么会追究侵权者，而盗版人所受的处罚也很少”

### 考点：

句子结构，逻辑表达

1. 独立主格结构做伴随状语：独立主格结构是由一个名词或代词（作为该短语结构的逻辑主语），加上一个分词、形容词、副词、动词不定式或介词短语（作为该短语结构的逻辑谓语）构成。

独立主格结构放在句首或句尾，起状语作用，表伴随原因、条件、状态等

- 1)一般独立主格,与主句形成松散的逻辑关系,与主句描述动作、状态同时发生或存在,形式为:

n. + n.; n. + -ed/ing 形式; n. + 介词短语;n. + 形容词短语

- 2)with 型独立主格,与主句形成紧密的逻辑联系,形式为:

由“with+宾语+宾补”构成的复合结构，在句中可作状语，表示伴随，修饰邻近分句主语，with后面宾语为与主语相关的东西。这一结构中的宾语补足语 可由现在分词、过去分词、形容词、副词或介词短语等来充当。

例：Visitors to the park have often looked into the leafy canopy and seen monkeys sleeping on the branches, with arms and legs hanging like socks on a clothesline.

- 3)each型独立主格,强调句尾名词,形式为:

句子 + 复数名词结尾, each + 介词短语/形容词短语/-ed形式/-ing 形式。

**注意点：**独立主格并不包括“with + n. + 定语从句”和“n. + 定语从句”的形式，这个形式做的是非限定性修饰前面名词的定语，因为这个形式就相当于n, with + n., 或者是n., n. + that概括性同位语。

2. 同位语与独立主格最主要的区别在于：同位语描述的是事物的具体内容、特征，是一种解释；独立主格则是表示一种伴随状态，描述与所描述分句同步发生的事情。
3. 固定搭配：unlikely to do

### 选项分析：

- (A) being多余；unlikely in doing用法错误；while offenders were成了主句的时间状语从句，逻辑错误。
- (B) who were多余，应该省略；with federal prosecutors who were是定语结构，非限定性修饰就近的名词a misdemeanor charge, 逻辑不符；being多余；句式不好，独立主格修饰介词短语里面的从句，awkward；而且割裂了were unlikely to pursue criminal copyright infringers, offenders being subject to relatively small penalties与主句的关系。
- (C) 前后不是伴随关系，而应该是因果关系；while offenders were成了主句的时间状语从句，逻辑错误。
- (D) unlikely in doing用法错误；being错误，不应该用现在分词，而应该直接做谓语。
- (E) Correct

### 补充说明：

除了独立主格，还有以下成分可以做伴随状语：

一、分词短语做伴随状语：现在分词短语和过去分词短语都可以做伴随状语，现在分词短语表示与主句的主语在逻辑上有主谓关系，即表主动意义；而过去分词短语则表示与主句的主语在逻辑上是动宾关系，即被动意义。例如：

1. "Can't you read?" Mary said angrily pointing to the notice.
2. He sent me an e-mail hoping to get further information.
3. He hurried to the hall, followed by two guards.

二、形容词短语做伴随状语：

形容词短语做伴随状语时，通常表状态。例如：

1. Full of apologies, the manager approached us. 经理向我们走来，嘴里不停地说着抱歉的话。
2. He was too excited, unable to say a word. 他太激动了，一句话也说不出。
3. He stared at the footprint, full of fear. 他盯着脚印，满心恐惧。

三、单个形容词做伴随状语：单个形容词做伴随状语也表示状态，不表动作。例如：

1. He sat there, silent. 他一声不响地坐在那儿。
2. Breathless, she rushed in through the back door. 穿过后门，他气喘吁吁地冲了进来。
3. He went to bed, cold and hungry. 他又冷又饿地上床睡觉了。

## 191. (GWD-10-Q24)

For the last five years the Dutch economy has grown faster than Britain, France, or Germany, with the unemployment rate having remained well below that of the other three countries.

- A. Britain, France, or Germany, with the unemployment rate having remained
- B. have those of Britain, France, or Germany, and the unemployment rate remaining
- C. have Britain, France, and Germany, and the unemployment rate has remained
- D. the economy of Britain, France, and Germany, with the unemployment rate that has remained

E. the economies of Britain, France, and Germany, and the unemployment rate has remained

题目释义: the Dutch economy has grown faster than the economies ... ,and the unemployment rate has remained.....

### 考点:

平行对称, 比较对等

1. 比较句要求比较对象对等, 逻辑含义合理, 且句子没有歧义。
2. 关于指代: 前面是单数名词, 后面如果要指代, 只能用that, 如果需要表达复数意思, 那么只能重复这一名词的复数形式, 如economy-economies, 不能随意改成those, ets视之为指代错误。

(1)单数名词--- that/该名词复数形式

(2)复数名词--- those

### 选项分析:

- (A) 比较对象不对等, 将经济和国家进行比较; with的逻辑主语是Dutch economy, 错误; 现在完成时的进行时态having remained不可以做限定性修饰, 错误。
- (B) those没有所指代的词; and后不是一个整句, 没有谓语动词。
- (C) 比较对象不对等, 将经济和国家进行比较。
- (D) with的逻辑主语是Dutch economy, 错误。
- (E) Correct。

### 补充说明:

Aeoluseros对D的看法:

首先D最大的错误仅进在于后面with引导的伴随状语的逻辑主语Dutch economy错误, 其次:

个人认为用the economy of Britain, France, and Germany和the economies of Britain, France and Germany都是可以的。

在GMAT中曾经有一题提到过类似用法, 用的是单数:

A mixture of poems and short fiction, Jean Toomer's Cane has been called one of the three best novels ever written by a Black American—the others being Richard Wright's Native Son and Ralph Ellison's Invisible Man.

说明单数和复数的搭配并没有问题。

而本题后半句the unemployment rate has remained well below that of the other three countries中后面没有用unemployment rates, 按照规则比较结构中单复数不一致、时态不一致都是要重新补出的, 但是这里用了that, 说明后面用的是单数。并且GMAT不会那么荒谬地认为那三个国家公用一个unemployment rate, 所以说明仅使用that即已可以表达出三个国家各自的增长率。

而且在日常英语(非GMAT语境)中the economy of Britain, France and Germany和the economies of Britain, France and Germany都是可以的, 类似的有birds have four-chambered hearts和birds have a four-chambered heart都对, 因为根据常识不会有歧义。

## 192. (GWD-7-Q20)

The first trenches that were cut into a 500-acre site at Tell Hamoukar, Syria, have yielded strong evidence for centrally administered complex societies in northern regions of the Middle East that were arising

simultaneously with but independently of the more celebrated city-states of southern Mesopotamia, in what is now southern Iraq.

- A. that were cut into a 500-acre site at Tell Hamoukar, Syria, have yielded strong evidence for centrally administered complex societies in northern regions of the Middle East that were arising simultaneously with but
- B. that were cut into a 500-acre site at Tell Hamoukar, Syria, yields strong evidence that centrally administered complex societies in northern regions of the Middle East were arising simultaneously with but also
- C. having been cut into a 500-acre site at Tell Hamoukar, Syria, have yielded strong evidence that centrally administered complex societies in northern regions of the Middle East were arising simultaneously but
- D. cut into a 500-acre site at Tell Hamoukar, Syria, yields strong evidence of centrally administered complex societies in northern regions of the Middle East arising simultaneously but also
- E. cut into a 500-acre site at Tell Hamoukar, Syria, have yielded strong evidence that centrally administered complex societies in northern regions of the Middle East arose simultaneously with but

题目释义: The first trenches ..., Syria, have yielded strong evidence that ..... societies (...) arose simultaneously with but independently of the more celebrated city-states .....

simultaneously with与independently of在but前后, 构成并列。

在S的TH地方挖出来的500英亩的沟极好地证明了, 中央集权的复杂社会在中东的北部地区与更为著名的城邦南美索不达米亚(现在的南伊朗)同时但是独立地出现了。

### 考点:

逻辑表达, 平行对称, 简洁有效

1. 在表示发现、理论、现象等等的内容时, 用that引导宾语的同位语从句是比较好的结构。从句可以很清楚地说明现象、理论的内容, 避免大量的介系词、代词, 使句子简单清晰。
2. evidence后面要跟同位语从句来说明evidence的具体内容, 而evidence for后面是要跟某个theory或idea来表达evidence支持该theory或idea的。如"evidence FOR evolution"是指支持进化论的证据。
3. 过去进行时与一般过去时的对比:

过去进行时与一般过去时, 两者都表示过去发生的动作, 但过去进行时表示在过去某一特定的时间点或时间段正在进行的动作, 而一般过去时表示在过去时间完成的动作。

例如: I was typing a letter last night. 昨晚我在打一封信。(可能没打完)

I typed some letters last night. 我昨晚打了一些信。(已经打完)

4. 现在完成时时与一般现在时:

yield用现在完成时时与一般现在时都说得通, 但是含义不一样, 用have yield说明了the first trenches是过去发现的, 至今仍能提供证据, 而yield的话则是说明是现在发现的, 所以用have yield更合理

5. 固定搭配:

simultaneous(ly) with

independent(ly) of

### 选项分析:

- (A) that were cut不如直接done做后置定语简洁; evidence后面要跟同位语从句来说明evidence的具体内容, 而evidence for后面是要跟某个theory或idea来表达evidence支持该theory或idea的; were arising时态错,



好像在表达rise在那段时间之后还没有结束，应该用一般过去时更合理；第二个that就近修饰northern regions的歧义。

- (B) that were cut不如直接done做后置定语简洁；yields错，主谓一致trenches对应yield；were arising时态不对，应该是过去时；yield用现在完成时才合理；but (also)没有问题。
- (C) having been不能做限定性修饰，错误；were arising时态错；simultaneously后面要跟上with才能加名词，并且才与independently of平行。
- (D) 主谓一致yields错；simultaneously后面缺少with；yield用现在完成时才合理。
- (E) Correct。

### 193. (T-3-Q2)

As the honeybee's stinger is heavily barbed, staying where it is inserted, this results in the act of stinging causing the bee to sustain a fatal injury.

- A. As the honeybee's stinger is heavily barbed, staying where it is inserted, this results in the act of stinging causing
- B. As the heavily barbed stinger of the honeybee stays where it is inserted, with the result that the act of stinging causes
- C. The honeybee's stinger, heavily barbed and staying where it is inserted, results in the fact that the act of stinging causes
- D. The heavily barbed stinger of the honeybee stays where it is inserted, and results in the act of stinging causing
- E. The honeybee's stinger is heavily barbed and stays where it is inserted, with the result that the act of stinging causes

题目释义：The honeybee's stinger is...barbed and stays..., with the result that...

#### 考点：

逻辑表达，指代一致

- this ,that ,those 在表示指代时，通常需要补充名词，且不可指代前面整个句子的意思；
- 句子逻辑重心要合理。C和E的不同之处在于C的主干是Stinger...results in the fact that ... E的主干是Stinger is heavily barbed and stays where it is 这整个特征事实with the result that ... 关键在于是“蜇刺”导致了后面的结果，还是“蜇刺”的这些特点（heavily barbed, stay where it is）导致了后文的结果。很显然，E更合理。
- with the result that  
*Sara wasn't at school last week, with the result that she missed an important test.*  
→前半句说的整个事实导致了后面缺考的结果。
- result in: to make something happen ...  
*an accident that resulted in the death of two passengers*

#### 选项分析：

- (A) this不能指代前面这个句子的意思；result in +n.后面结构复杂，且无法表达出result的整体内容，awkward，不如直接result + that从句；分词引导的状语staying where it is inserted在句子中间，导致dangling modification，既可以向前修饰as引导的从句也可以向后修饰this引导的主句；



- (B) 句子结构不完整，没有主句；as引导的原因状语从句中因为heavily barbed是stays where it is inserted的原因，连词and可以表达暗含的因果，所以两个特征应该并列并以and连接最为合理。
- (C) 原题的意思是蜜蜂的刺倒勾并留在扎入的地方，这件事导致了后面的结果，这里的意思是蜜蜂刺本身导致了后面的事，逻辑不合理；staying where it is inserted做非限定性修饰，暗示了stinger无时无刻都是staying并insert的，很荒谬；results in the fact that the act of, wordy。
- (D) The heavily barbed stinger of the honeybee results in逻辑意义错误，同C，result应该用伴随状语来表示结果(可以用with the result that或现在分词引导的resulting that做伴随状语)。
- (E) Correct；重心明确，且with the result that的意思是“结果是，因此，从而”，如果是resulting that也可以。

### 补充说明：

#### 1. 背景知识：

为什么蜜蜂螫人后就会死掉：蜜蜂的螫针上有一些很尖的倒钩。蜜蜂螫人时，带倒钩的螫针，牢牢地扎在人的肌肉里而不能拔出。因此，蜜蜂只得留下螫针，撕尾离去。失掉了身上的螫针以后，蜜蜂很快就会死去。

## 194. (GWD-11-32)

Since 1975 so many people have been moving to Utah such that Mormons who were once 75 percent of the population are now only accounting for half of it.

- A. so many people have been moving to Utah such that Mormons who were once 75 percent of the population are now only accounting for half of it
- B. many people have been moving to Utah, so Mormons once 75 percent of the population are now accounting for only half
- C. that many people have been moving to Utah, such that the Mormons that were once 75 percent of the population are now accounting for only half of it
- D. many people have been moving to Utah such that the Mormons, who once represented 75 percent of the population, now only account for half
- E. so many people have been moving to Utah that the Mormons, who once represented 75 percent of the population, now account for only half

题目释义：so many people have been moving ... that the Mormons, who..., now account for  
Who非限定性定语从句作为插入语，审题时两个逗号间的部分可以暂时拿掉

### 考点：

固定搭配，平行对称

#### 1. 关于so...that...与such...that...

- (1) such...that表达的是强调含义，与so...that的含义不同(prepare 1-131)。
- (2) so...that后面不加情态动词表示结果，后面加情态动词表目的。
- (3) so...that不能修饰介词短语与名词，只能修饰动作。
- (4) so...that用来说明做某事的目的，所以其前面应该是“做某事”，而不能是介词短语。(GWD-30-170)
- (5) such + adj. + that错误，such必须修饰名词，可以是such+adj.+noun.+that。这里such表示of a kind。

#### 2. such that连用时的用法：

- (1) A rule of correspondence between two sets such that there is a unique element in the second set assigned to each element in the first set. (such 向前指代 a rule of ... sets)  
函数两组元素一一对应的规则，第一组中的每个元素在第二组中只有唯一的对应量
- (2) Her interest with him is such that she governs him absolutely. (such 指代 her interest)  
她对他的影响非常大，以至于完全控制了他。
- (3) The format of the meeting was such that everyone could ask a question. (such 指代 the format of the meeting) 会议安排好可让每个人都能提一个问题。
- (4) choose x and y such that  $x + y = 10$  (such 向前指代 x and y)

选项分析：

- (A) so和such that混用，so...such that错误；Mormons who were once 75 percent of the population中谓语动词使用错误，Mormons不是一个人数，所以谓语动词不能用were，而应该用represented；account用一般现在时表示某种事实，用进行时没有必要，反而累赘；it指代的不是population，而是整个名词短语75 percent of the population，错误。
- (B) 同位语前面需要逗号隔开：Mormons once 75 percent of the population are应该改为Mormons, once 75 percent of the population, are，但是同时用人口数量(once 75 percent of the population)来同位修饰人(Mormons)，概念上不能合理修饰；are now only accounting现在进行时没有必要；only account for half逻辑意思错误，only做副词时要紧跟修饰的词，并向后修饰，所以应该放在half前面；用so...来表示因果关系不合理，应该用so...that...来强调结果；
- (C) that引导的名词性从句做主语，是的逻辑含义不合理，而主谓不一致：that...are now accounting for only half of it，也即that出现在句首ungrammatical；such that中的such指代对象是many people还是Utah不清；Mormons that were once 75 percent of the population，摩门教徒=人口数，逻辑含义错误；关系代词that不能指代人，要用who，同时不应该使用限定性修饰，且that were wordy；are now only accounting现在进行时没有必要；it指代的不是population，而是整个名词短语75 percent of the population，错误。
- (D) such that使用错误同C；only位置错误同B；run-on sentence，句子有两个谓语动词：have been与account。
- (E) Correct；once represented和now account对应，75 percent of the population与only half对应。

## 195. (GWD-24-Q19)

In archaeology, there must be a balance between explanation of the value and workings of archaeology, revealing the mysteries of past and present cultures, and to promote respect for archaeological sites.

- A. between explanation of the value and workings of archaeology, revealing the mysteries of past and present cultures, and to promote
- B. among explaining the value and workings of archaeology, revealing the mysteries of past and present cultures, and promoting
- C. between explaining the value and workings of archaeology, the revealing of the mysteries of past and present cultures, and when promoting
- D. among explaining the value and workings of archaeology, the revelation of the mysteries of past and present cultures, and to promote
- E. between explaining archaeology's value and workings, in the revealing of the mysteries of past and present cultures, and in promoting

题目释义: there must be a balance among explainin....., revealing ....., and promoting....

在考古学中, 必须在解释考古的价值与运作方式, 揭示过去和现在文化的奥秘, 以及促进尊重考古遗址中寻求一种平行。

there be是倒装句型, 真正的主语是随后的名词词组a balance; 而explaining, revealing和promoting三个是动名词短语作宾语构成among引导的介宾短语。

### 考点:

平行对称,

1. between ...and 两者之间并列; among...and三者及以上;

### 选项分析:

A. Between...and使用错误, 三者以上并列用among; explanation, revealing, to promote三者形式不平行。

B. Correct.

C. Between...and使用错误, 三者以上并列用among; explaining, the revealing, when promoting不平行。

D. Among后面的三个成分形式不平行。

E. Between...and使用错误, 三者以上并列用among; Among后面的三个成分形式不平行。

## 196. (GWD-1-Q41)

Leaching, the recovery of copper from the drainage water of mines, as a method of the extraction of minerals, it was well established as early as the eighteenth century, but until about 25 years ago miners did not realize that bacteria take an active part in the process.

A. as a method of the extraction of minerals, it was well established

B. as a method of the extraction of minerals well established

C. was a well-established method of mineral extraction

D. was a well-established method of extracting mineral that was

E. had been a method of mineral extraction, well established

题目释义: Leaching, the recovery ..., was a well-established method..., but...miners did not realize that .....

Leaching主语, was谓语, a well-established method of mineral extraction表语, but引导转折分句, miners主语, did not realize谓语, that bacteria take an active part in the process宾语从句。过滤, 即从drainage water of mines中还原铜的方法, 早在18世纪就是一种矿物开采所行之有效的方法, 但直到约25年前, 矿工们还没有认识到细菌在这一过程中所发挥的积极作用。

### 考点:

句子结构, 简洁有效, 逻辑表达

1. 一个句子只能有一套主谓结构, 即一个主语, 一个谓语, 一个宾语(宾语从句)。

2. 完整的句子必须包含主语及谓语结构。

3. 过去完成时需要时间上的对比, 以表示过去的过去。

4. as early as不是比较, 而是规定时间范围的固定用法。

选项分析:

- (A) but前的分句有leaching、it两个主语，错误
- (B) but前的分句没有谓语
- (C) Correct; as early as the eighteenth century副词性短语修饰but前的分句
- (D) that可能指代method或mineral(根据逻辑含义选择指代对象)，但修饰method和mineral句子逻辑意思都不对
- (E) well established做非限定性修饰method逻辑含义错误，应该用限定性修饰来说明句子所提的method是早在18世纪就建立的那个，即去掉逗号；过去完成时使用错误

## 197. (GWD-1-Q16)

Soaring television costs accounted for more than half the spending in the presidential campaign of 1992, a greater proportion than it was in any previous election.

- A. a greater proportion than it was
- B. a greater proportion than
- C. a greater proportion than they have been
- D. which is greater than was so
- E. which is greater than it has been

题目释义: Soaring television costs accounted for ... half the spending in the presidential campaign of 1992, a greater proportion than in any previous election.

Soaring television costs主语，accounted for谓语，a greater proportion为同位语，修饰前面整个名词短语。

考点:

指代一致 (Agreement)

1. which就近指代名词，不能指代完整的一句话；
2. it在文中，会继承被指代对象的特性，业即本文中，it 如果指代 a great proportion或者 the spending，都继承了a great proportion或者 the spending 发生在presidential campaign of 1992的特性，造成比较的逻辑关系错误，要引以注意。
3. 比较对象的内容，时态关系，逻辑含义均要对等。

选项分析:

- (A) it指代的是a greater proportion整个短语，错误，应该用that来指代proportion，但是因为只是名词短语的比较，that可以省略而不带任何歧义。
- (B) Correct; 原句补完整: Soaring television costs accounted for more than half the spending in the presidential campaign of 1992, a greater proportion than (the proportion) (television costs had accounted for of the spending) in any previous election; 这个句子中只是单个名词(proportion)的比较，所以不需要考虑than后面补出主谓，只补出介词短语就够了，不用担心后面的介词短语in any previous election没有平行对象
- (C) 现在完成时使用错误，in any previous election说明应用过去完成时；they指代soaring television costs，使逻辑意义错误，比较结构需要比较对象对等，前者为a great proportion 是一个量词不能和具体的费用对比，而且其他的election不一定是soaring的；同时have been与前面的accounted for不平行，只要

也要用have done。

(D) Which不能指代前面整个idea; so用于省略重复的动作, 使用错误。

(E) Which不能指代前面整个idea; it指代不清, 且has been时态与后面的in any previous election不符。

### 类似例题链接:

OG10- 198. Although Napoleon's army entered Russia with far more supplies than they had in their previous campaigns, it had provisions for only twenty-four days.

- (A) they had in their previous campaigns
- (B) their previous campaigns had had
- (C) they had for any previous campaign
- (D) in their previous campaigns
- (E) for any previous campaign

If *than* is followed by a clause referring to *army*, the subject of that clause must be singular (*it*). Furthermore, the verb of that clause will need to be in the past perfect form (*had had*) because it refers to a time *before* the simple past of *entered*. Finally, the preposition *for* is more precise than *in* because supplies are gathered for an upcoming campaign. Choices A and C incorrectly use the plural *they* and the simple past *had*. Moreover, A uses the less precise *in*. Choices D and E wisely dispense with the full clause and use a simple prepositional phrase. D, however, uses the imprecise *in* and the plural *their*. Only E, the best choice, avoids all the errors mentioned above.

## 198. (GWD-18-Q31)

Between 1990 and 2000 the global economy grew more than it did during the 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture to 1950.

- A. Between 1990 and 2000 the global economy grew more than it did during the 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture
- B. Between 1990 and 2000 the growth of the global economy was more than that during 10,000 years, from when agriculture began
- C. The growth of the global economy between 1990 and 2000 exceeds that which had been for 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture
- D. The growth of the global economy between 1990 and 2000 exceeds what it has been for 10,000 years, from when agriculture began
- E. The growth of the global economy between 1990 and 2000 exceeded what it did for the 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture

题目释义: the global economy grew more than it did ....from ..to....

1990年至2000年全球经济增长量的超过了它在从农业开始到1950年10000年的增长量。

### 考点:

比较对等, 简洁有效

1) 比较对象的内容, 时态关系, 逻辑含义均要对等。注意代词指代。

选项分析:

- A. Correct; it完全指代the global economy, 并不特指1990到2000年之间的global economy
- B. the growth of sth. was不如sth. grew简洁; from when agriculture began to 1950的不如from the beginning of agriculture to 1950好(另有一待验证说法: from when错误, when前面接介词awkward); that指代错误, 无法指代the growth of the global economy整个短语, 只能指代growth; from when做非限定性修饰错误; 应该用during the 1000 years来特指那1000年
- C. that which had been用法awkward, 时态错误(一般过去时即可), 且that指代错误, 无法指代the growth of the global economy整个短语, 只能指代growth; for 1000 years错误, 应该在1000 years前加上定冠词以特指那1000年; exceeds时态错误, 应该用一般过去时(比如Shakespears was an English poet.也用一般过去时)
- D. exceeds时态错误, 应该用一般过去时; it指代the growth of the global economy between 1990 and 2000错误; 现在完成时使用错误, 应改为过去时态(一般过去时或过去完成时); for 1000 years错误, 应该在1000 years前加上定冠词以特指那1000年; from when做非限定性修饰语义错误
- E. it指代the growth of the global economy between 1990 and 2000错误; what it did含义错误, growth不会做任何事情; did没有所指代的动词

补充说明:

As 或than引导的**比较从句**中的省略原则(摘自白勇语法):

1. 比较从句谓语与主句位于相同, 可用do, did, does代替。
2. 比较从句联系动词be与主句联系动词be相同, 可以省略be, 也可以不省略。
3. 主语谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should) + verb”形式时, 比较从句往往省略verb, 保留助动词或情态动词。
4. 比较从句的主语和位于与主句的主语和谓语相同时, 可以全部省去, 常常保留作状语的介词短语或状语从句。
5. 比较从句的主语与主句主语相同, 可以省略。

类似例题链接:

Since 1990 the global economy has grown more than it did during the 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture to 1950.

- A) Since 1990 the global economy has grown more than it did during the 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture
- B) Since 1990 the growth of the global economy has been more than that during 10,000 years, from when agriculture began
- C) The growth of the global economy since 1990 exceeds that which had been for 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture
- D) The growth of the global economy since 1990 exceeds what it has been for 10,000 years, from when agriculture began
- E) The growth of the global economy since 1990 exceeds what it did for the 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture.

Key: A

## 199. (GWD-1-Q19)



Recently physicians have determined that stomach ulcers are not caused by stress, alcohol, or rich foods, but a bacterium that dwells in the mucous lining of the stomach.

- A. not caused by stress, alcohol, or rich foods, but
- B. not caused by stress, alcohol, or rich foods, but are by
- C. caused not by stress, alcohol, or rich foods, but by
- D. caused not by stress, alcohol, and rich foods, but
- E. caused not by stress, alcohol, and rich foods, but are by

**题目释义：**Recently physicians have determined that .... are caused not by ...,but by...

Recently physicians 主语，have determined 谓语，that 引导宾语从句，第二个that dwells in the mucous lining of the stomach 是做定语修饰前面的bacterium。最近医生已经确定，胃溃疡不是由压力，酒精，或者过多的食物引起的，而是由寄居在胃黏膜上的细菌造成的。

### 考点：

平行对称（简单题）

1) not by....but by...,注意否定句中不用and用or

### 选项分析：

- A. not caused by stress和but a bacterium不平行。
- B. not caused by stress和but are by a bacterium不平行。
- C. Correct.
- D. 否定句中要用or来表示“和”；not by stress和but a bacterium不平行。
- E. 否定句中要用or来表示“和”；not by stress和but are by a bacterium that不平行

## 200. (GWD-6-Q8)

Many financial experts believe that policy makers at the Federal Reserve, now viewing the economy as balanced between moderate growth and low inflation, are almost certain to leave interest rates unchanged for the foreseeable future.

- A. Reserve, now viewing the economy as balanced between moderate growth and low inflation, are
- B. Reserve, now viewing the economy to be balanced between that of moderate growth and low inflation and are
- C. Reserve who, now viewing the economy as balanced between moderate growth and low inflation, are
- D. Reserve, who now view the economy to be balanced between that of moderate growth and low inflation, will be
- E. Reserve, which now views the economy to be balanced between moderate growth and low inflation, is

**题目释义：**Many financial experts believe that policy makers..., now viewing..., are

### 考点：

逻辑表达(logical predication); 主谓一致(agreement); 题目释义 (Grammatical Construction)

1. 固定搭配: view sth. as sth. 而view sth. to be sth.错误。

选项分析:

- A. Correct; viewing做伴随; balanced后面省略的economy, view the economy as balanced economy.
- B. view sth as sth; between that of中的that无所指; and are没有并列对象; policy makers缺谓语。
- C. policy makers缺谓语动词; who做限定性修饰使得语义上不合理。
- D. view sth as sth; between that of中的that无所指; will be时态错误, be certain是发生在现在的动作。
- E. view sth as sth.; which就近修饰Reserve; is 应该改为are, 因为policy makers 是主语

## 201. (T-3-Q18)

Spanish poet Juan Ramón Jiménez, who won the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1956, so embarrassed in his later years by what he considered the excessive sentiment in the poems in his first two collections, he destroyed every copy he could find.

- A. so embarrassed in his later years by what he considered the excessive sentiment in the poems in his first two collections, he destroyed
- B. and was so embarrassed in his later years by what he considered as the excessive sentiment in the poems in his first two collections that he destroyed
- C. in his later years he was so embarrassed by what he considered as the excessive sentiment in the poems in his first two collections, destroying
- D. was so embarrassed in his later years by what he considered the excessive sentiment in the poems in his first two collections that he destroyed
- E. because he was so embarrassed in his later years by what he considered as the excessive sentiment in the poems in his first two collections, destroying

题目释义: Spanish poet Juan Ramón Jiménez,...,was so...that he destroyed...

考点:

句子结构 (Grammatical Construction)

- 1. so...that...固定搭配

选项分析:

- A. he destroyed前面的成分被悬挂; so...that 结构, 缺少that;
- B. and was无并列对象; consider sb/sth sth, 中间不能加as和to be。
- C. in his later years前面的成份被悬挂; consider sb/sth sth, 中间不能加as和to be; so...that结构不完整; destroying伴随对象不明确。
- D. Correct。
- E. 缺少谓语动词; consider sb/sth sth, 中间不能加as和to be; destroying伴随对象不明确。

补充说明:

目的状语从句和结果状语从句 - serendipityh

- 1) so/such...that...表示结果, 可以用在单一主谓结构中, 也可以用在复杂主谓结构中, 不用考虑逻辑主语。such 后一般不加抽象名词。

特别说明: so/such...as to...表示结果, 用于单一主谓结构中, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, 即句子主语可以执行as to 后动词的动作。such后一般不加抽象名词。

- 2) so that状语从句：从句中出现情态动词，so that表示目的；从句中没有出现情态动词，so that表示结果。  
such that状语从句；表示结果。so / such that 从句不用考虑逻辑主语。So that 不能修饰名词短语  
Such...that such 后加被修饰的名次  
特别说明：so as to 可以表示目的也可以表示结果，用于单一主谓结构中，逻辑主语等于句子主语，即句子主语可以执行as to后动词的动作。so as to修饰动词。so...as的搭配只用在否定句中，So...as to 后一般不加被动语态

## 202. (GWD-3-Q27)

Competition in the mid-nineteenth century by large western farms gradually caused farmers in Pennsylvania to turn to livestock raising, but before that it was predominantly grain-producing.

- A. Competition in the mid-nineteenth century by large western farms gradually caused farmers in Pennsylvania to turn to livestock raising, but before that it was predominantly grain-producing.  
B. Once predominantly a grain-producing state, competition in the mid-nineteenth century from large western farms gradually was causing Pennsylvania's farmers to turn to livestock raising.  
C. Pennsylvania's farmers were gradually caused to turn to livestock raising by competition from large western farms in the mid-nineteenth century, but before that it was predominantly a grain-producing state.  
D. It was once predominantly grain-producing, but competition in the mid-nineteenth century by large western farms was gradually causing Pennsylvania's farmers to turn to livestock raising.  
E. Pennsylvania was once a predominantly grain-producing state, but competition in the mid-nineteenth century from large western farms gradually caused the state's farmers to turn to livestock raising.

题目释义：Pennsylvania was once a state, but competition from sb...caused sb. to turn to...

### 考点：

逻辑表达( logical predication)

1. 习惯搭配：competition from sb./sth. 而competition by sb./sth.错误。
2. cause sb. to do sth.
3. livestock raising: 农牧业，畜禽养殖业

### 选项分析：

- A. competition from sb/sth; that不能指代整个句子；it指代competition有误。  
B. grain-producing state无法同位修饰competition，概念不同；cause用过去进行时错误，好像在说19世纪中叶那段时间cause还没有结束。  
C. that不能指代整个句子；it指代有误；前分句被动语态不好，累赘；in the mid-nineteenth century修饰了large western farms错误，应该紧跟competition。  
D. it指代competition不合理；competition from sb/sth; cause用过去进行时错误。  
E. Correct。

## 203. (GWD-9-Q26)

Growing evidence that coastal erosion occurs continuously, not in just such calamitous bursts like hurricanes, has led scientists and planners to urge a stringent new approach to limiting development along the nation's shoreline.

- A. coastal erosion occurs continuously, not in just such calamitous bursts like hurricanes, has
- B. coastal erosion occurs continuously, not just in calamitous bursts such as hurricanes, has
- C. coastal erosion is continuously occurring, not in just calamitous bursts like hurricanes, having
- D. there is continuous coastal erosion, not just in calamitous bursts such as hurricanes, which has
- E. there is continuous coastal erosion occurring, not in just such calamitous bursts like hurricanes, has

题目释义: growing evidence that...,..., has...

### 考点:

习惯用语

- 1. such as固定搭配; such... like搭配错误
- 2. there be用法

### 选项分析:

- A. such...as, 表示举例不能用like
- B. Correct。
- C. such...as, 表示举例不能用like; 缺少谓语动词; is continuously occurring, 现在进行时与continuously重复。
- D. 全句缺少谓语动词; 由于后面的has, 本句里面which是跳跃插入语修饰erosion的。
- E. such...as, 表示举例不能用like; occurring与there is矛盾, is occurring与continuous重复。

### 补充说明:

关于there be:

- 1. there be用于陈述事物客观存在。
- 2. there be句型不与现在进行时搭配, 这个句型本身就暗含了正在进行的含义
- 3. 在正式文体特别是文学中, There be句式中的be也可以用其它意义的动词或词组取代。它们通常是: exist, live, stand等表示存在或位置的动词; come, go, run, walk等表示运动或方向的动词以及certain to be, sure to be, appear to be, happen to be等词组。这种there存在句的谓语动词的人称、数的形式与主语须保持一致。例如:
- 4. 在GMAT中, there be句型极少, 因为这种表示存在状态的句型往往不能准确地表达出动作的施受对象, 或者不够简洁。从简洁和有效上说, there be+ 形容词转化的名词=形容词, there be+动词转化的名词=动词, there be统统不简洁。

## 204. (GWD-8-Q23)

A New York City ordinance of 1897 regulated the use of bicycles, mandated a maximum speed of eight miles an hour, required of cyclists to keep feet on pedals and hands on handlebars at all times, and it granted pedestrians right-of-way.

- A. regulated the use of bicycles, mandated a maximum speed of eight miles an hour, required of cyclists to keep feet on pedals and hands on handlebars at all times, and it granted

- B. regulated the use of bicycles, mandated a maximum speed of eight miles an hour, required cyclists to keep feet on pedals and hands on handlebars at all times, granting
- C. regulating the use of bicycles mandated a maximum speed of eight miles an hour, required cyclists that they keep feet on pedals and hands on handlebars at all times, and it granted
- D. regulating the use of bicycles, mandating a maximum speed of eight miles an hour, requiring of cyclists that they keep feet on pedals and hands on handlebars at all times, and granted
- E. regulating the use of bicycles mandated a maximum speed of eight miles an hour, required cyclists to keep feet on pedals and hands on handlebars at all times, and granted

题目释义: A NYC ordinance *regulating sth.* mandated..., required..., and granted...

### 考点:

平行结构(parallelism);

1. right-of-way: 优先通行权

### 选项分析:

- A. regulate与mandate, require并列逻辑意思不合理; and后面的it granted没有平行对象, it应该省略; Require sb. to do sth
- B. regulate与mandate, require并列逻辑意思不合理; 三个动词并列, 最后一个动词前应该加and; granting做伴随逻辑意思不合理
- C. mandate, require和grant并列, it应该省略; sth require of sb that...do... ; Require +that 从句(使用动词原形表示虚拟语气)
- D. regulating与mandating, requiring并列逻辑意思不合理, 就算并列, requiring前应该加and; 如果regulating与mandating, requiring, grant并列, grant应改为granting; 如果四个动词并列, 该句子就缺乏谓语动词
- E. Correct.

### 补充说明:

1. Require 的固定搭配: (几个正确表达的优先级是一样的)

(1) Require sb./sth. to do sth. (不定式只能用主动形式) → Require sb. doing...错误

(2) Require (of sb.) that + 原 v 需要某人做某事 (要求, 命令[(+of)][O2][+that])

大全 475. Legislation in the Canadian province of Ontario requires of both public and private employers that pay be the same for jobs historically held by women as for jobs requiring comparable skill that are usually held by men.

(3) N. is required (of sb./sth.) to do sth. 某物对某人做某事来说是必须的

或 N. required of sb./sth. to do. (其中 required 是过去分词)

大全 166. Because of the enormous research and development expenditures required of firms to survive in the electronics industry, an industry marked by rapid innovation and volatile demand, such firms tend to be very large.

Windmaple 的例句: This leaves open an "in-between" position: The efforts required of someone to prevent the consequences of his non-negligent act could be greater than what would be required of any bystander, but not as great as would be required to avoid an act than is known to cause the harmful consequences.

(4) require doing (require 主动表被动含义): 如 A require making known to B. A 需要被 B 知道

\*: GMAT 中出现过的错误表达:

Require of sb. to do (require of sb.后应该加 that, 只有 require sb.和 sth. is required of sb.后面才是加 to do 的)

Require sb. that (require 若和 that 搭配, 则跟 sb.之间要有 of)

require sb. to be done (需要某人被做...逻辑错误).

Require sb. doing...错误

## 2. 定语从句作定语与分词短语作定语的区别

(1)定语从句强调具体的时间, 具体的行为, 以及动作的一次性; 分词短语强调笼统的、不确定的时间, 抽象的、客观的、重复性的、多次性的行为。

(2)分词短语比定语从句更简洁; 都可接受时, 分词短语比定语从句优先使用; 如有可能, 定语从句要尽可能简化为分词短语。

(3)有情态动词的定语从句不能转换为分词短语。

(4)如果定语从句转换为分词短语后产生歧义, 则不能转换。

## 205. (GWD-9-Q17)

Unlike most other mergers in the utility industry, which have been driven by the need to save money and extend companies' service areas, the merger of the nation's leading gas and electric company is intended to create a huge marketing network for the utilities in question with states opening their utility markets to competition.

- A. and electric company is intended to create a huge marketing network for the utilities in question with states opening
- B. and electric companies are intended to create a huge network for marketing the utilities in question as states open
- C. and electric companies are intended to create a huge network that will be marketing the utilities in question, with states opening
- D. company and electric company are intending to create a huge marketing network for the utilities in question, with states opening
- E. company and leading electric company is intended to create a huge network for marketing the utilities in question as states open

题目释义: Unlike most other mergers..., which..., the merger.....is...

### 考点:

指代一致 (Agreement); 逻辑表达 (Logical Predication)

1. Unlike sb./sth成分和主语之间可以相隔一个插入语。

### 选项分析:

- A. leading gas and electric company错误, 因为一个公司不可能组成merger, 应该是gas company and electric company分开写; with短语前面没有逗号时做状语表达的是“与开放公用事业市场的州一同来 create a network”, 逻辑错误, 注意在此with短语不会做定语, 因为前面的the utilities in question不可能被with states修饰; opening做states的限定性修饰, 表示只有几个州open utility markes, 逻辑错误; marketing network表达unidiomatic。



- B. are应该改为is, 因为主语是merger。  
C. are应该改为is, 因为主语是merger; with states opening伴随修饰be marketing错误; that will be marketing繁琐而且文中没有将来进行时态的意思。  
D. are应该改为is, 因为主语是merger; be intended to do sth要用被动语态, merger不能发出动作; marketing network的表达unidiomatic。  
E. Correct; as states open伴随着各州开放公共事业市场的竞争。

## 206. (GWD-13-30)

For the first time in the modern era, non-Hispanic Whites are officially a minority in California, which amounts to a little less than half the population of the state, down from nearly three-quarters only a decade ago.

- A. which amounts to a little less than half the population of the state, down from nearly three-quarters only a decade ago  
B. which amounts to a little less than half the population of the state, down from a decade ago, when it was nearly three-quarters  
C. and that amounts to a little less than half the population of the state, down from a decade ago, when they were nearly three-quarters  
D. amounting to a little less than half the population of the state, down from nearly three-quarters a decade ago  
E. amounting to a little less than half the population of the state, down from what it was a decade ago by nearly three-quarters

题目释义: ..., non-Hispanic Whites are..., amounting to..., down from...

### 考点:

句子结构

### 选项分析:

- A. which无所指, 前面没有成分可以与amounts to连接 (the numbers of non-Hispanic Whites in California 才可以); only修饰a decade ago错误。  
B. which无所指; down from a decade ago逻辑意思不合理; it无所指。  
C. and that amounts中that无所指; they无指代对象。  
D. Correct; amounting做状语修饰前面整个主系表结构; 对于only的省略见“补充说明”  
E. down from what it was a decade ago比较对象不合理, 应该是人口数与人口数比, 而不是人口与时间; it无所指; what it was很wordy and awkward; down from...by改变原句含义。

### 补充说明:

#### 1. 代词指代:

代词不一定是就近指代 (但过远一定不好), 通常代词指代对象的查找顺序为:

(1) 主从句中: 先指代主语的核心词, 再指代宾语或表语的核心词, 最后指代修饰语中的名词。

(2) 并列句中: 有2个或3个句子并列, 第2个或第3个句子中的代词应该优先指代第1句中主句的名词。

#### 2. only 强调副词, 至于其是否省略, 要根据其作用而定。

down from ... 本来就是一分句，不是主要成分，所以only在其中的作用也有限，仅是强调时间状语而已。所以，是否强调from a decade ago没有显著区别。

## 207. (GWD-24-34)

Studying the fruit fly, a household nuisance but a time-honored experimental subject, has enabled the secrets of how embryos develop to begin to be unraveled by scientists.

- A. Studying the fruit fly, a household nuisance but a time-honored experimental subject, has enabled the secrets of how embryos develop to begin to be unraveled by scientists.
- B. By the study of the fruit fly, a household nuisance and also a time-honored experimental subject, it was possible for the secrets of how embryos develop to begin to be unraveled by scientists.
- C. By studying a household nuisance but a time-honored experimental subject, the fruit fly enabled scientists to begin to unravel the secrets of how embryos develop.
- D. By studying the fruit fly, a household nuisance and also a time-honored experimental subject, the secrets of how embryos develop are beginning to be unraveled by scientists.
- E. The study of the fruit fly, a household nuisance but a time-honored experimental subject, has enabled scientists to begin to unravel the secrets of how embryos develop.

题目释义：The study of the fruit fly, ..., has...

### 考点：

时态，逻辑含义

1. enable固定搭配：enable sb. to do sth. 错误搭配：enable sth. to be done by sb.

### 选项分析：

- A. studying的使用awkward，咋读让人感觉a household nuisance是逻辑主语，也有可能studying与has enabled构成句子，所以应该用名词study更为清晰；enable sth. to be done错误。
- B. 文中并不清楚究竟是谁做了study；被动语态awkward；and also改变句意
- C. the fruit fly是by studying的主语逻辑意思不合理；不是fruit fly使得科学家，而是对fruit fly的研究使得科学家如何如何；一般过去时表示了现在已经不能了，错误。
- D. the secrets是by studying的逻辑主语错误，且studying与主语之间距离太远，咋读有修饰a household nuisance的歧义，句式不好；and also改变句意；现在进行时减少了原句中应有的含义，原句用了has enabled现在完成时表示了早就enable了。
- E. Correct

### 补充说明：

后面不接被动语态的动词或动词短语：

lead; cause; enable; become; receive; visit; Lack; enter; cost; possess; resemble; last; like; enjoy; notice; watch; look at; listen to; pay attention to; suit; fit; contain; so as to do; be able to do; be likely to do

## 208. (GWD-24-17) (OG12-63)

The yield of natural gas from Norway's Troll gas field is expected to increase annually until the year 2005 and then to stabilize at six billion cubic feet a day, which will allow such an extraction rate at least for 50 years' production.

- A. 2005 and then to stabilize at six billion cubic feet a day, which will allow such an extraction rate at least for
- B. 2005 and then to stabilize at six billion cubic feet a day, an extraction rate that will allow at least
- C. 2005 and then stabilizing at six billion cubic feet a day, with such an extraction rate at the least allowing
- D. 2005, then stabilizing at six billion cubic feet a day, allowing such an extraction rate for at least
- E. 2005, then stabilizing at six billion cubic feet a day, which will allow such an extraction rate for at least

题目释义: The yield of natural gas...is expected to... and then to..., an extraction rate that...

### 考点:

逻辑意思, 句子结构, 动词形式

### 选项分析:

- A. which不能修饰整个句子, 在这里which指代了the extraction rate, 逻辑错误; at least修饰50 years' production才合理。
- B. Correct; to increase and to stabilize并列结构合理。
- C. then stabilizing与to increase不平行; with引导的伴随状语错误; at the least错误词组, 应该是at least; at least修饰allowing不合理。
- D. then stabilizing做to increase的伴随状语逻辑错误; allowing引导的短语修饰对象不明, 可以做stabilizing的伴随状语(此时嵌套的修饰awkward), 也可以做主句的伴随状语(此时allowing前需要加上and)。
- E. stabilizing做结果或伴随逻辑意思不合理; which就近修饰the extraction rate逻辑意思不合理。

### 补充说明:

OG12-63的解释:

Rhetorical construction; Verb form; Logical predication

The sentence is about predications that Troll gas field's yield would increase until it stabilized at a particular extraction rate in 2005. The term *extraction rate* refers to *six billion cubic feet a day*, so it is redundant and confusingly circular to rename *six billion cubic feet* with the relative pronoun *which* in the subject position and then reintroduce *extraction rate* as the object.

- A The relative phrase beginning with *which* is nonsensical, since the pronoun reference is inaccurate, and the phrase essentially says that the extraction rate enables the extraction rate.
- B Correct. The infinitive *to stabilize* parallels *to increase*; information about the *six billion cubic feet a day* is expressed clearly and concisely in an appositive phrase containing a relative clause (*an extraction rate that will allow ...*).
- C The phrasing is awkward and unclear; *stabilizing* is an incorrect verb form; it should be an infinitive to parallel *to increase*.
- D *Stabilizing* is an incorrect verb form; it should be an infinitive to parallel *to increase*; the subsequent phrase is awkward and confusing because it is not clear what noun *allowing* is supposed to modify.
- E *Stabilizing* violates the requirement of parallelism, and *which* introduces a nonsensical redundancy, effectively making the claim that the extraction rate (*six billion cubic feet*) enables the extraction rate.

The correct answer is B.

## 209. (GWD-10-Q21)

Despite the growing number of people who purchase plane tickets online, airline executives are convinced that, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers to automatic teller machines, many travelers will still use travel agents.

- A. growing number of people who purchase plane tickets online, airline executives are convinced that, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers to automatic teller machines, many travelers will
- B. growing number of people who purchase plane tickets online, airline executives are convinced, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers to automatic teller machines, that many travelers would
- C. growing number of people purchasing plane tickets online, airline executives are convinced, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers as compared to automatic teller machines, many travelers will
- D. fact that the number of people purchasing plane tickets online is growing, airline executives are convinced, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers as compared to automatic teller machines, that many travelers would
- E. fact that the number of people who purchase plane tickets online are growing, airline executives are convinced that, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers compared with automatic teller machines, many travelers would

题目释义：Despite the growing number..., airline executives are convinced that, just as..., many travellers...

### 考点：

句子结构，平行结构

1. just as..., as/so...结构中as/so可省

### 选项分析：

- A. Correct。
- B. just as与many travelers will...并列，所以应该放在that后面；would表示不确定性或，过去时态，两种可能性都不对，所以would用法错。
- C. 现在分词短语作定强调动作的多次性、重复性和客观性，无明确时间概念，而买票通常只是一次性概念；are convinced后加that；prefer A as compared to B错误，prefer A to B是正确词组。
- D. Despite the fact that不简洁，despite后面应该直接加让步的内容；文中说尽管数字增长而不是尽管某些事实，-ing分词短语作定强调动作的多次性、重复性和客观性，无明确时间概念，purchasing表示始终在网上买机票的人，不合理，应该是表示“网上买机票的人”；that应该在convinced后面；prefer A as compared to B是错误；would错误同B
- E. Despite the fact that不简洁；the number of people是单数，are应该改为is；prefer ... compared with...错；would错误同B

## 210. (GWD-12-Q31)

Emily Dickinson's letters to Susan Huntington Dickinson were written over a period beginning a few years before Susan's marriage to Emily's brother and ending shortly before Emily's death in 1886, outnumbering her letters to anyone else.

- A. Dickinson were written over a period beginning a few years before Susan's marriage to Emily's brother and ending shortly before Emily's death in 1886, outnumbering
- B. Dickinson were written over a period that begins a few years before Susan's marriage to Emily's brother and ended shortly before Emily's death in 1886, outnumber
- C. Dickinson, written over a period beginning a few years before Susan's marriage to Emily's brother and that ends shortly before Emily's death in 1886 and outnumbering
- D. Dickinson, which were written over a period beginning a few years before Susan's marriage to Emily's brother, ending shortly before Emily's death in 1886, and outnumbering
- E. Dickinson, which were written over a period beginning a few years before Susan's marriage to Emily's brother and ending shortly before Emily's death in 1886, outnumber

题目释义: Emily Dickinson's letters, which..., outnumber

考点:

句子结构; 平行结构

选项分析:

- A. 本选项语法上没有错误, 但是逻辑上不正确: outnumbering做结果状语, 而outnumbering和前面的were written并没有直接因果关系, were written和outnumber是两件完全独立、不相关的事情, 所以彼此之间不应该有修饰关系
- B. end与begin并列, begin时态不正确; outnumber没有主语
- C. and that没有并列对象, 结构不平行; 句子缺谓语动词
- D. outnumbering没有并列对象; 句子缺谓语动词
- E. Correct

## 211. (GWD-5-Q34)

Many entomologists say that campaigns to eradicate the fire ant in the United States have failed because the chemicals that were used were effective only in wiping out the ant's natural enemies, which made it easier for them to spread.

- A. which made it easier for them
- B. which makes it easier for it
- C. thus making it easier for them
- D. thus making it easier for the ant
- E. thereby, it was made easier for the ant

题目释义: Many entomologists say that campaigns.....have failed...., thus making....

考点:

句子结构

选项分析:

- A. which就近修饰enemies, 逻辑意思不合理; them无指代对象。  
 B. which就近修饰enemies错误; 第一个it所指代的东西在第二个it之后, 显得很笨拙。  
 C. them无指代对象。  
 D. Correct; making做结果状语  
 E. thereby是副词, 而且只是插入成分, 两句话见没有连词, run-on sentence; it was made easier for the ant to spread中it指代后面的to spread, 但是表达太拙劣, 而且make的动作发出者不明, 割裂了thereby前后句子的关系。

补充说明:

- 现在分词短语在句尾: 表伴随动作, 状态, 功能, 与句子谓语动作同时发生, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, 表伴随结果, 整个句子是原因, 导致分词动作产生, 无逻辑主语。可以在分词前加thus, thereby, in effect等副词, 也可以不加。
- 过去分词短语在句尾, 一般优先就近作定语修饰名词, -ed分词短语在句首, 其逻辑主语等于句子的主语。

## 212. (GWD-26-Q23)

Trans World Entertainment Corporation, which owns the Record Town and Saturday Matinee retail chains, announced that since sales of up to one-fourth of its stores are poor, they will be closed.

- A. that since sales of up to one-fourth of its stores are poor, they will be closed  
 B. it is closing up to one-fourth of its stores, which accounted for its poor sales  
 C. it was closing up to one fourth of its stores because of poor sales  
 D. to be closing, on account of poor sales, up to one-fourth of its stores  
 E. having poor sales, such that up to one-fourth of its stores will be closed

题目释义: TWEC announced it was ..... because of.....

考点:

- 时态要 (根据句子意思) 保持一致
  - 代词指代
  - 固定搭配: account for: to be the reason why something happens  
*Recent pressure at work may account for his behavior.*
  - announce固定搭配:
    - (1) announce something to somebody 或者 announce to somebody something (相当于宾语后置)
    - (2) announce a decision/intention/plan (在这个时候如果plan等后面接to do不会产生to do做状语修饰announce的歧义)\*: The government has announced plans to create 10,000 new jobs.
    - (3) announce (that)
    - (4) announce somebody/yourself 通报...的到达; 通知...已准备好 (注意这个短语有专门意思)
- 错误用法:  
 (1) announce to do/be sth.



5. 句子以简洁有效为美

6. **such that** 表达的是强调含义，与**so that**表达目的（后面加情态动词时）的含义不同：**so**是副词，一般修饰形容词，**such**是名词，一般指代前面的名词。

### 选项分析：

- A. 时态错误, TWEC announced that since sales.....are poor, they will..., announced与are, will时态不一致; 此外, they在语法上可以指代sales, 但是在逻辑上应该指代its stores, 存在歧义, 不正确。
- B. 时态错误, 同A。首先, 在此which只有指代了前面整句逻辑才合理, 但which在GMAT里面无法指代前面整句。其次即便which能指代前面整句, which account for:说明(解释)...的原因, 此处将句意变为了“关门是poor sales的原因”, 所以不正确。
- C. Correct; 如果宾语从句引导词that不补出, 依然能使正常读者清晰断句, 且announce后面常常不补出。
- D. announce to do是错的, 正确用法是announce sth.或者announce+从句; (on account of是否可用, 仍待GMAT另外说明, 从未在正确句子中出现过)。
- E. announce having poor sales累赘(having是一个动名词gerund), unidiomatic; will时态错误, 同A; such that用法错误。

### 补充说明：

1. 原句: related source:<http://www.nytimes.com/1996/02/08/business/company-briefs-029980.html>  
TRANS WORLD ENTERTAINMENT CORP., Albany, which owns the Record Town and Saturday Matinee retail chains, announced that it was closing up to one-fourth of its stores because of poor sales. The company closed 180 stores last year.
2. because of与on account of:  
because of意为“由于, 因为”, 强调因果关系, 在句中仅作状语。because of 既可表示好的原因, 也可表示坏的。大多数情况都是用于造成不太好结果的原因。  
on account of与because of同义, 但语气较为正式。on account of 非常客观的表示原因, 适用于任何情况, 可作状语、表语, 不作定语。

## 213. (GWD-30-Q2)

Caribou are wary animals with excellent hearing, so stalking them over the treeless landscape, getting close enough to kill it with nothing but a handheld lance, as Dorset people did, required exceptional hunting skill.

- A. so stalking them over the treeless landscape, getting close enough to kill it  
B. so to stalk them over the treeless landscape and get close enough to kill one  
C. so in order to stalk them over the treeless landscape and get close enough to kill one  
D. and so in order to stalk it over the treeless landscape, getting close enough to kill it  
E. and so stalking them over the treeless landscape and getting close enough in order to kill it

题目释义: Caribou are....., so to stalk ..... and get ..... required.....

### 考点：

1. one和it的用法。it指代上文提到过的那个东西, 而one泛指那一类东西的某一个。根据上下语境, 要kill的并不是具体的某一个Caribou, 而是任何一个, 并且it只能指代在句子中出现的单数名词。

选项分析:

- A. stalking与getting缺少连词; it错误, 其无法指代caribou(caribou为复数), 应该用one表示泛指。
- B. Correct; so作连词, to stalk and get作主语, required是谓语; 不定式作名词短语未必需要并列出to; 用不定式作主语还是用现在分词作主语差别不大, 但仍有些许区别, 在此作为假设的动作用不定式显得更加合适(依此点可以直接选出B)。
- C. in order to do是目的状语, 不能做为名次成分, 使得后半句没有主语, 而且in order to do不如直接to do来得简洁, 错误。
- D. and后半句没有主句, 只有so引导的结果状语, 其实and多余, 应该删去; 且so和in order to语义重复; in order to目的状语无法修饰逻辑主语getting close enough, 且逻辑错误; it错误同A。
- E. and后半句没有主句; in order to kill不如to kill简洁, 且enough in order to表达unidiomatic。

## 214. (GWD-8-Q1) (GWD-13-13)

Being that she was secretary of labor, Frances Perkins' considerable influence with Franklin D. Roosevelt was used preventing him from restraining strikes by longshoremen and automobile workers.

- A. Being that she was secretary of labor, Frances Perkins' considerable influence with Franklin D. Roosevelt was used preventing
- B. As secretary of labor, Frances Perkins' considerable influence with Franklin D. Roosevelt was used to prevent
- C. Being secretary of labor, Frances Perkins' considerable influence with Franklin D. Roosevelt was used preventing
- D. As secretary of labor, Frances Perkins used her considerable influence with Franklin D. Roosevelt to prevent
- E. Secretary of labor, Frances Perkins' considerable influence was used with Franklin D. Roosevelt preventing

题目释义: As..., Frances Perkins used.....to do.....

考点:

- (1)Doing sth., SVO.结构中doing分词作伴随状语, 其逻辑主语为主句主语, 即是doing的动作由S发出  
(2)Being sth., SVO.结构中being分词做形容词, 直接修饰主句主语。  
(3)as+n, SVO.主句主语与as后的名词是对等概念, 表达“作为”用as是最佳, being (that) 累赘。
- considerable:相当多的; considerate: 体贴的, 体谅的
- 固定搭配 use to do, prevent sb. from doing.
- 冠词与逗号的使用规则: 参见prep sc1-228补充说明
- influence (with sb) ability to obtain favourable treatment from sb, usu by means of acquaintance, status, wealth, etc. 权力; 势力; 权势:  
use one's influence (with sb) 利用 (与某人的关系的) 影响力  
She has great influence with the manager and could no doubt help you. 她对经理很有影响力, 无疑能帮你忙。

选项分析:

- A. being that错误; use固定搭配用法错。
- B. influence和secretary of labor概念不对等; use用了被动语态, 使得influence的动作发出者不明。

- C. being secretary of labor修饰influence错误，概念上不对等；use错误同B。
- D. Correct；仅仅从主语修饰成分即可排除A，B，C，E而仅留下D；as secretary of labor中用了as有伴随之意，即伴随说明“是Frances Perkins作为secretary of labor时发生的事情”。
- E. Secretary of labor同位修饰influence错误，而事实上即便改为Secretary of labor, Frances Perkins也是不太恰当的，因为如果把职位、称号放在人名前面，如果没有冠词，或者有定冠词，就不用逗号；而且be use doing sth.搭配错误；influence was used with FDR preventing中influence with sb.搭配错误；use固定搭配用法错。

## 215. (GWD-31-Q28)

Rock samples taken from the remains of an asteroid about twice the size of the 6-mile-wide asteroid that eradicated the dinosaurs has been dated to be 3.47 billion years old and thus is evidence of the earliest known asteroid impact on Earth.

- A. has been dated to be 3.47 billion years old and thus is
- B. has been dated at 3.47 billion years old and thus
- C. have been dated to be 3.47 billion years old and thus are
- D. have been dated as being 3.47 billion years old and thus
- E. have been dated at 3.47 billion years old and thus are

题目释义：Rock samples .....have been dated at x years old and thus are.....

### 考点：

- 主谓一致，名词复数作主语，其谓语也用复数
- Date的固定搭配：date to 后面是ago，且to后面直接接年代数字（不需要接be）；date at 后面与old搭配。（具体参见prep1-256）

### 选项分析：

- A. 谓语has和is错，主语是rock samples，谓语要用复数；dated to be 3.47 billion years old搭配错误。
- B. has主谓不一致；and前后时态不一致，不应该省略后面的be动词；
- C. be dated to be错，be dated to与old搭配错
- D. date as being搭配错误；and前后时态不一致，不应该省略后面的be动词
- E. Correct。

## 216. (GWD-13-1)

Although she had been known as an effective legislator first in the Texas Senate and later in the United States House of Representatives, not until Barbara Jordan's participation in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon in 1974 was she made a nationally recognized figure, as it was televised nationwide.

- A. later in the United States House of Representatives, not until Barbara Jordan's participation in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon in 1974 was she made a nationally recognized figure, as it was

- B. later in the United States House of Representatives, Barbara Jordan did not become a nationally recognized figure until 1974, when she participated in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon, which were
- C. later in the United States House of Representatives, it was not until 1974 that Barbara Jordan became a nationally recognized figure, with her participation in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon, which was
- D. then also later in the United States House of Representatives, not until 1974 did Barbara Jordan become a nationally recognized figure, as she participated in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon, being
- E. then also later in the United States House of Representatives, Barbara Jordan did not become a nationally recognized figure until 1974, when she participated in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon, which was

题目释义: Although she had been known....., Barbara Jordan did not....., when she.....

### 考点:

1. then与later用词重复
2. 定语从句可以根据动词的单复数形式来实现跳跃修饰, 使句子符合逻辑  
此处的impeachment 是一种法律程序, impeach的英文解释为: If a government official is impeached, they are formally charged with a serious crime in a special government court:  
*e.g.: The governor was impeached for using state funds improperly.*  
因此电视直播的只能是有关这一法律程序的听证会, 所以which从句只能修饰hearings, 而不是这一法律程序本身。
3. 主从句对位指代: 如果主从句主语相同, 那么当主句在前时, 主句主语要用名词, 从句主语要用代词; 当从句在前是, 从句主语可以用名词也可以用代词, 当从句主语用代词时, 主句要用名词, 当从句主语用名词时, 主句主语用代词指代从句主语。

### 选项分析:

- A. 打破主从句对位指代规则, 句式awkward——即she为although引导的让步状语从句的主语, 那么最好主语一开头就是she所指代的对象, 也就是Barbara Jordan, 而不是not until; she made a nationally recognized figure较口语化, 用become更好; hearings是复数, 不能用it指代。
- B. Correct; 句式简洁明确, 层层递进(很明显的正确选项特征), 且符合主从句对位指代规则。
- C. 主句主语用Barbara Jordan比较好; with引导的独立主格做伴随逻辑意思不合理; 定语从句的谓语动词was主谓不一致, 应该用were。
- D. 主句主语用Barbara Jordan比较好; then与later用词重复; 用as来引导伴随状语逻辑含义不合理; being做伴随状语, 其逻辑主语是she, 逻辑含义错误。
- E. 错误同DC

### 补充说明:

本题存在部分倒装:

原句: not until Barbara Jordan's participation in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon in 1974 was she made a nationally recognized figure,

正常语序是she was made a nationally recognized figure not until Barbara Jordan's participation in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon in 1974

## 217. (GWD-8-Q11)

There are no legal limits, as there are for cod and haddock, on the size of monkfish that can be caught, a circumstance that contributes to their depletion through overfishing.

- A. There are no legal limits, as there are for cod and haddock, on the size of monkfish that can be caught, a circumstance that contributes to their depletion through overfishing.
- B. There are no legal limits on the size of monkfish that can be caught, unlike cod or haddock, a circumstance that contributes to depleting them because they are being overfished.
- C. There are legal limits on the size of cod and haddock that can be caught, but not for monkfish, which contributes to its depletion through overfishing.
- D. Unlike cod and haddock, there are no legal size limits on catching monkfish, which contributes to its depletion by being overfished.
- E. Unlike catching cod and haddock, there are no legal size limits on catching monkfish, contributing to their depletion because they are overfished.

题目释义: There are....., as there are....., a circumstance that.....

没有像鳕鱼和黑线鳕鱼那样有关于捕捞尺寸的法律保护是安康鱼被过度捕捞的原因之一

考点:

- 1. like/unlike A, S.V.O. 中S与A一定要可比, 绝对对称。
- 2. which/it不能指代一句话, 常用同位结构进行替换, 例如可以使用discovery/fact等名词总结一句话
- 3. limit的固定搭配:

n. : limit on sth.; limit to do sth. limit for sb./sth.

■ *There's a limit on the time you have to take the test.*

■ *The time limit for making claims is three months.*

■ *There's no age limit for applicants.*

■ *There's a limit to what we can do to help.*

vt.: limit sb. to sth.; limit sth. (to sth.); be limited to sth

选项分析:

- A. Correct; monkfish单复数同型(见补充说明), their指代monkfish; there be句型的平行要补出there be。
- B. unlike的两个对象不可比(size v.s. monkfish), 且放在中间, 易产生修饰歧义; depleting them是主动语态, 可是动作发出者又不明, 错误; 用because引导的原因状语从句来表示方式太过于累赘。
- C. which不能指代一句话; 应该用their来指代monkfish, 因为monkfish前面没有冠词, 所以是复数。
- D. unlike比较双方不可比; its指代复数名词monkfish错误; by不如through好; being overfished修饰了contributes与contributes的逻辑主语which, 不合理。
- E. Unlike比较双方不可比; 前面there be句型是主系表结构, 所以后面contributing不能表示伴随结构, 而是作为形容词修饰前面的名词catching monkfish; 用because引导的原因状语从句来表示方式太过于累赘。

补充说明:

- 1. through和by的区别:

through doing往往是指达成、做到一个结果所做的行为, 如本题的depletion就是一个结果。

by doing往往是指为了做某事而行使的行为。

两者差别细微，却可以用于迅速判题，如本题用depletion和through搭配更合理，可以得出D选项不如A，C选项。

2. 关于monkfish, fish的单复数识别：

if "fish" is singular, it must be used WITH AN ARTICLE ("a", "the", etc.)

i saw a fish swimming beneath me --> singular (1 fish)

i saw fish swimming beneath me --> plural (multiple fish)

## 218. (T-4-Q33)

In attempting to solve the problems caused by a lowering of the price of oil, oil companies operating in the North Sea have taken a variety of approaches, which includes their reducing employment, using new technology to pump oil more efficiently from smaller fields, and finding innovative ways to cut the cost of building and operating platforms.

- A. which includes their reducing employment, using new technology to pump oil more efficiently
- B. which includes reducing employment, using new technology to be more efficient in pumping oil
- C. which include reducing employment, using new technology to pump oil more efficiently
- D. which include the reduction of employment, their using new technology to pump oil more efficiently
- E. including a reduction of employment, their use of new technology to be more efficient at pumping oil

题目释义：In attempting to solve....., oil companies have taken....., which ....., using.....

### 考点：

1. 平行结构中要注意平行对象要对等（形式和功能），动作性名词不能和名词性名词平行并列
2. (1) "a variety of/ a number of + 复数名词"后面谓语用复数形式；  
(2) the number of / the variety of + 复数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数；  
(3) "a body of/a collection of/an array of/a series of/a set of/a portion of/a group of/ a constellation of/a team of + 复数名词"作主语后面谓语都用单数形式，因为body/collection等被视作集合名词(collective noun)，后面是of引导的介宾短语做形容词。

### 选项分析：

- A. a variety of + 复数名词，谓语动词用复数，且which引导的定语从句修饰approaches，所以includes错；their reducing中their多余(有效性错误)。
- B. includes主谓不一致错误；using new technology to be more efficient改变句意，变得不合理(更加有效率地使用新技术，合理句意应该是新技术使得pump更加有效率)；在做某事有效率要用at doing sth.。
- C. Correct；reducing, using, finding三者平行。
- D. reduction, their using与finding不平行
- E. reduction, use与finding不平行；use of new technology to be more efficient改变句意，变得不合理(更加有效率地使用新技术，合理句意应该是新技术使得pump更加有效率)

### 补充说明：

1. In attempt to与in attempting to没有区别
2. Efficient at与efficient in doing sth.:

At:做某事时有效率      Their equipment was not as efficient at finding gold as today's machinery.



In:在某方面节约有效 *The heating system is very efficient in its use of fuel.*

## 219. (GWD-8-Q34) (GWD-13-28, OG 12-78)

Fossils of the arm of a sloth found in Puerto Rico in 1991, and dated at 34 million years old, made it the earliest known mammal of the Greater Antilles islands.

- A. sloth found in Puerto Rico in 1991, and dated at 34 million years old, made it the earliest known mammal of
- B. sloth, that they found in Puerto Rico in 1991, has been dated at 34 million years old, thus making it the earliest mammal known on
- C. sloth that was found in Puerto Rico in 1991, was dated at 34 million years old, making this the earliest known mammal of
- D. sloth, found in Puerto Rico in 1991, have been dated at 34 million years old, making the sloth the earliest known mammal on
- E. sloth which, found in Puerto Rico in 1991, was dated at 34 million years old, made the sloth the earliest known mammal of

题目释义: Fossils.....have been dated ....., making.....

### 考点:

- 1. 定语从句: 限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句
- 2. 主谓一致

### 选项分析:

- A. dated与found都是过去分词, 共同修饰fossils, and前面不需要逗号; fossils使得sloth成为earliest known mammal逻辑意思不对, 应该是年份鉴定的结果使之成为earliest known mammal; it指代不清楚, 代词难以指到介词的宾语
- B. that they中的they无指代; that引导的是限制性定语从句, 与先行词之间不能加逗号, 且当先行词在定语从句中做宾语时关系代词不必补出; has错, fossils是复数名词, 应该使用have; it指代不清; 主句与伴随状语making it...无因果关系, 不应用thus
- C. that was可以省略, 且应该用that were; 谓语动词应该用复数形式; this无所指
- D. Correct; found修饰fossils; have been dated是句子的谓语部分, 主语是fossils, making伴随表结果; be dated at/to ... years old都是对的。
- E. 非限制性定语从句前应该加上逗号; 定语从句谓语动词形式错误, 应该用复数

### 补充说明:

OG 12-78解释:

Agreement; Logical predication

The subject of the sentence is the plural fossils, not sloth, and therefore requires a plural verb. It therefore does not have a singular antecedent. To clarify the identification of the oldest known mammal, the noun the sloth must be explicitly identified.

A Because *sloth* is the object of a preposition and not the subject of the sentence, there is no reasonable antecedent for the pronoun *it*; in this construction, the subject of made is *fossils*, but it makes no sense

- to say that the fossils made it the earliest known mammal.
- B The introduction of the mysterious they, a pronoun without a reference, adds confusion to this sentence; the singular verb does not agree with the plural subject.
- C The relative clause *that was ...* is wordy and awkward; the singular verb does not agree with the plural subject.
- D Correct. The plural verb agrees with its plural subject, and the sloth is explicitly identified as the earliest known mammal.
- E The singular verb does not agree with the plural subject.

## 220. (GWD-6-Q31)

The fact of some fraternal twins resembling each other greatly and others looking quite dissimilar highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs, namely they vary considerably on a spectrum of genetic relatedness.

- A. The fact of some fraternal twins resembling each other greatly and others looking quite dissimilar highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs, namely they vary considerably
- B. That some fraternal twins resemble each other greatly while others look quite dissimilar highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs, namely that they vary considerably
- C. With some fraternal twins resembling each other greatly and others looking quite dissimilar, it highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs, namely considerable variation
- D. With some fraternal twins resembling each other greatly and others looking quite dissimilar, it is a fact that highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs, namely a considerable variation
- E. Because some fraternal twins resemble each other greatly and others look quite dissimilar, this fact highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs, namely they vary considerably

题目释义: That.....highlights....., namely that.....

### 考点:

- one与another搭配; some和others搭配; each和the other搭配; each other和others搭配
- namely的用法十分灵活: (=that is to say, along with). 它是副词, 后面不能直接加句子
  - 补充说明前面离它最近的名词成分; e.g.: The other change, namely the increase in electronic equipment, has slowed down.
  - 补充说明句子主语; e.g.: One group of people seems to be forgotten, namely pensioners.
  - namely后面跟从句解释前面的名词成分; e.g.: On the next trip, I solved part of the problem, but after discussing the situation with AB on the phone an alternative solution was at hand; namely, that from 1987 onwards I would spend my winters playing for Queensland.

### 选项分析:

- A. the fact后面用of无法完全解释fact的内容, 应该用that引导的同位语从句, 来说明twins发生了什么

fact(更多详见补充); namely是副词, 后面直接加句子错, 应该加上连词that;

- B. Correct; 本句是namely上述的第2种用法, 本句亦可调换顺序改为第一种用法: That some fraternal twins resemble each other greatly while others look quite dissimilar, namely that they vary considerably, highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs.从形合的角度, that..., namely that...更为对称, 直接只剩下B选项; 另外, "namely that they vary..."和"namely considerable variation"语法上都是没有问题的, 这一点直接排除A,E, 留下B,C,D, 再根据需要标明variation的主体, 所以用they vary更好, 排除C,D; some fraternal twins resembling each other greatly和others looking quite dissimilar是成对比的两样事物, 用while连接比用and连接更好。
- C. It无所指; some fraternal twins resembling each other greatly和others looking quite dissimilar是成对比的两样事物, 应该用while连接更好; with独立主格的逻辑主语错误; variation与feature并不对等, 因此namely无补充说明对象。
- D. It指代正确, 因为是结构it is a fact that结构的一部分, 强调句; a fact无所指; with独立主格错误同C; namely无补充说明对象。
- E. Because引导的是原因状语从句, 而并不是名词性从句, 使得this fact无所指; namely后应该加上that。

### 补充说明:

the fact of在GMAT中从未成为过正确选项, 必须用that引导同位语从句修饰fact, 例:

1. Chronic low-level leaking and the routine discharge of drilling mud and mineral salts present considerable environmental risk during offshore oil drilling.

- (A) Chronic low-level leaking and the routine discharge of drilling mud and mineral salts present considerable environmental risk during offshore oil drilling.
- (B) The reason offshore oil drilling presents a considerably environmental risk is because of chronic low-level leaking and the routine discharge of drilling mud and mineral salts.
- (C) A considerable risk to the environment is presented during offshore oil drilling, where low-level leaks are chronic and the routine discharge of mud and mineral salts.
- (D) Offshore oil drilling presents a considerable risk to the environment due to the fact of chronic low-level leaks, and mud and mineral salts are routinely discharged.
- (E) Chronic low-level leaking, along with the routine discharge of drilling mud and mineral salts, are what make offshore oil drilling environmentally risky.

正确答案为 A

2. Darwin was not the first to advance a theory of evolution; his tremendous originality lay in the fact that he proposed the idea of natural selection as the means by which evolution worked.

- (A) lay in the fact that he proposed the idea
- (B) lay in the fact of his proposing the idea
- (C) laid in the fact of his proposing the idea
- (D) laid in his proposal
- (E) lay in his proposal

正确答案为 E

3. A discussion of our nation's foreign policy must begin with the fact of there being an independent Western Europe which now thinks of itself in trans-nationalist terms.

- (A) A discussion of our nation's foreign policy must begin with the fact of there being
- (B) Beginning any discussion of our nation's foreign policy must be the fact of there being
- (C) Any discussion of our nation's foreign policy must begin with the fact that there is
- (D) Any discussion of our nation's foreign policy must begin by acknowledging the existence of

(E) To begin discussing our nation's foreign policy there must be an acknowledgment of the fact that  
正确答案为 D

## 221. (GWD-7-Q2)

The first commercially successful drama to depict Black family life sympathetically and the first play by a Black woman to be produced on Broadway, it was Lorraine Hansberry's A Raisin in the Sun that won the New York Drama Critics' Circle Award in 1959, and was later made into both a film and a musical.

- A. it was Lorraine Hansberry's A Raisin in the Sun that won the New York Drama Critics' Circle Award in 1959, and was later made
- B. in 1959 A Raisin in the Sun, by Lorraine Hansberry, won the New York Drama Critics' Circle Award and was later made
- C. Lorraine Hansberry won the New York Drama Critics' Circle Award for A Raisin in the Sun in 1959, and it was later made
- D. Lorraine Hansberry's A Raisin in the Sun won the New York Drama Critics' Circle Award in 1959 and was later made
- E. A Raisin in the Sun, by Lorraine Hansberry, won the New York Drama Critics' Circle Award in 1959, and later made it

题目释义：The first drama....., CH's A Raisin in the Sun won.....and was later made.....

### 考点：

- 1. 同位语要能够互相解释，且中间尽量不能隔开。
- 2. 平行结构

### 选项分析：

- A. drama和play是句子主语的同位语，所以it不对(it是强调句的引导词，无指代)；and was与it was并列，而不是与that won并列，除非去掉and前面的逗号，并改为and that was。
- B. in 1959隔开了同位语drama and play和A Raisin in the Sun。
- C. drama and play不能成为Lorraine Hansberry的同位语；it指代不清晰。
- D. Correct。
- E. A Raisin in the Sun不能把自己变为电影和音乐剧，因此make需要用被动，it无所指。

## 222. (GWD-12-Q14)

In 1914 a total of 469,000 cars and trucks were produced in the United States, but in 1929 almost twice the numbers of trucks alone came off the assembly lines.

- A. the numbers of trucks alone
- B. that number of trucks alone
- C. the number of trucks by themselves
- D. as many trucks themselves
- E. as many trucks by themselves

题目释义: In 1914 a total of 469,000 cars and trucks were....., but in 1929 almost twice that number of trucks.....

1914年cars和trucks共制造了469000辆, 而在1929年仅trucks单独就有原来总数两倍那么多从组装线上下线。

### 考点:

1. twice只能作副词, 在句子中表达的意思却是比较, 这样的题目, 首先要弄清楚比较的双方是否合理, 如果合理的话, 再看twice作为副词的位置: 可以用在as..as或比较级之前, 也可以放在比较点的名词之前, 但要保证twice前后的词要能直接搭配(副词的作用).eg: He is twice the man he was. = He has twice the strength he had =He is twice as strong as he was.
2. Number的用法: a number of (大量的), the number of (.....的数量), numbers of (许多)。详见新prep1-209 (笔记P43)

### 选项分析:

- A. the numbers错误, twice后面要跟单数的number, 即twice the number; 但是改为the number后, 指代特定的数字还是用that number更为明确
- B. Correct; that number指代前面总和的469000, 如果是the number, 没有指代对象, 似乎说是the number of trucks
- C. the number指代不清; by themselves是指卡车出售时没有附带配件, 即单车出售, 与alone意思并不相同。
- D. 用as many trucks时, 整个句子的意思是“1914年汽车和卡车一共生产了469,000辆, 而1929年两倍的卡车下了生产线”, 句子前后并没有直接逻辑联系, 前面句子并没有讲卡车有多少辆; trucks themselves这样的结构(X itself)中, themselves反身代词是对trucks的同位语, 表示强调是trucks而已, 我们往往可以看作没有反身代词, 就如同同位语往往与句子主成份无关一样。
- E. as many trucks错误同D; by themselves错误同C

## 223. (T-4-Q16)

Humans have been damaging the environment for centuries by overcutting trees and farming too intensively, and though some protective measures, like the establishment of national forests and wildlife sanctuaries, having been taken decades ago, great increases in population and in the intensity of industrialization are causing a worldwide ecological crisis.

- A. though some protective measures, like the establishment of national forests and wildlife sanctuaries, having been taken decades ago, great increases in population
- B. though some protective measures, such as the establishment of national forests and wildlife sanctuaries, were taken decades ago, great increases in population
- C. though some protective measures, such as establishing national forests and wildlife sanctuaries having been taken decades ago, great population increases
- D. with some protective measures, like establishing national forests and wildlife sanctuaries that were taken decades ago, great increases in population
- E. with some protective measures, such as the establishment of national forests and wildlife sanctuaries, having been taken decades ago, great population increases

题目释义: Humans have been damaging....., and though some protective measures.....were taken....., great increases.....are causing.....

考点:

1. like只表示比较, 不表示举例, 举例用such as。
2. though引导让步状语从句, 其后面跟完整句子。

选项分析:

- A. like用法错误; though引导的不是一个完整的句子。
- B. Correct; measure与名词the establishment搭配是最合适的, 都描述一个方法, 与establishing搭配不好。
- C. Such as后的两个对象不平行; though引导的不是一个完整的句子; great population increases与and in the intensity不平行。
- D. Like用法错误; with引导的是介宾短语做attributive phrase修饰increases, 逻辑不合理。
- E. 后半句子中, 分句和主句是转折关系, 用with来引导伴随状语逻辑上不合理; great population increases与and in the intensity不平行。

补充说明:

1. with复合结构的用法: with复合结构在句子中作状语, 表示原因、时间、条件、伴随、方式等。
  - (1) With+宾语+介词短语
  - (2) with+宾语+过去分词(宾语与宾补之间是被动关系)
  - (3) with+宾语+现在分词(宾语与宾补之间是主动关系)
  - (4) with+宾语+todo(不定式做宾补有“将来”的含义)
  - (5) with+宾语+形容词/副词
  - (6) with复合结构的作用

## 224. (GWD-8-Q17)

Fossils of a whale that beached on an African shore more than a million years ago and was subsequently butchered by hominids have been recovered by paleontologists.

- A. that beached on an African shore more than a million years ago and was subsequently butchered by hominids have
- B. that beached on an African shore more than a million years ago and then was subsequently butchered by hominids has
- C. that beached on an African shore more than a million years ago, which was subsequently butchered by hominids, has
- D. having been beached on an African shore more than a million years ago and subsequently butchered by hominids, have
- E. having beached on an African shore more than a million years ago and then subsequently were butchered by hominids have

题目释义: Fossils of a whale that beached ... and was subsequently butchered ... have been recovered ....



主语Fossils, 谓语have been recovered, that从句修饰whale, 其中beached和was subsequently butchered并列

### 考点:

主谓一致 题目释义 平行对称

1. 现在分词的完成式having done不做后置定语

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct, 用定语从句来表示过去时比用分词形式好。
- B. has与主语Fossils不一致; then与subsequently重复。
- C. has与主语Fossils不一致; which非限定性修饰whale错误, 应该用非限定性修饰。
- D. having been beached, 现在分词的完成式having done不做限定性修饰, 只能做非限定性修饰, 而且限定性的having been down往往可以用done替代; been beached用了被动语态错误
- E. having beached, 现在分词的完成式having done不做限定性修饰; having beached与were butchered不平行; then与subsequently重复。

## 225. (GWD-3-Q39)

Minivans carry as many as seven passengers, and compared with sport utility vehicles, most cost less, get better gas mileage, and make it easy for passengers to get in and out, and have a smoother, more car-like ride.

- A. and make it easy for passengers to get in and out
- B. and allow passengers to get in and out easily
- C. and allow passengers to get in and out more easily
- D. make it easier for passengers when getting in and out
- E. allow passengers to get in and out more easily

题目释义: Minivans [carry ...] and [compared with sport utility vehicles, most cost ..., get better ..., allow ..., and have ...]

两个分句的平行: 第一个分句主语minivans, 第二个分句主语most, 指代minivans; compared with sport utility vehicles, 做状语修饰其后面的分句。

### 考点:

平行对称 逻辑含义

1. 一组元素平行时, 必须并且仅在最后一个元素前加and。

### 选项分析:

- A. 划线部分第一个and破坏了平行结构, 这组平行的最后一个元素是have a smoother, more car-like ride; 划线部分的easy没有比较级, 也是破坏了平行; make it easier for passengers结构不如E简洁。
- B. 划线部分第一个and破坏了平行结构, 这组平行的最后一个元素是have a smoother, more car-like ride; 划线部分的easy没有比较级, 也是破坏了平行。
- C. 划线部分第一个and破坏了平行结构。
- D. it指代不清, make it easier for passengers结构不如E简洁。

E. Correct。

### 补充说明:

make与allow是近义词，在本题的语境下可以互换使用，只是allow sb. to do sth. easily比make it easy for sb. to do sth.简洁，前者不需要用到形式宾语it来指代to do sth.:

- (1) make: to cause something to happen, or cause a particular state or condition  
make sth difficult/easy/possible etc

■ *The use of computers has made it possible for more people to work from home.*

- (2) allow: to make it possible for something to happen or for someone to do something, especially something helpful or useful  
allow sb to do sth

■ *A 24-hour ceasefire allowed the two armies to reach an agreement.*

### 类似例题链接 1:

prep1-247, GWD-3-Q39

Minivans carry as many as seven passengers and, compared with most sport utility vehicles, cost less, get better gas mileage, allow passengers to get in and out more easily, and have a smoother ride.

- A. Minivans carry as many as seven passengers and, compared with most sport utility vehicles, cost less,  
B. Minivans, which carry as many as seven passengers, compared with most sport utility vehicles, they cost less,  
C. Minivans carry as many as seven passengers, in comparison with most sport utility vehicles, and have a lower cost, they  
D. Minivans, carrying as many as seven passengers, compared with most sport utility vehicles, cost less,  
E. Minivans, which carry as many as seven passengers, compared with most sport utility vehicles the cost is lower, and they

Key: A

虽然是相似题，但是句子结构因为most位置的改变(从cost前移到了“sport utility vehicles”前)而发生了改变，句子的谓语变成了，一个动词与另外四个相同意群的动词并列，compared with结构由and隔开，作状语向后修饰。具体解析见prep1-247。

### 类似例题链接 2:

OG12—134

Recently implemented “shift-work equations” based on studies of the human sleep cycle have reduced sickness, sleeping on the job, fatigue among shift workers, and have raised production efficiency in various industries.

- (A) fatigue among shift workers, and have raised  
(B) fatigue among shift workers, and raised  
(C) and fatigue among shift workers while raising  
(D) lowered fatigue among shift workers, and raised  
(E) and fatigue among shift workers was lowered while raising

key: C

## 226. (GWD-4-34) (OG12-28)

Building on civilizations that preceded them in coastal Peru, the Mochica developed their own elaborate society, based on cultivating such crops like corn and beans, the harvesting of fish and shellfish, and exploiting other wild and domestic resources.

- A. based on cultivating such crops like corn and beans, the harvesting of fish and shellfish, and exploiting
- B. based on the cultivation of such crops as corn and beans, the harvesting of fish and seafood, and the exploitation of
- C. and basing it on the cultivation of crops like corn and beans, harvesting fish and seafood, and the exploiting of
- D. and they based it on their cultivation of crops such as corn and beans, the harvest of fish and seafood, and exploiting
- E. and they based it on their cultivating such crops like corn and beans, their harvest of fish and shellfish, and they exploited

题目释义: Building on ..., the Mochica developed their own elaborate society, based on the cultivation of ..., the harvesting of ..., and the exploitation of ...  
based on从句修饰elaborate society; the cultivation of ..., the harvesting of ..., and the exploitation of ...

### 考点:

习惯用语 (Diction); 平行结构 (Parallelism)

1. 只有such ...as...表示举例, 没有such...like或者用like来举例。

### 选项分析:

- (A) such...like搭配错误, 表示列举要用such...as; cultivating..., the harvesting of..., and exploiting...中the harvesting of不平行; 。
- (B) Correct; harvest做名词时有三个意思: 收获、产量、成果, harvesting仅有收获的意思, 从OG12的解释中看来, GMAT并没有区分harvest与harvesting, 两者都可。
- (C) such...like搭配错误; 第一个and之后缺少动词, 使得and前后无法平行; the cultivation..., harvesting..., the exploiting不平行。
- (D) their cultivation..., the harvest..., and exploiting...不平行; 没有必要新开一个分句, 显得很累赘。
- (E) based it on "their cultivating"表达拙劣(介词+one's doing往往是很拙劣的表达); such...like错误; 句式结构在本选项里变为了the Mochica developed..., and they based on..., their harvest ... and they exploited的平行, 但是既然四个结构里面三个补出了and, 在their harvest前面也应该补出and, 但即便补出了, their harvest也仅仅是一个名词, 与其他三者不平行; 这样的平行结构, 逻辑上也不太合理。

### 补充说明:

1. 词义辨析:

harvest与harvesting有重叠意义:

harvest: the act, process, or occasion of gathering a crop

harvesting: Synonyms HARVEST 1, cropping, gathering, ingathering, reaping

2. OG12-28的解释:

Diction; Parallelism

The sentence describes the elaborate society of the Mochica with a series of three features, the first of which contains an example. The three features must be presented in parallel structures—e.g.,

*cultivating, harvesting, and exploiting.* The use of *such* to introduce the examples of crops requires that the comparison be completed with *as* instead of *like*.

- A. The second item in the series violates the parallelism required for the series; *like* is the incorrect word to complete the introduction of examples.
- B. Correct. The three items in the series are in parallel form, and *such crops* is correctly followed by *as*.
- C. *And basing it on ...* must come before the main verb in order to make this version a complete sentence.
- D. The items in the description of the society are not in parallel form.
- E. *Like* is the wrong word to introduce the examples; *based it on their cultivating such crops ...* is awkward and wordy; *they based* is parallel to *they exploited*, but for this sentence to work, *and* would have to be inserted before *their harvest of fish*.

The correct answer is B.

### 类似例题链接:

关于动名词的平行

OG12-130

One view of the economy contends that a large drop in oil prices should eventually lead to lowering interest rates, as well as lowering fears about inflation, a rally in stocks and bonds, and a weakening of the dollar.

- (A) lowering interest rates, as well as lowering fears about inflation,
- (B) a lowering of interest rates and of fears about inflation,
- (C) a lowering of interest rates, along with fears about inflation,
- (D) interest rates being lowered, along with fears about inflation,
- (E) interest rates and fears about inflation being lowered, with

key: B

Parallelism; Diction

The sentence uses parallel structure to describe the anticipated effects of a drop in oil prices. Parallel noun phrases list two effects, *a rally ... and a weakening*, so the first effect in the series must be written as *a lowering*. *Lowering* is a participle, whereas *a lowering* is a gerund and functions as a noun. For the sake of both clarity and conciseness, the effects on interest rates and fears should be combined into a single noun phrase: *a lowering of interest rates and of fears about inflation*.

- A Each noun in the parallel series should be introduced by the indefinite article *a*; *lowering*, a verb form, needs to be made into the noun *a lowering*; rates and fears should be combined.
- B Correct. The series *a lowering ... a rally ... and a weakening* uses parallel structure correctly; *a lowering of interest rates and of fears* gracefully combines two effects in this sentence.
- C Parallelism is maintained with *a lowering*, but the use of *along with* makes it unclear that *fears* is parallel to *rates*.
- D Parallelism is not maintained due to use of *along with* as in the previous option; the phrase *interest rates being lowered* is awkward.
- E Parallelism is not maintained; the phrase *interest rates and fears about inflation being lowered* is awkward.

The correct answer is B.

OG10-62

Geologists believe that the warning signs for a major earthquake may include sudden fluctuations in local

seismic activity, tilting and other deformations of the Earth's crust, changing the measured strain across a fault zone, and varying the electrical properties of underground rocks.

- (A) changing the measured strain across a fault zone and varying
- (B) changing measurements of the strain across a fault zone, and varying
- (C) changing the strain as measured across a fault zone, and variations of
- (D) changes in the measured strain across a fault zone, and variations in
- (E) changes in measurements of the strain across a fault zone, and variations among

Answer to Question 62

D, the best choice, describes *the warning signs* in parallel phrases. Despite surface appearances, the nouns *changes* and *variations* are parallel with *tilting*, but the verbal forms *changing* and *varying* in A, B, and C are not: *tilting*, one of the *deformations of the Earth's crust*, is used here as a noun that is parallel to *fluctuations*, whereas *changing* and *varying* are used as verbs indicating some action undertaken.

Moreover, these verbs are used incorrectly because the sentence mentions no subject that is performing these actions. B and E illogically state that it is not the *strain* but the *measurements* that portend danger, and *among* in E wrongly suggests a comparison of different electrical properties rather than of different behaviors of the same properties.

## 227. (GWD-7-Q3)

The state has proposed new rules that would set minimum staffing levels for nurses, rules intended to ensure that at least one nurse is assigned for every four patients put through triage in a hospital emergency room.

- A. rules intended to ensure that at least one nurse is assigned for every four patients put through triage in a hospital emergency room
- B. rules with the intent of ensuring one nurse at least to be assigned for every four patients to be put through triage in a hospital emergency room
- C. rules intending to ensure at least one nurse is assigned for every four patients in a hospital emergency room put through triage
- D. with the intent of ensuring that at least one nurse should be assigned for every four patients in a hospital emergency room that are put through triage
- E. and this is intended to ensure one nurse at least to be assigned for every four patients put through triage in a hospital emergency room

题目释义：The state has proposed new rules that ..., rules intended to ensure that ...  
第二个rules做第一个rules的同位语。

### 考点：

题目释义 有效用词

#### 1. 有效用词

(1) intend 的固定搭配： → intend 的动作发出者必须是生物。

intend somebody/something to do sth.

■ *I didn't intend her to see the painting until it was finished.*

■ *I never intended things to turn out the way they did.*

intend to do/doing sth. (后面跟 to do 和 ing 都可以)

intend that

be intended to do sth.: 被用来做某事

be intended for somebody/something: 表示书、电影、药品等专为...而设计或制造。

(2) intent 的固定搭配:

noun. with intent (to do sth) → 注意 intent 前没有 the

■ *He is charged with possession of a gun with intent to commit a robbery.*

intent of doing

■ *The proliferation of so-called cybersquatters, people who register the Internet domain names of high-profile companies in hopes of reselling the rights to those names for a profit, led to the passage in 1999 of the Anti-Cybersquatting Consumer Protection Act, which allows companies to seek up to \$100,000 in damages against those who register domain names with the sole intent of selling them later.*

adj. be intent on/upon (doing) sth: to be determined to do something or achieve something

■ *She was intent on pursuing a career in business.*

intent on/upon → 专注于

■ *Intent upon her work, she didn't notice the cold.*

(3) intention of doing sth. / intention to do sth. → GMAT 中通常不用 intention to do sth. 而只用 intention of doing sth.

额外注意点(from longman):

!! Do not say 'have no intention to do something' or 'not have the slightest intention to do something'.

Say have no intention of doing something or not have the slightest intention of doing something : *He had no intention of paying me the money.*

!! Do not say 'with the intention to do something'. Say with the intention of doing something : *He left Manchester with the intention of finding a job in London.*

(4) ensure 的固定搭配:

ensure + n.

ensure + that (后面直接跟陈述语气, 不跟 should be)

错误: ensure sb. to do sth.

2. 同位语结构的形式: (参考白勇语法)

1) 名词性同位语, 名词解释名词:

n. , n. ; n. , a/an + n. 或 a/an + n. , n.

2) that 引导同位语结构:

抽象名词(evidence, result, principle等等) + that 从句, that 从句对抽象名词进行具体化解释

3) 概括性同位语结构:

用一个概括性的名词去概括前面的解释对象; 短语/句子, a program/ an advance/ a practice that...

4) 名词重复性同位语结构:

n. , n. (重复所修饰的名词) + that... 或 n. , the same n. (重复所修饰的名词) that...

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; “four patients put through triage in a hospital emergency room” 在医院急救室里被分为不同类的病人。
- B. ensure sth. / ensure that svo. 无 ensure sb. to do/be done 的用法; at least 修饰对象错误; to be put through 含义错误, 分配护士的时候, 病人应该是已经被分过级了, 所以应该直接用 put (过去分词)。



- C. intending是rules的作者发出的而非rules，只能用A的intended to；ensure后面的宾语从句引导词that需要补出以使句式更为明晰；put through triage是紧随修饰patients的，不能被地点状语in a hospital emergency room隔开。
- D. with the intent做伴随状语修饰前面的分句，逻辑主语不管为rules还是state都错误；with the intent to do sth.固定搭配；ensure已经有should的意思，后面不能用should be；that are put through triage修饰对象错误。
- E. this不能指代前句；ensure sth. / ensure that svo. 无ensure sb. to do/be done的用法。

### 类似例题链接：

- Asset allocators create portfolios, often in the form of mutual funds, with the intention to turn in good results in both "bull" and "bear" markets.
  - with the intention
  - the intention of which is
  - intended
  - and intending
  - so intended as

A. with the intention to do sth.用法错误，其修饰对象也是allocators，而不是portfolios。

B. which指代不清。

C. Correct；这里的intended to是要修饰portforlios，中间的often in the form of mutual funds是插入成分，prep中有很多这样的句子，搞一个插入成分把补语和所要修饰的词拆开迷惑人。
- Alaska regularly deposits some of its profits from the sale of oil into a special fund, with the intention to sustain the state's economy after the exhaustion of its oil reserves.
  - fund, with the intention to sustain the state's economy after the exhaustion of its oil reserves
  - fund, the intention of which is to sustain the state's economy after they have exhausted their oil reserves
  - fund intended to sustain the state's economy after oil reserves are exhausted
  - fund intended to sustain the state's economy after exhausting its oil reserves
  - fund that they intend to sustain the state's economy after oil reserves are exhausted

KEY: C
- prep2-128.  
A Food and Drug Administration rule implemented in December 2000 mandates that any new drug that they intend to be used both by adults and children must undergo pediatric study and that its manufacturers list children's doses on the label.
  - drug that they intend to be used both by adults and children must
  - drug whose intended use is for adults and children as well
  - drug intended for use by both adults and children
  - drug, if they intend that it be used by adults and also children, must
  - drug, if intended for use both by adults and children, must

A. They没有指代对象；must和mandate词义重复，GMAT中mandate/order/suggest that somebody do something的结构，do要求使用原型，且动词do前面不加should、must等助动词和情态动词；both... and连接对象不平行。

B. Whose use is for...表达笨拙；as well的语义与and不同，drugs for adults and children as well，词组的重心和表达含义的重点在于药物适用于成人，同样适于儿童只是一个补充信息，而句子原意要表达的是同样适用于成人和儿童的药。

- C. 正确  
D. They没有指代对象；must和mandate词义重复，同A选项解释；both...and also搭配错误。  
E. must和mandate词义重复，同A选项解释；both...and连接对象不平行。

## 228. (GWD-5-Q1)

So dogged were Frances Perkins' investigations of the garment industry, and her lobbying for wage and hour reform was persistent, Alfred E. Smith and Franklin D. Roosevelt recruited Perkins to work within the government, rather than as a social worker.

- A. and her lobbying for wage and hour reform was persistent,  
B. and lobbying for wage and hour reform was persistent, so that  
C. her lobbying for wage and hour reform persistent, that  
D. lobbying for wage and hour reform was so persistent,  
E. so persistent her lobbying for wage and hour reform, that

题目释义：So dogged were Frances Perkins' investigations ..., so persistent ..., that ...

### 考点：

平行结构 习惯用语

### 选项分析：

- A. 尾三词，没有呼应so...that结构；划线部分与前面so...industry不平行。  
B. so...so that搭配错误。  
C. 划线部分与前面so...industry不平行。  
D. 尾三词，没有呼应so...that结构；划线部分与前面so...industry不平行；缺少连词，一个句子两个be动词，run-on sentence。  
E. Correct；本题主在考so...that...的倒装；详见补充说明。

### 补充说明：

原文：NYtimes November 14, 1993

<http://query.nytimes.com/gst/fullpage.html?res=9F0CE0D81E3AF937A25752C1A965958260>

So dogged were her investigations of the garment industry, and so persistent her lobbying for wage and hour reform, that she was first recruited by Gov. Al Smith, and later by Gov. Franklin D. Roosevelt, to work within New York State government, rather than against it.

第一种解释：省略结构（和原文结构相同）

两个并列分句中，当谓语动词为系动词或者become时，后面一句一定要省略。并且and一并省略。

还原倒装：Frances Perkins' investigations of the garment industry were so dogged, her lobbying for wage and hour reform (was) so persistent, that Alfred E. Smith and Franklin D. Roosevelt recruited Perkins to work within the government, rather than as a social worker.

第二种解释：独立结构（诸多NN支持版本，推荐）

独立结构：名/代+形/副/介/分/不定式

So dogged were Frances Perkins' investigations of the garment industry{, so persistent her lobbying for wage and hour reform, }that Alfred E. Smith and Franklin D. Roosevelt recruited Perkins to work within

the government, rather than as a social worker.

So..that..是个很完美的结构，so persistent her lobbying for wage and hour reform前面的and去掉了，说明并不是与前面的So dogged were Frances Perkins' investigations of the garment industry做并列成分，而是做从属伴随成分(独立主格)，是So dogged...的详细说明.但同时因为两者都是recruited Perkins的原因，所以应该用相同结构。

C里面也是独立主格，伴随修饰前半句，错误的原因就在于并没有表示出her lobbying for wage and hour reform persistent也是recruited的原因之一。即便是分句，后面有了that，那么so that结构应该完整。

## 229. (GWD-6-Q18)

In California today, Hispanics under the age of eighteen account for more than 43 percent, compared with a decade ago, when it was about 35 percent.

- A. In California today, Hispanics under the age of eighteen account for more than 43 percent, compared with a decade ago, when it was about 35 percent.
- B. Of the Californians under the age of eighteen, today more than 43 percent of them are Hispanic, compared with a decade ago, when it was about 35 percent.
- C. Today, more than 43 percent of Californians under the age of eighteen are Hispanic, compared with about 35 percent a decade ago.
- D. Today, compared to a decade ago, Californians who are Hispanics under the age of eighteen account for more than 43 percent, whereas it was about 35 percent.
- E. Today, Hispanics under the age of eighteen in California account for more than 43 percent, unlike a decade ago, when it was about 35 percent.

题目释义：Today, more than 43 percent of Californians ..., compared with ....

### 考点：

对比结构 逻辑表达

1. 数词做指代。
2. compared with做比较。

### 选项分析：

- A. 43 percent 与35 percent无所指，数词单独做指代与many的原理近似（也可以看作43 percent 与35 percent后面省略的内容不明）；compared with修饰对象不明，主句中没有成分可以与a decade ago对应，根据逻辑意思重点应该是more than 43 percent与35 percent的对比；指代错误，it指代不明。
- B. 43 percent of them与of the Californians重复；it无所指；根据逻辑含义，最合理的是43 percent与35 percent的对比，而不是today与a decade ago的对比。
- C. Correct；compared with后面跟的是35 percent，其实可以直接选了。
- D. Compared to修饰不清，可以修饰today，也可以修饰主句；43 percent与35 percent无所指；it无所指。
- E. 43 percent与35 percent无所指；it无所指；unlike a decade ago修饰的是Hispanics，比较对象不对等；最合理的是43 percent与35 percent的对比，而不是today与a decade ago的对比。

### 补充说明：

1. E中的today和a decade ago比较

today可以是adverb, 可以是noun

E中的today明显是adverb.

Like做对比时要接noun (phrase), 而a decade ago只能是adverb phrase. 所以like a decade ago本身就是错(我search了所有的OG/Prep题, 也没有一题是有"like X ago").

2. Like做对比时的位置: 1. X, like Y, V+O; 2. Like Y, X+V+O; 3. X+V+O, like Y. 所有对比的对象都是X。  
3. 正确选项改变题目原意的问题:

GMAT中改变原意只是相对性错误, 不能做为判断的第一标准, 只有在各个选项都没有明显语法错误的时候才考虑改变原意的问题, 本题中诸多错误的等级都是远高于改变原意的。在OG和PREP中改变原意的正确选项也多次出现。

## 230. (GWD-8-Q32)

At the annual stockholders meeting, investors heard a presentation on the numerous challenges facing the company, including among them the threat from a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit and the declining sales for the company's powerful microprocessor chip.

- A. including among them the threat from a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit and the declining sales for  
B. which includes the threat of a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit and declining sales of  
C. included among these the threat from a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit as well as a decline in sales for  
D. among them the threat of a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit and the decline in sales of  
E. among these the threat from a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit as well as the decline in sales for

题目释义: ..., investors heard a presentation on the numerous challenges ..., among them ...and....

### 考点:

简洁有效 代词指代 习惯用语

1. 简洁有效, include与among意思重复。  
2. 代词指代, GMAT中为避免指代的歧义与模糊, this/that/these/those通常都不单独指代(注意有例外, 具体见补充说明)。  
3. 习惯用语:  
sales of正确, 意思为“xx的销量”, 没有sales for一说。  
threat of +抽象概念(xx的威胁), threat from+sb.(来自某人的威胁)

### 选项分析:

- A. ① include与among them意思重复; ②尾三词的sales for不是正确的习惯用语, 只有sales of; ③ threat of +抽象概念, threat from+sb, suit是抽象概念, 所以应该用threat of; ④declining sales for应为decline in sales of...才能和前面的the threat of 逻辑含义上平行→both are unfavorable things。  
B. 定语从句中谓语动词用了单数形式includes, 所以which就近修饰了company, 逻辑错误; 同A的④。  
C. 同A的②③④; among these错误, these不能做direct object, 应该用among them; as well as错误, 两

件平行的事情被分了主次。

- D. Correct; 平行对称很完美, 两组“the [abstract notion] of [concrete business/law concept]”的平行; 在本题中including和among them都可以用, 但是不能同时使用, 否则重复。
- E. 同A的②③; among these错误, these不能做direct object, 应该用among them; as well as错误, 两件平行的事情被分了主次。

### 补充说明:

1. among them the threat of a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit and the decline in sales of 的结构分析:

倒装形式的独立主格结构, 实际上是the threat of a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit and the decline in sales of the company's powerful microprocessor chip among them,倒装可以避免头重脚轻, 更重要的是among them中的them离其指代对象challenges更近。

独立主格: among them A and B相当于A and B among them, A and B被倒装移到了后面, 是“名词+介词”形式的独立主格。

2. 关于these的单独指代

prep1-34 正确答案:

Besides adding complementary flavors to many foods, hot sauces stimulate the release of endorphins in the brain, just as exercise does, and these have a pain-relieving effect like morphine's.

其中these指代endorphins。

OG11-115 错误答案(原句):

George Sand (Aurore Lucile Dupin) was one of the first European writers to consider the rural poor to be legitimate subjects for literature and portray these with sympathy and respect in her novels.

错误原因“A To be is unnecessary; these must be replaced by them”

相关解释:

- (1) these不能作direct object(直接宾语), 34中的these是主语, 不是直接宾语
- (2) they指代前面出现的对象, these指代离它最近的对象, 指代都要满足逻辑符合, 主谓一致的要求
- 综上, prep1-34中用了these是可以的。而本题中these是做among的直接宾语, 所以不妥。

### 类似例题链接:

OG10-79 (these vs. them)

George Sand (Aurore Lucile Dupin) was one of the first European writers to consider the rural poor to be legitimate subjects for literature and portray these with sympathy and respect in her novels.

- (A) to be legitimate subjects for literature and portray these
- (B) should be legitimate subjects for literature: portray these
- (C) as being legitimate subjects for literature an portraying them
- (D) as if they were legitimate subjects for literal; and portray them
- (E) legitimate subjects for literature and to portray them

Explanation of Question 79

When the verb *consider* is used to mean "regard" or "deem," it can be used more economically without the *to be* of choice A; *should be* in choice B, *as being* in choice C, and *as if in* choice D are used unidiomatically with this sense of *consider*, and D carries the unwarranted suggestion that Sand is somehow viewing the rural poor hypothetically. Choice E, therefore, is best: each of the other choices inserts an unnecessary, unidiomatic, or misleading phrase before *legitimate subjects*. Moreover, A and B incorrectly use *these* rather than *them* as the pronoun referring to the poor. In C, *portraying* is not parallel

with *to consider*. Only E has *to portray*, although not essential, *to* underscores the parallelism of *portray* and *consider*.

### 231. (T-4-Q3)

Currently 26 billion barrels a year, world consumption of oil is rising at a rate of 2 percent annually.

- A. world consumption of oil is rising at a rate of
- B. the world is consuming oil at an increasing rate of
- C. the world's oil is being consumed at the increasing rate of
- D. the rise in the rate of the world's oil consumption is
- E. oil is consumed by the world at an increasing rate of

题目释义: Currently 26 billion barrels a year, world consumption of oil is rising at ...

#### 考点:

题目释义 逻辑表达

1. 同位语要对修饰对象有解释力, Currently 26 billion barrels a year应对其后的主语具有解释力。
2. is rising at a rate of 2 percent annually与at an increasing rate of 2 percent of annually是不同的逻辑概念: 前者指以某以2%的稳定速率增长, 后者指以一个2%的递增速率(消耗), 后者逻辑上错误。

#### 选项分析:

- A. Correct.
- B. ①同位语要有解释力, 26billion barrels a year无法解释the world; ②改变原意, at an increasing rate of 逻辑错误。
- C. ①同位语要有解释力, 26billion barrels才能解释oil, 26billion barrels a year解释world consumption或者D的the rise。另eg. "50 degrees" would refer to a *temperature*. "2 degrees per century" would refer to a *rise/drop/change in temperature* ②改变原意, 同B。
- D. "the rise in X is SPECIFIC NUMBER"是错误的表达, 可以说 *the rise has been extremely rapid*。
- E. 同C的①②, 另被动语态也显得没有必要的冗赘, 直接world consumption of oil简洁。

### 232. (GWD-4-17)

Although the restaurant company has recently added many new restaurants across the country and its sales have increased dramatically, its sales at restaurants open for more than a year have declined.

- A. the restaurant company has recently added many new restaurants across the country and its sales have increased dramatically, its
- B. the restaurant company has recently added many new restaurants across the country and its sales increased dramatically, its
- C. many new restaurants have recently been opened across the country and its sales increased dramatically, the restaurant company's
- D. having recently added many new restaurants across the country and with its sales increasing dramatically, the restaurant company's



- E. recently adding many new restaurants across the country and having its sales increase dramatically, the restaurant company's

题目释义：Although the restaurant company has recently added ... and its sales have increased ... , its sales ... have declined.

### 考点：

题目释义 逻辑表达 平行对称

1. 逻辑主语，prep+doing, svo. doing的逻辑主语等于主句主语。
2. 代词指代，its应该指代the restaurant company

### 选项分析：

- A. Correct.
- B. has recently added... and its sales increased时态不平行，发生在同一时间且不同主语的事情应该补全时态，并且前面是has，后面是have，则后面的have绝不可省。
- C. its指代模糊；many new restaurants have recently been opened没有体现出动作的发出者，使得句意含糊。
- D. having recently add的逻辑主语应该是the restaurant company，但本句成了the restaurant company's sales；with伴随状语发生时间不定，根据伴随主句的原则，应该是与主句发生时间一致，错误。
- E. adding与having逻辑主语成了sales错误；having adding变为adding，having had改为having，时态的更改引起句意的不合理

### 补充说明：

1. 位于句首的doing的动作发出者或者done的动作承受者，即为该分词的逻辑主语，等于主句主语。  
doing..., SVO = S do  
done..., SVO = S be done
2. Having done, SVO  
非谓语动词的完成式—动词发生在主句前
3. 需要关注逻辑主语的几种短语：  
(1) prep+doing, SVO      prep=in/by/for/after/in addition to  
(2) adj.+prep+n., SVO

## 233. (GWD-9-Q19)

In many nations, criminal law does not apply to corporations, but in the United States today, a corporation commits a crime whenever one of its employees commits a crime, if the employee acted within the scope of his or her authority and if the corporation benefited as a result.

- A. a corporation commits a crime whenever one of its employees commits a crime, if the employee acted
- B. a corporation is committing a crime whenever one of its employees committed a crime, if those employees were acting
- C. corporations commit a crime whenever one of its employees does, on the condition that the employee acts
- D. corporations commit crimes whenever an employee of those corporations commit a crime, if it was

while acting

- E. the corporation whose employees commit a crime, commits a crime, whenever the employee acted

题目释义: ..., but in the United States today, a corporation commits a crime whenever ..., if the employee acted ... and if the corporation benefited ...

### 考点:

平行对称 主谓一致

1. 平行对称, GMAT中未划线部分与划线部分的平行对称多次出现, 却也是容易忽略的考点。

### 选项分析:

- A. Correct; 虚拟条件句从句+正常语气主句。  
B. were acting应为acted, 与benefited对应; those无所指, 前面是one of its employees; 未划线部分的his or her authority说明主语应该是单数。  
C. its与其指代对象corporations单复数不一致; on the condition that与后面的if不平行。  
D. an employee与commit主谓不一致; an employee of those corporations表达的是一个员工就职于多个公司, 逻辑不合理; 根据逻辑含义it应该指代crime, acting的逻辑主语是it, 不合理, 且后面的his or her将无所指。  
E. whenever与if不平行, 结构复杂明显不如A选项; the employee无法指代employees; 全句主谓之间以一个逗号分开, 使得句子不完整; the corporation第一次出现不应该用定冠词the; 两个commit a crime连用, 句式awkward。

### 补充说明:

可以发现his or her这样的表达在GMAT这样正式的文体中也是接受的。

## 234. (GWD-3-Q28)

The coyote is one of several recent ecological success stories: along with the white-tailed deer, the moose, and other species that are enlarging their natural domains, they have established themselves as supreme adapters in an era when the capability to adjust to the environmental changes wrought by human beings has created a whole new class of dominant large mammals.

- A. they have established themselves as supreme adapters in an era when the capability  
B. they have established themselves as being supreme adapters in an era when being able  
C. it has established itself as a supreme adapter in an era when to be able  
D. it has established itself as being a supreme adapter in an era when its ability  
E. it has established itself as a supreme adapter in an era when the ability

题目释义: The coyote is ...: along with..., it has established ...when the ability ...has created ...

### 考点:

主谓一致 准确用词

1. being在GMAT中常常是冗余的, 冗余的情况基本是三种: 多余、冒充as、冒充to be。

而极少出现的正确being的情况基本集中在两种：被动动名词eg. prep+being+done, 进行时的被动语态eg. is being done。

2. 固定搭配:

be able to do

be capable of doing

have ability to do ; ability of sb. to do

have capability to do doing ; capability of sb. to do doing

选项分析:

- A. they have错误: 句首的coyoto是单数, 而且the white-tailed deer与the moose都是单数, 所以与他们对应的coyoto也应该是单数形式, 并用it指代。
- B. ①同上; ②as being中being冗余; being able to不如the ability简洁。
- C. 虽然不定式能够作为名词结构并作为主语, 但后面一般接系动词, 而不是has created, 且形式上不如the ability简洁。
- D. as being中being冗余; 由于it指代的the coyote也只是类指, 所以its ability显得是具体指代了, illogical。
- E. Correct。

补充说明:

类指 — from *A Comprehensive Grammar of English Language*:

1、不定冠词类指用法的限制: 因为 a/an 的类指用法指的是某一类中任何一个具有代表性的成员。所以 any 可以替换 a/an。但类指的 a/an 不能用来表示那些属于整个类别的特性。

如 A tiger is becoming almost extinct.是错的, 因为 extinct 是整个老虎类别的特性。

所以只能用 The tiger is/Tigers are becoming almost extinct.

2、零冠词的类指用法: 其逻辑含义是把类别当作一个无区分的整体。

3、定冠词的类指用法:

(1) 与单数名词短语连用: 表示一个由典型的样品所代表的那个类别 (本题属于这种用法)

(2) 与复数名词短语连用: 国籍名称、以形容词为中心词指一群人的名词短语(the unemployed)

## 235. (GWD3-Q22)

On account of a law passed in 1933, making it a crime punishable by imprisonment that a United States citizen hold gold in the form of bullion or coins, immigrants found that on arrival in the United States they had to surrender all of the gold they had brought with them.

- A. On account of a law passed in 1933, making it a crime punishable by imprisonment that a United States citizen hold
- B. With a law passed in 1933 that makes it a crime punishable by imprisonment that a United States citizen hold
- C. A law passed in 1933 that made it a crime punishable by imprisonment for a United States citizen holding
- D. Because of a law passed in 1933 making it a crime punishable by imprisonment for a United States citizen to hold
- E. Due to a law being passed in 1933 that makes it a crime punishable by imprisonment for a United States citizen to hold

题目释义: Because of ..., immigrants found that ...

### 考点:

主谓一致 习惯用语 逻辑表达

1. 分词短语放在句中, 就常出现逻辑主语混乱, 因为可能从语法上说同时可以向前或者向后修饰。如本题A选项。
2. 主谓一致, 划线部分末的主谓一致同时又在层层结构中间, 此题曾作为GWD争议题, 因为大家都没看到hold的主谓一致问题。
3. make it adj./n. (for sb.) to do固定搭配。

### 选项分析:

- A. ①hold与a United States citizen主谓不一致; ②making放在句中夹心修饰③make it a crime that sb. do sth.搭配错误, 应该是a crime for sb. to do sth.
- B. ①hold与a United States citizen主谓不一致; ②阐明法律法规的内容习惯使用doing; ③make it a crime that sb. do sth.搭配错误, 应该是a crime for sb. to do sth.; ④with短语做伴随状语, 逻辑主语为immigrants, 表达的是law是为immigrants拥有的, 逻辑错误。
- C. ①it指代不清, it可以指代不定式, 但是不能指代holding这样的现在分词; 正确的短语是make it a crime for sb. to do, 用doing错误②法律法规习惯使用doing; ③A law passed in 1993 that...有作为immigrants同位语的歧义
- D. Correct; Because of结构后面需要紧跟核心原因, 这里核心原因就是law, 所以允许 (见prep1-203补充说明, 其中的D选项的because of moisture就不是核心原因)
- E. ①being冗余; ②阐明法律法规的内容习惯使用doing; ③由于due to放在句首有引导形容词短语的歧义, 在GMAT中不放在句首

### 补充说明:

Gold Reserve Act: (From Wikipedia)

"In order to end the 1930s general bank crisis, U.S. president Franklin D. Roosevelt issued Executive Order 6102 in 1933 and the Gold Reserve Act in 1934, which outlawed the circulation and private possession of United States gold coins for general circulation, with an exemption for collector coins. "

The law ended in 1974.

## 正确的句子

### 新prep1

170. Margaret Mead, the best-known anthropologist of the twentieth century, helped shape public opinion in such fundamentally important areas as attitudes toward children and families and the relative merits of competition and cooperation.

171. One of the primary distinctions between our intelligence and that of other primates may lie not so much in any specific skill as in our ability to extend knowledge gained in one context to new and different ones.

172. Introduced by Italian merchants resident in London during the sixteenth century, life insurance in England remained until the end of the seventeenth century a specialized contract between individual underwriters and their clients, typically ship owners, overseas merchants, or professional moneylenders.

173. The widely accepted big-bang theory holds that the universe began in an explosive instant 10 to 20 billion years ago and has been expanding ever since.

174. Often major economic shifts are so gradual as to be indistinguishable at first from ordinary fluctuations in the financial markets.

175. Experts estimate that ten times as much petroleum exists in such sources as tar sands, heavy oil, and perhaps even shale as conventional reservoirs.

176. For at least two decades before the Venetian artist Giovanni Battista Tiepolo died in 1770, he had been the most admired painter in Italy.

177. In her 26 years in the forests of Gombe, Jane Goodall collected data that proved that chimpanzees exhibit the kind of curiosity by which new patterns of behavior and expression can be passed on from one to another by imitation and practice.

178. Last week local shrimpers held a news conference to take some credit for the resurgence of the rare Kemp's ridley turtle, saying that their compliance with laws requiring turtle-excluder devices on shrimp nets is protecting adult sea turtles.

179. Unlike the independent candidacies of George Wallace in 1968 and John Anderson in 1980, H. Ross Perot's independent run for the presidency in 1992 arose not from an unsuccessful effort to gain a major party nomination but from a desire to establish a viable third party in American politics.

180. Noting that the Federal Reserve had raised a key short-term interest rate again last month, analysts said that they expected orders for durable goods to decline soon because rising interest rates make buying on credit more

expensive.

181. The number of people flying first class on domestic flights rose sharply in 1990, doubling the increase of the previous year.

182. The organic food industry has organized a successful grassroots campaign—using Web sites, public meetings, and mass mailings—that has convinced the Department of Agriculture to change the proposed federal regulations for organically grown food.

183. Despite recent increases in sales and cash flow that have propelled automobile companies' common stocks to new highs, several industry analysts expect automakers, in order to conserve cash, to be more conservative than they have been in setting dividends.

184. Japan's abundant rainfall and the typically mild temperatures throughout most of the country have produced a lush vegetation cover and, despite the mountainous terrain and generally poor soils, have made it possible to raise a variety of crops.

185. Because the budget package in Congress promises a combination of higher taxes and reduced spending that may slow economic growth, many in the credit markets wonder whether the Federal Reserve will compensate and help the economy by keeping interest rates low, or perhaps even by pushing them lower.

186. Laos has a land area comparable to that of Great Britain but a population of only 4 million people, many of whom are members of hill tribes ensconced in the virtually inaccessible mountain valleys of the north.

187. United States Senator Daniel Inouye was appointed to several posts within the Democratic party during his first term, including assistant majority whip and vice-chair of the Democratic Senatorial Committee.

188. Neuroscientists, having amassed a wealth of knowledge over the past twenty years about the brain and its development from birth to adulthood, are now drawing solid conclusions about how the human brain grows and how babies acquire language.

189. Less successful after she emigrated to New York than she had been in her native Germany, photographer Lotte Jacobi nevertheless earned a small group of discerning admirers, and her photographs were eventually exhibited in prestigious galleries across the United States.

190. The thirteen original British colonies in North America, some formed as commercial ventures, others as religious havens, each had a written charter that set forth its form of government and the rights of the colonists.

191. The loan company announced it would soon lend money to borrowers with proven records of not paying back their loans on time, a group collectively known as the subprime lending market.

192. In 1988, the Council on Economic Priorities began publishing Shopping for a Better World, whose thesis was simple: consumers have the power to change companies by the simple expedient of refusing to buy.



193. New equipment and other improvements reduced the amount of time—from eleven hours in 1982 to six in 1988—workers needed to produce a ton of steel.

194. Whereas the honeybee's stinger is heavily barbed and cannot be retracted from the skin, the yellow jacket's stinger is comparatively smooth, and can therefore be pulled out and used again.

195. (GWD-7-Q13) Like the grassy fields and old pastures that the upland sandpiper needs for feeding and nesting when it returns in May after wintering in the Argentine Pampas, the bird itself is vanishing in the northeastern United States as a result of residential and industrial development and of changes in farming practices.

196. (T-9-Q26) There are several ways to build solid walls using just mud or clay, but the most extensively used method has been to form the mud or clay into bricks, and, after some preliminary air drying or sun drying, to lay them in the wall in mud mortar.

197. (GWD-8-Q20) The systematic clearing of forests in the United States created farmland (especially in the Northeast) and gave consumers relatively inexpensive houses and furniture, but it also caused erosion and very quickly deforested whole regions.

198. (GWD-1-Q23) Past assessments of the Brazilian rain forest have used satellite images to tally deforested areas, where farmers and ranchers have clear-cut and burned all the trees, but such work has not addressed either logging, which removes only selected trees, or surface fires that burn down individual trees but do not denude the forest.

199. (GWD5-Q4) The Quechuans believed that all things participated in both the material level and the mystical level of reality, and many individual Quechuans claimed to have direct contact with the latter by means of an ichana (dream) experience.

200. (T-3-Q14) A scrub jay can remember when it cached a particular piece of food in a particular place, researchers have discovered, and tends not to bother recovering a perishable treat stored long enough to have rotted.

201. (GWD30-Q4) The three women, liberal activists who strongly support legislation in favor of civil rights and environmental protection, have consistently received the unqualified support of labor.

202. (GWD-27-Q7) Providing initial evidence that airports are a larger source of pollution than they were once believed to be, environmentalists in Chicago report that the total amount of pollutant emitted annually by vehicles at O'Hare International Airport is twice that emitted annually by all motor vehicles in the Chicago metropolitan area.

203. (T-4-Q29) In late 1997, the chambers inside the pyramid of the Pharaoh Menkaure at Giza were closed to visitors for cleaning and repair because moisture exhaled by tourists had raised the humidity within them to such levels that salt from the stone was crystallizing and fungus was growing on the walls.

204. (T-9-Q16) The nineteenth-century chemist Humphry Davy presented the results of his early experiments in his "Essay on Heat and Light," a critique of all chemistry since Robert Boyle as well as a vision of a new chemistry that Davy hoped to found.

205. (T-9-Q15) The commission's office of compliance, inspections, and investigations plans to intensify its scrutiny of stock analysts to investigate not only whether research is an independent function at brokerage firms, but also whether conflicts result when analysts own the stocks they write about or when they are paid for their work by a firm's investment banking division.
206. (GWD-21-Q29) While studying the genetic makeup of corn, Barbara McClintock discovered a new class of mutant genes, a discovery that led to greater understanding of cell differentiation.
207. (T-4-Q30) Unlike the shuttle and earlier spacecraft, which were capable of carrying sufficient power in fuel cells and batteries for their short flights, a permanently orbiting space station will have to generate its own electricity.
208. (GWD-11-40) Scientists who studied the famous gold field known as Serra Pelada concluded that the rich lode was produced not by the accepted methods of ore formation but by swarms of microbes that over millions of years concentrated the gold from jungle soils and rivers and rocks.
209. (T-3-Q7) In Scotland, the wild salmon's numbers have been reduced by uncontrolled deep-sea and coastal netting, by pollution, and by various other threats to the fish's habitat.
210. (GWD-1-Q2) By merging its two publishing divisions, the company will increase to 10 percent from 6 percent its share of the country's \$21 billion book market, which ranges from obscure textbooks to mass-market paperbacks.
211. (GWD-8-Q39) Whereas in mammals the tiny tubes that convey nutrients to bone cells are arrayed in parallel lines, in birds the tubes form a random pattern.
212. (GWD-10-Q1) According to a survey of graduating medical students conducted by the Association of American Medical Colleges, minority graduates are nearly four times as likely as other graduates to plan on practicing in socioeconomically deprived areas.
213. (GWD-3-Q34) Shoppers in sporting goods stores, unlike those in department stores, do very little impulse shopping; someone who comes in for a basketball will leave with a basketball only and not buy a pair of skis and a boomerang as well.
214. (T-9-Q31) Scholars who once thought Native American literatures were solely oral narratives recorded by missionaries or anthropologists now understand this body of work to consist of both oral literatures and the written works of Native American authors, who have been publishing since 1772.
215. (GWD-3-Q3) A study by the Ocean Wildlife Campaign urged states to undertake a number of remedies to reverse a decline in the shark population, including establishing size limits for shark catches, closing state waters for shark fishing during pupping season, and requiring commercial fishers to have federal shark permits.
216. (T-3-Q39. 天山-7-39) Plants are more efficient than fungi at acquiring carbon, in the form of carbon dioxide, and converting it to energy-rich sugars.
217. (T-3-Q17. 天山-7-14) Not one of the potential investors is expected to make an offer to buy First Interstate

Bank until a merger agreement is signed that includes a provision for penalties if the deal were not to be concluded.

218. (GWD7-Q4) Only seven people this century have been killed by the great white shark, the man-eater of the movies—fewer than have been killed by bee stings.

219. (GWD-12-Q20) Approved April 24, 1800, the act of Congress that made provision for the removal of the government of the United States to the new federal city, Washington, D.C., also established the Library of Congress.

220. (GWD-24-8) The results of the company's cost-cutting measures are evident in its profits, which have increased five percent during the first three months of this year after falling over the last two years.

221. (GWD-12-Q34) In an attempt to guarantee the security of its innovative water purification method, the company required each employee to sign a confidentiality agreement prohibiting disclosure of its water purification methods to any company using an analogous purification process.

222. (GWD-1-Q34) Although people in France and the United States consume fatty foods at about the same rate, the death rates from heart disease are far lower in France.

223. (GWD-23-Q23) After several years of rapid growth, the health care company became one of the largest health care providers in the metropolitan area, but then proved unable to handle the increase in business, falling months behind in paying doctors and hospitals.

224. (GWD-12-Q13) Although energy prices have tripled in the United States over the last two years, research indicates that few people have significantly reduced the amount of driving they do or made fuel efficiency a priority when shopping for cars.

225. (GWD-1-Q24) By sucking sap from the young twigs of the hemlock tree, the woolly adelgid retards tree growth, causing needles to change color from deep green to grayish green and to drop prematurely.

226. (GWD-3-Q1) The four-million-year-old fossilized skeleton known as Lucy is so small compared with many other skeletons presumed to be of the same species that some paleontologists have argued that Lucy represents a different lineage.

227. (GWD-3-Q41) In ancient Thailand, much of the local artisans' creative energy was expended on the creation of Buddha images and on construction and decoration of the temples in which they were enshrined.

228. (GWD-8-Q2) Jazz pianist and composer Thelonious Monk produced a body of work that was rooted in the stride-piano tradition of Willie (The Lion) Smith and Duke Ellington, yet in many ways he stood apart from the mainstream jazz repertory.

229. (T-9-Q34) Just as an archaeologist needs a background in art history to evaluate finds of ancient art, so a nautical archaeologist needs specialized knowledge of the history and theory of ship design in order to understand shipwrecks.

230. (T-4-Q4) A novelist who turned away from literary realism to write romantic stories about the peasant life and landscape of northern Sweden, Selma Lagerlöf became in 1909 the first woman and also the first Swedish writer to win the Nobel Prize for Literature.
231. (T-9-Q38) The globalization of financial-services companies has been a boon to money launderers, because it allows money placed in a bank in a less regulated jurisdiction to be transferred to a branch in a more regulated one.
232. (TTGWD4-Q1) The Acoma and Hopi are probably the two oldest surviving Pueblo communities, both dating back at least a thousand years.
233. (GWD-12-Q32) Prospecting for gold during the California gold rush was a relatively easy task, since erosion, prehistoric glacier movement, and ancient, gold-bearing riverbeds thrust to the surface by volcanic activity put gold literally within reach of anybody with a pan or shovel.
234. (GWD-24-36) The Industrial Revolution, which made possible the mass production of manufactured goods, was marked by the use of new machines, new energy sources, and new basic materials.
235. (GWD-9-Q1) A mixture of poems and short fiction, Jean Toomer's Cane has been called one of the three best novels ever written by a Black American—the others being Richard Wright's Native Son and Ralph Ellison's Invisible Man.
236. (GWD-1-Q8) The 32 species that make up the dolphin family are closely related to whales and in fact include the animal known as the killer whale, which can grow to be 30 feet long and is famous for its aggressive hunting pods.
237. (GWD-8-Q16: GWD-13-15) Concerns about public health led to the construction between 1876 and 1904 of three separate sewer systems to serve metropolitan Boston.
238. (GWD-4-4) A new hair-growth drug is being sold for three times the price, per milligram, that the drug's maker charges for another product with the same active ingredient.
239. (GWD-12-Q3) Were it not for the fusion-powered heat and radiation that rush from its core, a star would collapse under its own weight.
240. (GWD-12-Q30) According to public health officials, in 1998 Massachusetts became the first state in which more babies were born to women over the age of thirty than under it.
241. (GWD-9-Q39) Over 75 percent of the energy produced in France derives from nuclear power, whereas nuclear power accounts for just over 33 percent of the energy produced in Germany.
242. (GWD-1-Q38) Retail sales rose 8/10 of 1 percent in August, intensifying expectations that personal spending in the July-September quarter would more than double the 1.4 percent growth rate in personal spending for the previous quarter.
243. (GWD-10-Q8) Sulfur dioxide, a major contributor to acid rain, is an especially serious pollutant because it

diminishes the respiratory system's ability to deal with all other pollutants.

244. (GWD-10-Q39) A government advisory committee in Japan called for the breakup of Nippon Telephone and Telegraph Company, the world's largest telephone company, into two local phone companies and one long-distance provider.

245. (GWD-18-Q11) In no other historical sighting did Halley's comet cause such a worldwide sensation as in its return of 1910–1911.

246. (GWD-9-Q27) Scientists have identified an asteroid, 2000 BF19, that is about half a mile wide and that, if it were to strike Earth, could do tremendous damage to part of the planet but would probably not cause planetwide destruction.

247. (GWD-3-Q39) Minivans carry as many as seven passengers and, compared with most sport utility vehicles, cost less, get better gas mileage, allow passengers to get in and out more easily, and have a smoother ride.

248. (GWD-9-Q32) The United States minted about 857 million silver-colored "Susan B. Anthony" dollars between 1979 and 1981, but the coin proved unpopular because it looked and felt too much like a quarter.

249. (GWD-10-Q36:GWD-11-19) In Hungary, as in much of Eastern Europe, an overwhelming proportion of women work, many of them in middle management and light industry.

250. (GWD30-Q29) Researchers agreed that the study of new treatments for heart attack patients was extremely important but that more research was needed to determine whether balloon angioplasty preceded by ultrasound is any better for heart attack patients than the balloon procedure by itself.

251. (GWD-1-Q29) Citing faulty voting equipment, confusing ballots, voter error, and problems at polling places, a new study of the 2000 United States presidential election has estimated that 4 million to 6 million of the 100 million votes cast were not counted.

252. (GWD7-Q1) Although producer prices rose at an unexpectedly steep rate in September, analysts said that the increase resulted mostly from temporary factors and did not necessarily foreshadow a resurgence of inflation.

253. (GWD 4-Q13) A leading figure in the Scottish enlightenment, Adam Smith wrote two major books that are to democratic capitalism what Marx's Das Kapital is to socialism.

254. (GWD-29-Q36) Section 301 of the 1988 Omnibus Trade and Competitiveness Act enables the United States Trade Representative to single out a country as an unfair trader, begin trade negotiations with that country, and, if the negotiations do not conclude to the United States government's satisfaction, impose sanctions.

255. (GWD-12-Q19) Being heavily committed to a course of action, especially one that has worked well in the past, is likely to make an executive miss signs of incipient trouble or misinterpret them when they do appear.

256. (T-4-Q1 TS-7-41) Scientists have dated sharp-edged flakes of stone found in the fine-grained sediments of a dry

riverbed in the Afar region of Ethiopia to between 2.52 and 2.60 million years ago, pushing back by more than 150,000 years the earliest date at which humans are known to have made stone tools.

257. (GWD6-Q30) Though subject to the same wild-animal control efforts that killed off almost all the wolves in North America over the past century, the coyote, because of its amazing ability to adapt to the presence of humans, has been able to expand its range into Alaska and Central America.

258. (GWD-9-Q2) In an attempt to produce premium oysters, a firm in Scotland has developed a prototype of a submersible oyster farm that sits below the surface of the ocean and provides ideal conditions for the mollusks' growth.

## 新prep2

152. Unlike Schoenberg, whose twelve-tone system dominated the music of the postwar period, Bartók founded no school and left behind only a handful of disciples.

153. For centuries, people on sea voyages washed their clothes by placing the dirty laundry in a strong cloth bag, tossing it overboard, and letting the ship drag the bag for hours.

154. Nowhere in early American literature is the influence of Jane Austen more apparent than in the novels of James Fenimore Cooper.

155. With surface temperatures estimated at minus 230 degrees Fahrenheit, Jupiter's moon Europa has long been considered far too cold to support life, its 60 square miles of water thought to be frozen from top to bottom.

156. Deborah Aguiar-Velez, founder of Sistemas Corporation, has written a computer textbook in Spanish so that people who speak Spanish do not have to rely on translations from English.

157. The striking differences between the semantic organization of Native American languages and that of European languages, in both grammar and vocabulary, have led scholars to think about the degree to which differences in language may be correlated with nonlinguistic differences.

158. Sales of wines declined in the late 1980s, but they began to grow again after the 1991 report that linked moderate consumption of alcohol, and particularly of red wine, with a reduced risk of heart disease

159. The first detailed study of magpie attacks in Australia indicates that by the time they reached adulthood, 98 percent of men and 75 percent of women born in the country had been attacked by the birds.

160. Once designed with its weight concentrated in a metal center, the discus used in track competition is now lined with lead around the perimeter, thereby improving stability in flight and resulting in longer throws.

161. Deserts are inhabited by several distinct animal species, each with its own method of adapting to long periods of



moisture shortage.

162. Orb-weaving spiders such as the argiope build webs that are essentially wheel-like, with an outer rim and a number of spokes emanating from the hub.

163. Because the new maritime code provides that even tiny islets can be the basis for claims to the fisheries and oil fields of large sea areas, it has already stimulated international disputes over uninhabited islands.

164. Mixed with an equal part of water, ethylene glycol, a compound commonly used as an automotive antifreeze, is effective at temperatures as low as -30 degrees Fahrenheit.

165. Some scientists have been critical of the laboratory tests conducted by the Federal Drug Administration on the grounds that the amounts of suspected carcinogens fed to animals far exceed those that humans could consume.

166. The period when the great painted caves at Lascaux and Altamira were occupied by Upper Paleolithic peoples has been established by carbon dating, but what is much more difficult to determine is the use to which primitive peoples put the caves, the reason for their decoration, and the meaning of the magnificently depicted animals.

167. On August 13, 1868, the warship U. S. S. Wateree, anchored in the harbor of Arica, off the coast of what is now northern Chile, rode on the crest of a tsunami (seismic sea wave) and came to rest in the Atacama Desert, some three miles up the coast and almost two miles inland from its initial anchorage.

168. (GWD-18-Q18) The first shots of the American Revolution, fired at Lexington and Concord, Massachusetts, were, according to legend, heard around the world, but news of these shots took four days by swift messenger to reach New York City and another eleven days to reach Charleston, South Carolina.

169. (GWD-3-Q11) Retailers reported moderate gains in their November sales, as much because their sales a year earlier had been so bad as because shoppers were getting a head start on buying their holiday gifts.

170. (GWD21-Q12) Birds known as honeyguides exhibit a unique pattern of behavior: the bird leads another animal, such as a honey-badger or a human, to a bees' nest by chattering as it flies ahead; after the larger animal takes honey, the bird eats the wax and bee larvae.

171. (GWD-10-Q2:GWD-11-10) Marconi conceived of the radio as a tool for private conversation that could substitute for the telephone; instead, it has become precisely the opposite, a tool for communicating with a large, public audience.

172. (GWD7-Q40) Since February, the Federal Reserve has raised its short-term interest rate target five times, and because of the economy's continued strength, analysts have been predicting for weeks that the target will be raised again in November.

173 (GWD-10-Q18) In analyzing campaign expenditures, the media have focused on the high costs and low ethics of campaign finance, but they have generally overlooked the cost of actually administering elections, which includes facilities, transport, printing, staffing, and technology.

174. (GWD-30-Q30) An exceptionally literate people, Icelanders publish more books per capita than do the people of any other nation.
175. (GWD-9-Q3) With the cost of wireless service plummeting in the last year and mobile phones becoming increasingly common, many people are now using their mobile phones to make calls across a wide region at night and on weekends, when numerous wireless companies provide unlimited airtime for a relatively small monthly fee.
176. (GWD17-Q12) Mauritius was a British colony for almost 200 years, but except in the domains of administration and teaching, the English language was never really spoken on the island.
177. (T-4-Q12) For the farmer who takes care to keep them cool, provided with high-energy feed, and milked regularly, Holstein cows will produce an average of 2,275 gallons of milk each per year.
178. (GWD-1-Q21) The discovery of twenty-one ceramic dog figurines during the excavation of a 1,000-year-old Hohokam village in Tempe, Arizona, has nearly doubled the number of these artifacts known to exist.
179. (GWD-9-Q15) Dressed as a man and using the name Robert Shurtleff, Deborah Sampson, the first woman to draw a soldier's pension, joined the Continental Army in 1782 at the age of 22, was injured three times, and was discharged in 1783 because she had become too ill to serve.
180. (GWD-11-39) For global managers working with overseas clients, understanding cultural norms is at least as important as grasping the pivotal business issues.
181. (GWD-24-38) In January 1994 an oil barge ran aground off the coast of San Juan, Puerto Rico, and its cargo of 750,000 gallons leaked into the ocean, polluting the city's beaches.
182. (GWD-18-Q17) Rivaling the pyramids of Egypt or even the ancient cities of the Maya as an achievement, the army of terra-cotta warriors created to protect Qin Shi Huang, China's first emperor, in his afterlife is more than 2,000 years old and took 700,000 artisans more than 36 years to complete.
183. (GWD-6-Q22) Very reluctant to have any extra weight on his plane when he attempted his solo transatlantic flight, Charles Lindbergh refused to carry even a pound of mail, despite being offered \$1,000 to do so.
184. (GWD-10-Q41) In 1713, Alexander Pope began his translation of the Iliad, a work that took him seven years to complete and that literary critic Samuel Johnson, Pope's contemporary, pronounced the greatest translation in any language.
185. (GWD-8-Q41) When drive-ins were at the height of their popularity in the late 1950s, some 4,000 existed in the United States, but today there are fewer than one-quarter as many.
186. (GWD-6-Q41) The greatest road system built in the Americas prior to the arrival of Christopher Columbus, the Incan highway was over 2,500 miles long, extending from northern Ecuador through Peru to southern Chile.

187. (GWD-1-Q32) To develop more accurate population forecasts, demographers would have to know a great deal more than they do now about the social and economic determinants of fertility.

188. (GWD-7-Q33) The health benefits of tea have been the subject of much research; besides possibly preventing or inhibiting some forms of cancer, the brewed leaves of Camellia sinensis may also play a role in reducing the risk of heart disease and stroke.

189. (GWD3-Q30) Today's technology allows manufacturers to make small cars that are more fuel-efficient than those at any other time in production history.

190. (GWD-28-Q24) Until the passage of the Piracy and Counterfeiting Amendments Act in 1982, a first-time charge of copyright infringement was merely a misdemeanor charge; therefore, federal prosecutors were unlikely to pursue criminal copyright infringers, and offenders were subject to relatively small penalties.

191. (GWD-10-Q24) For the last five years the Dutch economy has grown faster than the economies of Britain, France, and Germany, and the unemployment rate has remained well below that of the other three countries.

192. (GWD-7-Q20) The first trenches cut into a 500-acre site at Tell Hamoukar, Syria, have yielded strong evidence that centrally administered complex societies in northern regions of the Middle East arose simultaneously with but independently of the more celebrated city-states of southern Mesopotamia, in what is now southern Iraq.

193. (T-3-Q2) The honeybee's stinger is heavily barbed and stays where it is inserted, with the result that the act of stinging causes the bee to sustain a fatal injury.

194. (GWD-11-32) Since 1975 so many people have been moving to Utah that the Mormons, who once represented 75 percent of the population, now account for only half.

195. (GWD-24-Q19) In archaeology, there must be a balance among explaining the value and workings of archaeology, revealing the mysteries of past and present cultures, and promoting respect for archaeological sites.

196. (GWD-1-Q41) Leaching, the recovery of copper from the drainage water of mines, was a well-established method of mineral extraction as early as the eighteenth century, but until about 25 years ago miners did not realize that bacteria take an active part in the process.

197. (GWD-1-Q16) Soaring television costs accounted for more than half the spending in the presidential campaign of 1992, a greater proportion than in any previous election.

198. (GWD-18-Q31) Between 1990 and 2000 the global economy grew more than it did during the 10,000 years from the beginning of agriculture to 1950.

199. (GWD-1-Q19) Recently physicians have determined that stomach ulcers are caused not by stress, alcohol, or rich foods, but by a bacterium that dwells in the mucous lining of the stomach.

200. (GWD-6-Q8) Many financial experts believe that policy makers at the Federal Reserve, now viewing the

economy as balanced between moderate growth and low inflation, are almost certain to leave interest rates unchanged for the foreseeable future.

201. (T-3-Q18) Spanish poet Juan Ramón Jiménez, who won the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1956, was so embarrassed in his later years by what he considered the excessive sentiment in the poems in his first two collections that he destroyed every copy he could find.

202. (GWD-3-Q27) Pennsylvania was once a predominantly grain-producing state, but competition in the mid-nineteenth century from large western farms gradually caused the state's farmers to turn to livestock raising.

203. (GWD-9-Q26) Growing evidence that coastal erosion occurs continuously, not just in calamitous bursts such as hurricanes, has led scientists and planners to urge a stringent new approach to limiting development along the nation's shoreline.

204. (GWD-8-Q23) A New York City ordinance of 1897 regulating the use of bicycles mandated a maximum speed of eight miles an hour, required cyclists to keep feet on pedals and hands on handlebars at all times, and granted pedestrians right-of-way.

205. (GWD-9-Q17) Unlike most other mergers in the utility industry, which have been driven by the need to save money and extend companies' service areas, the merger of the nation's leading gas company and leading electric company is intended to create a huge network for marketing the utilities in question as states open their utility markets to competition.

206. (GWD-13-30) For the first time in the modern era, non-Hispanic Whites are officially a minority in California, amounting to a little less than half the population of the state, down from nearly three-quarters a decade ago.

207. (GWD-24-34) The study of the fruit fly, a household nuisance but a time-honored experimental subject, has enabled scientists to begin to unravel the secrets of how embryos develop.

208. (GWD-24-17) The yield of natural gas from Norway's Troll gas field is expected to increase annually until the year 2005 and then to stabilize at six billion cubic feet a day, an extraction rate that will allow at least 50 years' production.

209. (GWD-10-Q21) Despite the growing number of people who purchase plane tickets online, airline executives are convinced that, just as one-third of bank customers still prefer human tellers to automatic teller machines, many travelers will still use travel agents.

210. (GWD-12-Q31) Emily Dickinson's letters to Susan Huntington Dickinson, which were written over a period beginning a few years before Susan's marriage to Emily's brother and ending shortly before Emily's death in 1886, outnumber her letters to anyone else.

211. (GWD-5-Q34) Many entomologists say that campaigns to eradicate the fire ant in the United States have failed because the chemicals that were used were effective only in wiping out the ant's natural enemies, thus making it easier for the ant to spread.

212. (GWD-26-Q23) Trans World Entertainment Corporation, which owns the Record Town and Saturday Matinee retail chains, announced it was closing up to one fourth of its stores because of poor sales.

213. (GWD-30-Q2) Caribou are wary animals with excellent hearing, so to stalk them over the treeless landscape and get close enough to kill one with nothing but a handheld lance, as Dorset people did, required exceptional hunting skill.

214. (GWD-8-Q1:GWD-13-13) As secretary of labor, Frances Perkins used her considerable influence with Franklin D. Roosevelt to prevent him from restraining strikes by longshoremen and automobile workers.

215. (GWD-31-Q28) Rock samples taken from the remains of an asteroid about twice the size of the 6-mile-wide asteroid that eradicated the dinosaurs have been dated at 3.47 billion years old and thus are evidence of the earliest known asteroid impact on Earth.

216. (GWD-13-1) Although she had been known as an effective legislator first in the Texas Senate and later in the United States House of Representatives, Barbara Jordan did not become a nationally recognized figure until 1974, when she participated in the hearings on the impeachment of President Richard Nixon, which were televised nationwide.

217. (GWD-8-Q11) There are no legal limits, as there are for cod and haddock, on the size of monkfish that can be caught, a circumstance that contributes to their depletion through overfishing.

218. (T-4-Q33) In attempting to solve the problems caused by a lowering of the price of oil, oil companies operating in the North Sea have taken a variety of approaches, which include reducing employment, using new technology to pump oil more efficiently from smaller fields, and finding innovative ways to cut the cost of building and operating platforms.

219. (GWD-8-Q34: GWD-13-28) Fossils of the arm of a sloth, found in Puerto Rico in 1991, have been dated at 34 million years old, making the sloth the earliest known mammal on the Greater Antilles islands.

220. (GWD-6-Q31) That some fraternal twins resemble each other greatly while others look quite dissimilar highlights an interesting and often overlooked feature of fraternal-twin pairs, namely that they vary considerably on a spectrum of genetic relatedness.

221. (GWD-7-Q2) The first commercially successful drama to depict Black family life sympathetically and the first play by a Black woman to be produced on Broadway, Lorraine Hansberry's A Raisin in the Sun won the New York Drama Critics' Circle Award in 1959 and was later made into both a film and a musical.

222. (GWD-12-Q14) In 1914 a total of 469,000 cars and trucks were produced in the United States, but in 1929 almost twice that number of trucks alone came off the assembly lines.

223. (T-4-Q16) Humans have been damaging the environment for centuries by overcutting trees and farming too intensively, and though some protective measures, such as the establishment of national forests and wildlife

sanctuaries, were taken decades ago, great increases in population and in the intensity of industrialization are causing a worldwide ecological crisis.

224. (GWD-8-Q17) Fossils of a whale that beached on an African shore more than a million years ago and was subsequently butchered by hominids have been recovered by paleontologists.

225. (GWD-3-Q39) Minivans carry as many as seven passengers, and compared with sport utility vehicles, most cost less, get better gas mileage, allow passengers to get in and out more easily, and have a smoother, more car-like ride.

226. (GWD-4-34) Building on civilizations that preceded them in coastal Peru, the Mochica developed their own elaborate society, based on the cultivation of such crops as corn and beans, the harvesting of fish and seafood, and the exploitation of other wild and domestic resources.

227. (GWD-7-Q3) The state has proposed new rules that would set minimum staffing levels for nurses, rules intended to ensure that at least one nurse is assigned for every four patients put through triage in a hospital emergency room.

228. (GWD-5-Q1) So dogged were Frances Perkins' investigations of the garment industry, so persistent her lobbying for wage and hour reform, that, Alfred E. Smith and Franklin D. Roosevelt recruited Perkins to work within the government, rather than as a social worker.

229. (GWD-6-Q18) Today, more than 43 percent of Californians under the age of eighteen are Hispanic, compared with about 35 percent a decade ago.

230. (GWD-8-Q32) At the annual stockholders meeting, investors heard a presentation on the numerous challenges facing the company, among them the threat of a rival's multibillion-dollar patent-infringement suit and the decline in sales of the company's powerful microprocessor chip.

231. (T-4-Q3) Currently 26 billion barrels a year, world consumption of oil is rising at a rate of 2 percent annually.

232. (GWD-4-17) Although the restaurant company has recently added many new restaurants across the country and its sales have increased dramatically, its sales at restaurants open for more than a year have declined.

233. (GWD-9-Q19) In many nations, criminal law does not apply to corporations, but in the United States today, a corporation commits a crime whenever one of its employees commits a crime, if the employee acted within the scope of his or her authority and if the corporation benefited as a result.

234. (GWD-3-Q28) The coyote is one of several recent ecological success stories: along with the white-tailed deer, the moose, and other species that are enlarging their natural domains, it has established itself as a supreme adapter in an era when the ability to adjust to the environmental changes wrought by human beings has created a whole new class of dominant large mammals.

235. (GWD3-Q22) Because of a law passed in 1933 making it a crime punishable by imprisonment for a United States citizen to hold gold in the form of bullion or coins, immigrants found that on arrival in the United States they had to surrender all of the gold they had brought with them.